



DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 245 119

CE 039 160

TITLE Opening Lines. A Competency-Based Curriculum in English as a Second Language. A Teacher's Handbook.

INSTITUTION Experiment in International Living, Brattleboro, VT.; Save the Children Federation, Inc.; World Education, Inc., New York, N.Y.

SPONS AGENCY Department of State, Washington, DC. Bureau of Refugee Programs.

PUB DATE 83

NOTE 440p.; For a related document, see CE 039 161.

PUB TYPE Guides - Classroom Use - Guides (For Teachers) (052)

EDRS PRICE MF01/PC18 Plus Postage.

DESCRIPTORS Adult Basic Education; Classroom Techniques; Competence; Competency Based Education; Curriculum; *Daily Living Skills; Educational Resources; *English (Second Language); *Indochinese; Job Skills; Learning Activities; Lesson Plans; *North American Culture; *Refugees; *Second Language Instruction; Teaching Methods

ABSTRACT

This handbook contains a hands-on curriculum for teaching everyday living skills to English as a Second Language students, especially those who have had little formal education. It emphasizes students' use of language and an understanding of U.S. culture to communicate and get along. Although designed for Southeast Asian refugees, it can be used with other groups of adults or young people. The handbook consists of seven parts: (1) an introduction that provides information about the training program for refugees that led to the development of the handbook and that explains how to use the handbook; (2) the curriculum--30 lessons, presented in four levels (pre-literate, beginning, intermediate, advanced); (3) a section on learning and teaching; (4) a section on language instruction; (5) lesson planning (including a sample lesson plan); (6) teaching techniques; and (7) an appendix that contains supplemental information such as a guide to pronunciation problems, a materials list, and questions students often ask about American culture. Among the topics covered in the lessons are greetings, family, food/clothes/money, medical, housing, shopping, calendar/telephone, geography/weather, appointments, transportation, post office/school, banking, employment, job skills, sponsors, emergencies, social life, restaurants, and community living. (KC)

* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
* from the original document. *

OPENING LINES

a competency-based curriculum
in english as a second language



U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION
CENTER (ERIC)

This document has been reproduced as
received from the person or organization
originating it.

Minor changes have been made to improve
reproduction quality.

Points of view or opinions stated in this docu-
ment do not necessarily represent official NIE
position or policy.

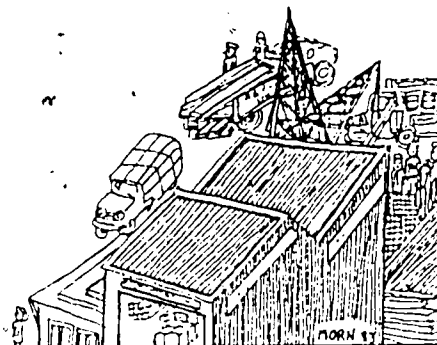
a teacher's handbook

OPENING LINES

a competency-based curriculum
in english as a second language

a teacher's handbook

The Department of State reserves
a royalty-free, non-exclusive
and irrevocable right to re-
produce, publish or otherwise
use, and to authorize others
to use, this work for U.S.
Government purposes.



the experiment in international living as part of the consortium

Published by the Consortium: The Experiment in International Living,
Save the Children Federation, Inc. and
World Education

Copyright © 1983
By The Experiment in International Living
Kipling Road
Brattleboro, Vermont 05301
U. S. A.

The contents of this book were developed under
an agreement with the Department of State,
Bureau for Refugee Programs. However, these
contents do not necessarily represent the
policy of that agency, and you should not
assume endorsement by the Federal Government.

Acknowledgments

In 1980, the Experiment in International Living, Save the Children Federation and World Education combined resources to form the Consortium in order to offer intensive English as a Second Language, Cultural Orientation and Pre-Employment training to refugees from Laos and Cambodia. In the fall of 1982, David Hopkins, Technical Program Manager of the Consortium, proposed the development of a teacher's handbook which would reflect the curriculum of the English as a Second Language Component of the Consortium training program for Indochinese refugees in Panat Nikom, Thailand.

In the spring of 1983, the Handbook Development Project got underway, with Fred Ligon as writer and Patrick Moran as editor. Fred organized and wrote the lessons and the appendix and did the illustrations; Pat added sections on language, learning and teaching and techniques.

Peter Loverde contributed a section on comparing languages. Robert Quinn prepared the grammar sequence for the lessons. Carol Richardson provided information for the sections on American culture.

Pamorn Imkaew did the cover illustration. Orawan Chokasut, Lakana Phongluangtham and Nittaya Mahakitpaisal typed the manuscript. Suchada Fucharoen did the lettering and helped with preparation of the manuscript.

The handbook began long before the Writing Project, though, and is in fact the culmination of more than two years of curriculum development in Panat Nikom. Many people were involved, and it is impossible to credit each of the teachers, teacher supervisors, administrators and consultants who contributed to the curriculum over the years.

There are several people who were directly involved who deserve special mention and thanks.

Kathleen Corey and Alfred Hoel wrote the original A/B level curriculum and teacher resource book. Cynthia Burns was involved in revisions.

James Higbie wrote the Topical and Structural Activities for Intermediate and Advanced Learners which contained the revised curriculum, which was adapted for this handbook. He was assisted by Alice Smith, Wipa Wungsuwonrung and Wasana Yamslip.

Teachers who played a special role in field testing were Sukanya Kaewthin, Sureeporn Kitcharoen, Ginggeaw Ketpiyat, Kwanjai Jivanantaprawat, Pornipa Poopipattana and Araya Prasittiboon.

Jimmy G. Harris contributed the section on minimal sets.

Others who helped: Mehran Azami, Chearane Chittasevi, Sutita Chomphu-
puang, Gerund Coonprom, Rudee Hunsuwan, Adam Kirby, Paula Kristofik,
Michelle Noullet, Christine Papesch, Tane Phooom, Araya Prasittiboon,
Chris Reznich, Linda Sherman, Alice Smith, Catherine Squire, Michael
Taylor, George Woodington, Wipa Wungsuwonrong, Wasana Yamslip and Hans
Von Zoggel.

Those who offered valuable support or comments: Stephen Amstutz, Igor
Barabash, David Beliskis, Donald Freeman, Marilyn Gillespie, Carolyn
Graham, Howie Gutow, Carl Hirth, Lynel Horne, Anne Janeway, Margaret
McDonald, Lynn Savage and Nunpana Savanork.

Finally, we must acknowledge our debt to those we work with. Our lives
have been enriched by the experience we have shared with the refugees
in Panat Nikom. This handbook is dedicated to them.

Table of Contents

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

INTRODUCTION

Background: The Program in Panat Nikom, Thailand
Using the Units

THE CURRICULUM

	<u>Page</u>
Unit 1. Greetings/Classroom	15
2. Language/Nationality	25
3. Family	33
4. Food/Clothes/Money	41
5. Medical (1)	49
6. Housing (1)	59
7. Employment (1)	67
8. Directions	77
9. Shopping (1)	85
10. Calendar/Telephone	93
11. Geography/Weather	105
12. Housing (2)	113
13. Shopping (2)	121
14. Appointments	131
15. Transportation	139
16. Post Office/School	149
17. Medical (2)	159
18. Drugstore	169
19. Employment (2)	177
20. Employment (3)	187
21. Job Skills	197
22. Banking	207
23. Housing (3)	215
24. Sponsor	225
25. Emergencies	233
26. Finance	243
27. Social Life	251
28. Community/Restaurant	261
29. Departure	269
30. Arrival	277

LEARNING AND TEACHING

285

LANGUAGE

305

LESSON PLANNING

313

TECHNIQUES

321

APPENDIX

	<u>Page</u>
1. Reference to Southeast Asian Regional Curriculum	363
2. Reference to Books and Materials	365
3. Visual Aids and Teaching Materials	369
4. Student Questions about American Culture	375
5. Forms and Bills	389
6. Comparing Languages	409
7. Southeast Asian Pronunciation Problems	415
8. Pronunciation Problems by Unit	419
9. Word List and Pronunciation Guide	421
10. Minimal Sets	427

INDEX

431

Introduction

This is a handbook for teachers.

It contains an organized curriculum of lessons, a section on lesson planning and techniques; and an appendix of supporting materials. It is designed to clearly show teachers what they have to teach, present ideas for teaching and provide helpful information. Also, the handbook is designed to provide teachers maximum opportunity to decide for themselves how to teach the lessons.

The handbook is for teachers who are teaching the entire curriculum as part of a training program, or for teachers who would like to incorporate a few lessons into an already-established curriculum. Although the primary audience is teachers, program supervisors or teacher trainers may also find this handbook useful.

The curriculum represents a unique approach to teaching students who may have had little formal education. It emphasizes students' using language, and an understanding of U.S. culture, to communicate and get along. Although designed for Southeast Asian refugees, it can be used with other groups of adults or young people.

The handbook consists of four parts:

1. Introduction. This provides information about the training program for refugees that led to the development of the handbook. It also explains how to use the handbook.
2. Curriculum. These are the lessons, presented in four levels: A (pre-literate), B (beginning), C (intermediate), D (advanced).
3. Learning and Teaching, Language. These sections address fundamental questions that all language teachers must answer. There are information and questions to challenge teachers to state why they do what they do in the classroom.
4. Lesson Planning and Techniques. A sample lesson plan for one lesson in the curriculum is provided. There is also a selection of teaching techniques that can be used in teaching the curriculum.
5. Appendix. This contains supplemental information, e.g. a guide to pronunciation problems, a materials list and questions students often ask about American culture.

Although certain decisions have been concerning what to teach, it is up to teachers to decide how to teach these lessons. Suggestions and techniques are provided, but they have to adapt them to the demands of their particular situation and to the students they are teaching.

Enjoy the handbook!

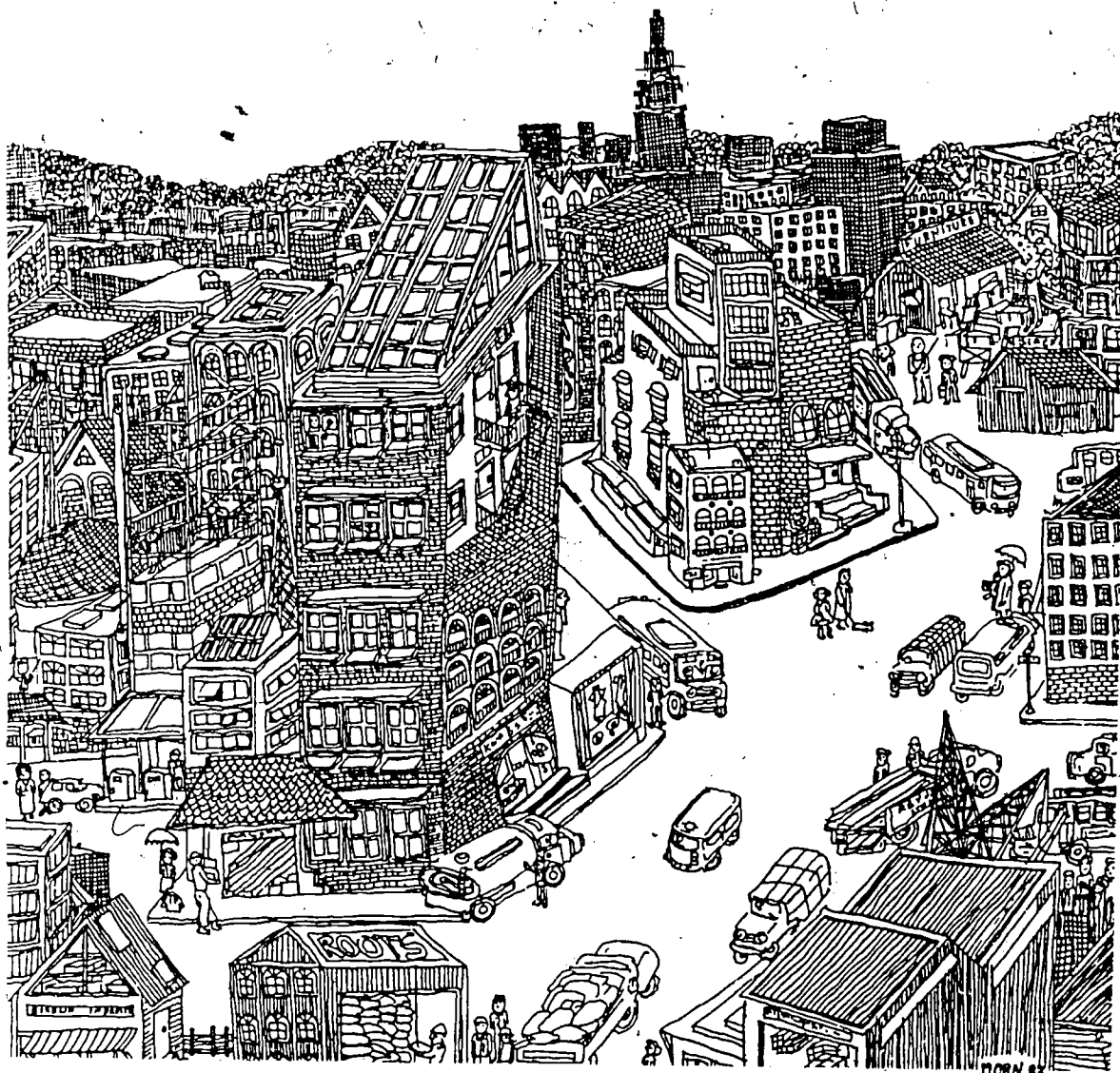
Background



In the previous lives of many refugees the rhythm of life was organized by the rising and setting of the sun and the planting and harvesting of crops. Everything needed was produced by hand. Young people watched and listened while cloth was woven, fields plowed, and tools constructed. If they learned a second language they did so by working alongside visitors from other villages. For them, there was no need for books. They learned by example.

This book originated as part of a refugee training program for people who came primarily from rural villages or small towns in Laos and Cambodia. In the case of the Hmong, Mien, Tai Dam and other Hilltribes people, they had lived outside the world of modern technology. Few, if any, had ever had formal education.

To prepare for their new lives in the United States, our students needed to move from the known to the unknown.



In the first ten units of the curriculum, there is frequent reference to the students' own culture. Items students are already familiar with are used in the classroom. In addition, students are asked to describe their culture and explain their relationship to it. The move to a fast-paced urban culture means many transitions. We felt students needed familiar reference points along the way--especially in the beginning--to ease their entry into the new language and culture.

The Program in Panat Nikom, Thailand

The Southeast Asian Regional Curriculum was one of the original documents used in Panat Nikom. A decision was made to create a "Hilltribe" curriculum, incorporating a few basic design changes to reflect Panat Nikom's experience working with refugees:

- The curriculum consists of 30 units (rather than 19) to permit more spiralling of language and topics. Language and concepts are introduced then reviewed and reworked in following units.
- The first 10 units emphasize the student as part of his/her culture. The next 20 units move toward a more comprehensive understanding of U.S. culture.
- In most units, A level students are exposed to full-form questions and answers even though they may only be able to produce the short form.
- There is no separate E level in the curriculum. E level competencies and language are included in D level.
- Literacy reflects the minimum A level and B level students need for situational competence.
- To insure that students are able to manipulate language as well as use survival language exchanges, there is an optional grammar sequence.

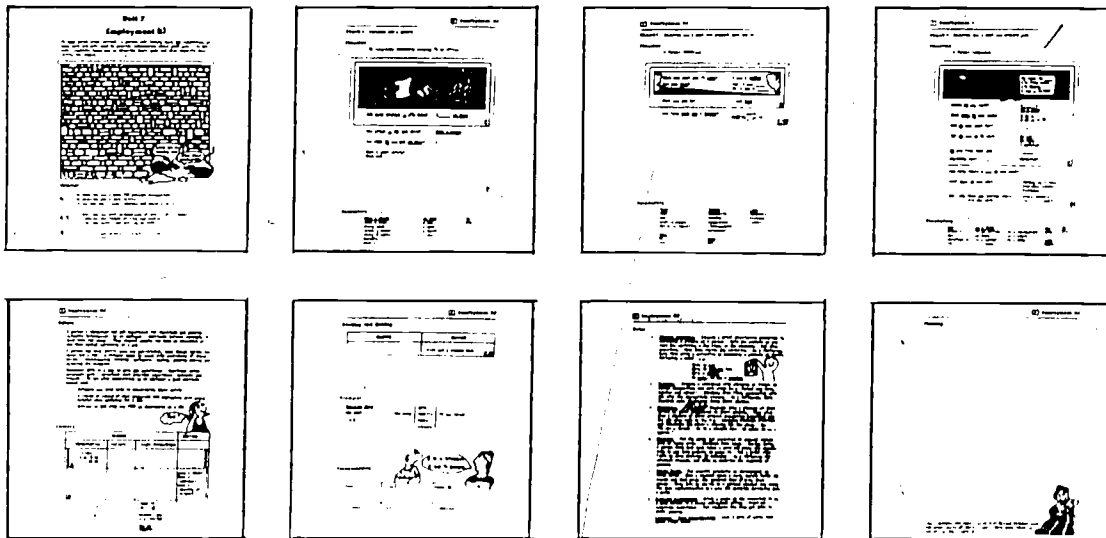
Teachers, trainers, consultants and friends were part of months of continual writing, rewriting and field-testing of the curriculum. The units in this handbook reflect the experience and hard work of those involved in this project. Our hope is that it will prove a valuable resource to anyone teaching English to refugees or other adult learners.

The Units

The ESL curriculum is divided into thirty units. The first ten units introduce language and concepts. The next twenty work with those in a variety of situations an adult will likely be exposed to on arrival in the United States. Each unit consists of:

1. A unit introduction
2. Chunks of language
3. A grammar point
4. A pronunciation record
5. Cultural information
6. A literacy focus and options
7. Reading and writing for C/D level students
8. Notes and variations on games, activities and ideas for teaching
9. Space for taking notes and planning lessons

Unit Format



BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Purposes

The unit introduction page includes:

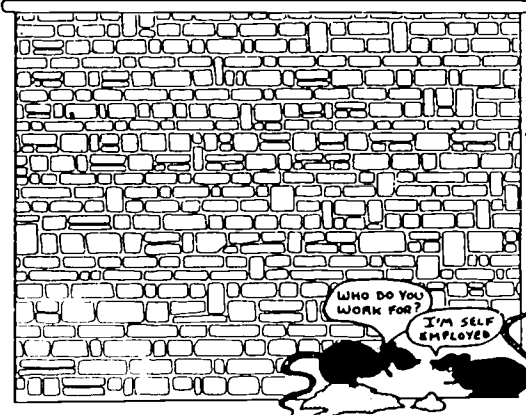
- a brief summary of the unit,
- a cartoon illustrating some of the language to be taught,
- a list of purposes of the unit identified by level.

Reading and writing competencies are not listed here. They appear in the Literacy or C/D level reading and writing sections of the unit.

Unit 7

Employment (1)

At some point after arrival, a person will likely have job interviews of some sort and will need to provide information about past jobs. In this unit, students learn how to describe their jobs and also identify their skills for others.



Purposes

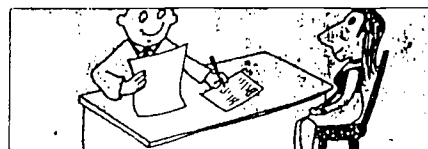
- A** To describe one's past and present occupations.
To describe one's work skills.
To narrate one's name, address and country of origin.
- B/C** To describe the past occupations of one's family members.
To indicate the length of time one worked.
To indicate means used getting to work.
- D** To indicate own general strengths related to work.
To indicate one's salary.

7 Employment

Chunk 4 Indicate one's salary

Situation

An interview situation sitting in an office



How much (money) do you make? \$ _____ an hour.

How often do you get paid? Once a month.

How much do you get an hour? \$ _____

What's your salary? \$ _____
What was

Vocabulary

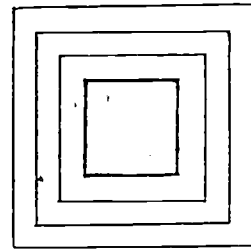
once a month	an hour	do
once a week	a day	did
every week	a week	
twice a month	a month	
every 2 weeks	1 year	
monthly		
yearly		

Language

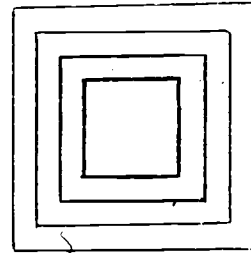
Each unit has two or more chunks of language. "Chunk" as used here means a set of language exchanges that are relevant to a given situation. Each chunk appears on a separate page with an indication of the appropriate situation and a summary of the competencies. The chunks of language appear in concentric boxes so teachers will know the language they are responsible for teaching, the language their students should already know and/or possible areas of expansion.

Language

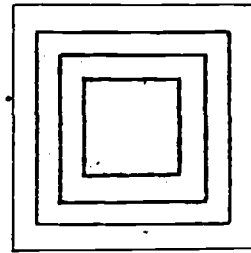
A level students are expected to know:



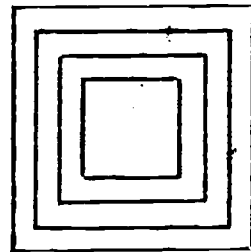
B level students are expected to know:



C level students are expected to know:



D level students are expected to know:



Underlined words indicate points where the pattern or the vocabulary can be varied. Each underlined word appears at the bottom of the page followed by alternatives. Ex.:

What's this?

This is a box.

this

that

box

pencil

cup

notebook (d)

In the example given above, "this" and "that" are appropriate for all levels. "Box, pencil and cup" can be taught through level C. "Notebook" should be introduced at level D only.

Teachers should always look at the vocabulary that appears at the bottom of the page even if a given exchange does not appear in the B, C or D level boxes. Some exchanges appear only at level A but have upper level vocabulary choices indicated at the bottom of the page.

Parts of some exchanges include parentheses. Ex.:

What's this? (This is) a box.

Here, the parentheses indicate that "a box" is acceptable but the expanded form "This is a box" may be introduced to students who have mastered the short response. Some questions are answered by a pair of parentheses only. Ex.:

What's this? ().

In this case, the parentheses indicate that any appropriate response is acceptable. Example of appropriate responses for the exchange above might be:

A box.
This is a box.
That is a box.
That's a box.
It's a box.
I don't know.
I don't know what it is.
etc.

Blank spaces in a pattern indicate that something needs to be added to make the pattern complete. Ex.:

This is a _____.
Is this a _____?
_____ is a box.

The language along the left side of the concentric boxes is the language the student is expected to understand. The language along the right side of the boxes is the language the student is expected to speak. This is the minimal level of competence. Students who have the ability can also learn to speak the language on the left side of the boxes. Teachers need to assess the ability and needs of their students.

At all levels give your attention to the language structures and patterns employed in the unit. Vocabulary words listed on each page should serve as a resource, not as the primary focus of the lesson.

Culture

American cultural information offers the teacher background on the unit topic as well as points to be considered when planning the lesson. These culture notes can be helpful to teachers planning to use role plays or simulations in their classes.

Literacy

Each unit provides a literacy focus and options for the teacher of A and B level students. Literacy at the survival level in this curriculum involves reading and writing of:

The Alphabet
Numeracy
Time
Money
Sight words
Form language
Symbols

[7] Employment (1)

Culture

A person's education and job experience are important and provide valuable information to an employer. Americans believe strongly in hard work and study. They respect people who have an education or who have worked seriously at a job.

A person may have skills that are job-related, even though he/she has never had a job. A refugee needs to speak with confidence of these skills... Housekeeping, cooking, childcare, sewing, jewelry making and painting are examples.

Volunteer work is a way to gain job experience. Americans value volunteer work. Volunteer work provides experience, contacts and friends. It can also demonstrate to an employer a good attitude toward work.

- Refugees may need help in identifying their skills.
- A resume or record of past education and employment will prove helpful when applying for a job.
- Service in the army can also be considered as a job.

Literacy

READING		WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight words/Signs
(time) e.g. 9:15 10:30		
A		(one's name) (one's address) (one's country of origin)
B		FROM 19 10 19 (occupations) e.g. WAITER Review COUNTRY C S

The literacy component of the curriculum is the result of a long process of trying to narrow the focus to minimal survival level skills. Teachers who wish to move beyond this and begin teaching reading and writing of sentences are encouraged to use whatever system they are most comfortable with.

Consider the following:

- B level students are expected to know level A material as well as material in level B.
- Sight words, symbols, form language, etc. listed in each unit help support a student's understanding of the oral language exchanges. Sight words are all written in capital letters.

- c. Time and money are periodically reviewed whenever they are relevant to the content of a unit. The date is taught in Unit 10 but it should be an ongoing activity from the first day.
- d. Teachers may teach capital letters, lower-case letters or both. The approach used with this curriculum has been to teach capitals and lower case simultaneously.
- e. Options are other items relevant to the unit that could be taught if students demonstrate competence in Level A and B material.
- f. There are occasional differences between this curriculum and the SEA Regional Curriculum. Where differences occur they reflect this program's understanding of what A and B level students can realistically learn in a three-month period.

Reading and Writing

Several units include reading and writing activities which C and D level students must be able to perform in order to achieve situational competence.

Grammar

A grammar point is provided as an optional teaching focus for each unit. The grammar points are drawn primarily from A level language. Each point does not necessarily reflect the language for the unit in which it appears. Instead, the grammar points are usually taken from preceding lessons. This allows teachers to teach grammar as a review, using vocabulary and structures that students have already learned.

7 Employment (1)

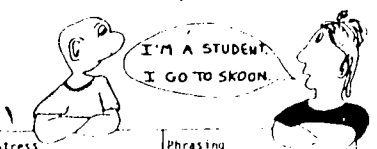
Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
	Fill out a simple form. C/D

Grammar

<u>Question Word</u> HOW MANY Plurals -S	How many pens pencils books erasers	do you have?
---	--	--------------

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Pronunciation

In each unit there is a box for the teacher to record the pronunciation focus of that unit. This pronunciation record can be completed by referring to a list of common Southeast Asian pronunciation problems (see Appendix 7) or by identifying your student's problems on a daily basis. In the box, the teacher can indicate the area of pronunciation to be worked on (stress, intonation, phrasing, consonants, vowels and rhythm) and can also indicate the focus for each day the unit will be taught.

Notes

Each unit contains a list of techniques, activities and games that teachers can choose to use. These activities can also be used for evaluation, since they call for active student participation and application of the material in the unit.

Planning

Employment (1)

Employment (1)

Notes:

1. **Picture Narrative.** Prepare a brief descriptive paragraph to accompany a picture of a person. Hold the picture up and read the narrative a few times to the students. Ask them questions. Have them recite the narrative. As a follow-up, have them write a narrative to accompany a picture of theirs following a model, e.g.,

This is Lin.
He's in Chicago now.
He's a typist.
In Laos, he was a teacher.



2. **Matching.** Prepare a worksheet with pictures or frames of common occupations and work sites (e.g. farmer and farm, teacher and school). Students draw lines connecting each job with the appropriate classes. As a follow-up, have students make statements about their choices.
3. **Depiction.** Students draw a picture of themselves at their occupation in their country. They also draw a picture of their present occupation (student) and the job they want in the U.S. Students exchange drawings and interpret the other's drawing for the class. Ex: "He was a farmer. He is a student now. He wants to be a typist."
4. **Charades.** Put the names (or pictures) of several common jobs on index cards. Students form teams. Taking turns, a person from each team takes a card and mimes the occupation to get team members to guess it. Put a brief time limit on this activity (2 minutes). As a follow-up for advanced classes, ask them to describe the sequence of guesses.
5. **Answer Cards.** Put answers (pictures or statements) on index cards. When a student takes a card, he/she reads the answer and then gives the question that elicits that answer. Vary this by making it a contest between two teams. The team representative who asks the question correctly gets a point.
6. **Cultural Exploration.** Bring a guest to the classroom to be a case worker in a state employment office. Practice interview techniques. Ask students how they get jobs in their country.
7. **Literacy: Time Concentration.** Make 2 sets of cards that match clock faces.



Planning

Space for taking notes and planning lessons is provided on the last page of every unit. In addition, a note appears at the bottom of the page offering a final comment or reminder about the unit.

Your students may make little distinction between work and other parts of their lives. Help them identify and define their work skills.



Teacher Resources

The resource sections include: Learning and Teaching, Language, Lesson Planning, Techniques and the Appendix. They provide information, teaching options and questions to encourage teachers to examine their teaching.

Teachers can refer to these sections for suggestions on how to teach, information on what to teach, and also ideas on the why of teaching--what makes teachers effective.

This approach calls for teachers to take responsibility for thinking carefully about their work. It is based on the principle that all teachers eventually decide for themselves what to do. They make choices about the subject matter, about the students, about teaching and about learning. The clearer and more conscious their decision-making, the more effective their teaching can become.

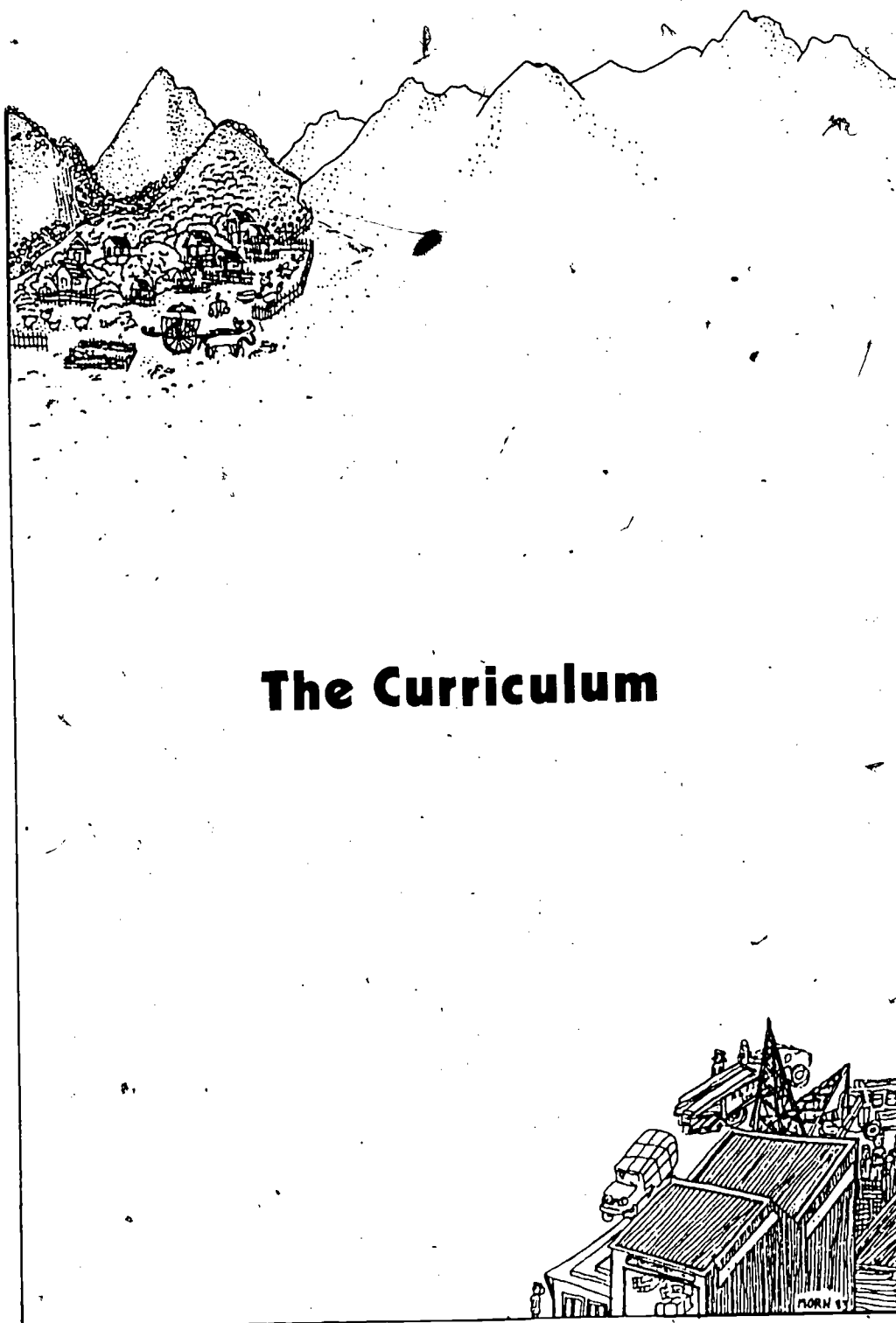
These sections are intended for teachers to use on their own. They are also intended for teacher supervisors to use as part of training sessions with groups of teachers.

Note to the Teacher:

- Use the resource sections as a guide for reflecting on your experiences in the classroom. What happens in class with you and your students is a rich source of study. By looking closely and openly at this, you can learn more about your job. Read all the sections to see if they can help.
- The sections can serve as an introduction to questions and information that you need to consider as a language teacher. Use this to sharpen and justify your own point of view on what language is and what helps people learn.
- Compare your notes with fellow teachers or friends.
- Write your comments and reactions in the text.

Note to the Teacher Trainer/Educator

- Use the sections to provide information or suggestions for teachers.
- Use the questions as discussion topics in training sessions.
- Draw upon teachers' experiences in the classroom.
- Allow teachers to decide for themselves, but ask that they base these decisions on fact, rather than opinions.
- Use the sections to clarify your own criteria for teaching teachers.

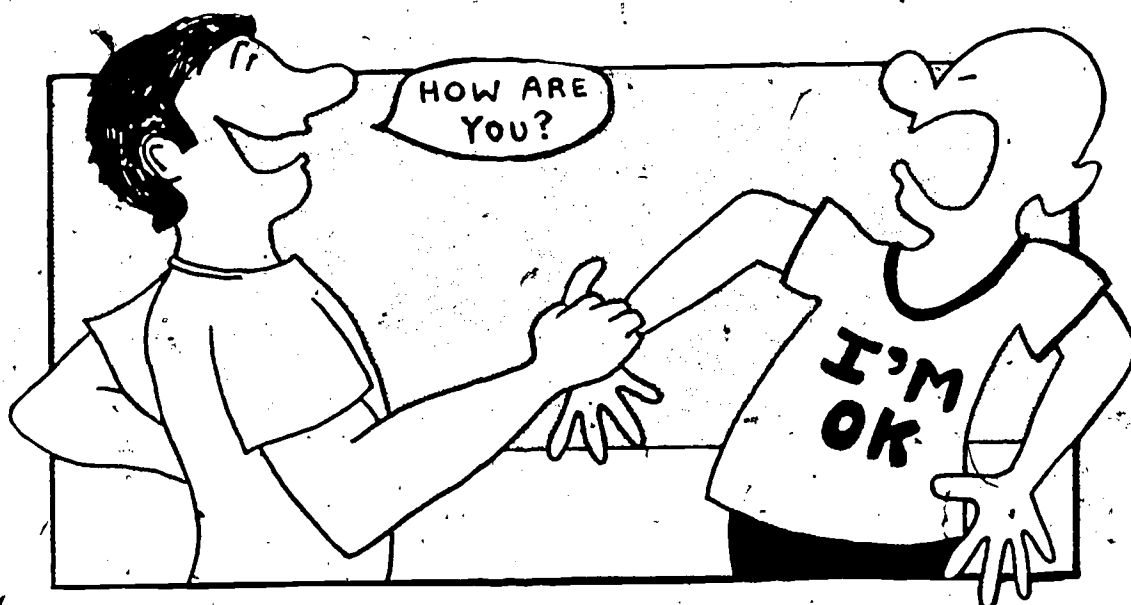


The Curriculum

Unit 1

Greetings/Classroom

First encounters with Americans--saying hello, being introduced, making small talk, saying goodbye--are important rituals. Arriving in a new country is challenging enough. Knowing how to do these simple rituals can help make good first impressions. This unit provides students with basic greetings and leavetakings as well as appropriate language for finding out and clarifying information.



Purposes

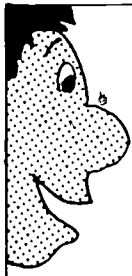

- To identify oneself.
- To greet and be greeted.
- To say goodbye.
- A** To respond to or request a need for repetition.
- To ask for identification of classroom items.
- To respond to classroom instructions.
- To indicate lack of comprehension or confusion.
- B** To respond to questions asking for identification of items.
- To ask someone to speak slowly.
- To use yes/no questions to verify something's name.
- C** To introduce others and respond to introductions.
- To state reasons for being late or absent.
- To ask for clarification or repetition.
- D** To initiate and respond to various greetings and leavetakings.

1 Greetings/Classroom

Chunk 1 Greet and say goodbye

Situation

Any social situation
On the telephone

 <p>Hello. How are you? (I'm) fine. Goodbye.</p>	<p>Hello. (I'm) fine. How are you? Goodbye.</p>  <p>A</p>
<p>Good morning. I'm OK. How are you?</p>	<p>Hi. How are you doing? Fine.</p> <p>B</p>
<p>Hi. Good <u>morning</u>. Bye.</p>	<p>(<u> </u>). See you <u>later</u>.</p> <p>C</p>
<p>How are you doing? So 'long.</p>	<p><u>OK</u>. See you. Take it easy.</p> <p>D</p>

Vocabulary

morning
afternoon
evening

OK
all right
not bad

later
tomorrow
tonight

Sunday
Monday
Tuesday
Wednesday
Thursday
Friday
Saturday

1 Greetings/Classroom


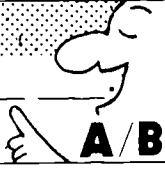
Chunk 2

Identify oneself and make introductions

Situation

Initial social encounters

Formal interviews

	What's your name?	(My name's) _____	
	This is my <u>friend</u> , <u>John</u> .		
	This is <u>John</u> .	Happy to meet you.	
	What's your <u>first</u> name?	()	
	Please spell your name.	()	
	I'd like you to meet my <u>friend</u> , <u>John</u> .		
	How do you do?	How do you do?	
	Would you spell that?	()	

Vocabulary

friend
brother
sister

John
(names of your
students)

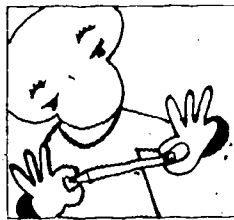
first
last

1 Greetings/Classroom

Chunk 3 Identify objects through questions and clarification

Situation

In the classroom
At the workplace.
In the community

	<p>It's a <u>pencil</u>. I don't understand. Again, please. Please repeat.</p>	<p>What's <u>this</u>? It's a <u>pencil</u>. I don't understand. Again, please. Please repeat.</p>
<p>What are <u>these</u>? Is <u>this</u> a <u>pencil</u>?</p>	<p>These are They're <u>pencils</u>.</p>	<p>Yes, it is. No, it's not. No, it is a ____. What's <u>this</u> in English? Please speak slowly. Thank you.</p>
<p>It's a ____. (____). You're welcome.</p>	<p>What's <u>this</u> called in English?</p>	<p>It's <u>mine</u>. (____). (____).</p>
<p>(____). Whose ____ is <u>this</u>? Do you understand? What did you say?</p>	<p>Would you say that again? (please)</p>	<p>C D</p>

Vocabulary

pencil	these	mine	this
pen	those	his	that
book		hers	
blackboard			

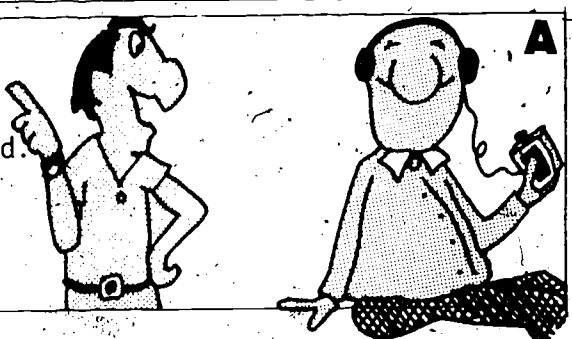
1 Greetings/Classroom

Chunk 4 Respond to commands and questions

Situation

In the classroom
At the workplace

Open your book.
Close your book.
Go to your chair.
Go to the blackboard.
Go to the door.
Come here.
Listen.
Repeat.



A

Pick up one pen (s).
Put down _____.
Give me _____.
Please go to the blackboard.

B

Who's absent? (____).
Who was late? (____).
Excuse me.
I'm sorry I'm late.

Why are you late? (____).
Why were you absent yesterday? (____).
(Please) (don't) smoke. (____).

C/D

Vocabulary

<u>smoke</u>	<u>one</u>	<u>blackboard</u>	<u>smoke</u>
<u>sleep</u>	1 - 16	<u>door</u>	<u>stand up</u>
<u>spit</u>		<u>desk</u>	<u>sit down</u>
<u>talk</u>	<u>pen</u>	<u>chair</u>	give this to ____.
<u>take a break</u>	<u>pencil</u>		tell ____ to ____.
<u>copy (this)</u>	<u>book</u>		come back in ____
			minutes.
			come back at 2:00.

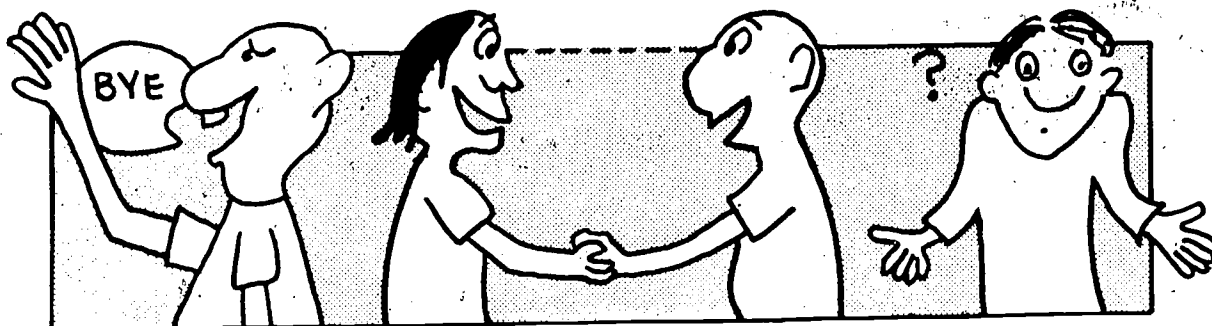
1 Greetings/Classroom

Culture

Informal American greetings and leavetakings often require just a nod of the head or a wave of the hand. Formal American greetings often require a handshake and eye contact. Americans are known to evaluate another person by how firmly he/she shakes hands and whether the person looks the other in the eye.

- Most American have three names: first, middle, and last.
- Older Americans are often referred to by their title (Mr., Miss, Mrs., Ms.) plus the last name.
- In informal situations, the question, "What's your name?" is usually answered with the first name only.

In English, there is a difference between "I don't know" and "I don't understand." Usually, "I don't know" means "I don't know the answer," while "I don't understand" means "I'm confused."



Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
1 - 16	A - E		A - E
A			
B			
Options	(spell one's name)	NO SMOKING	(date) e.g. JAN. 16, 1982

Reading and Writing

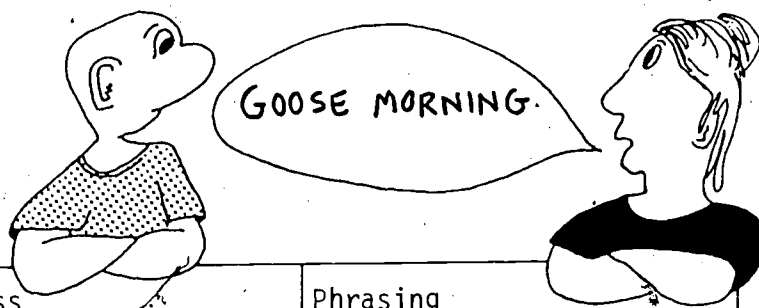
READING	WRITING
C/D Common American names.	

Grammar

Statement Word Order
Affirmative/Negative
TO BE

I	am		
You	are	(not)	here.
He			there.
She	is		
It			

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

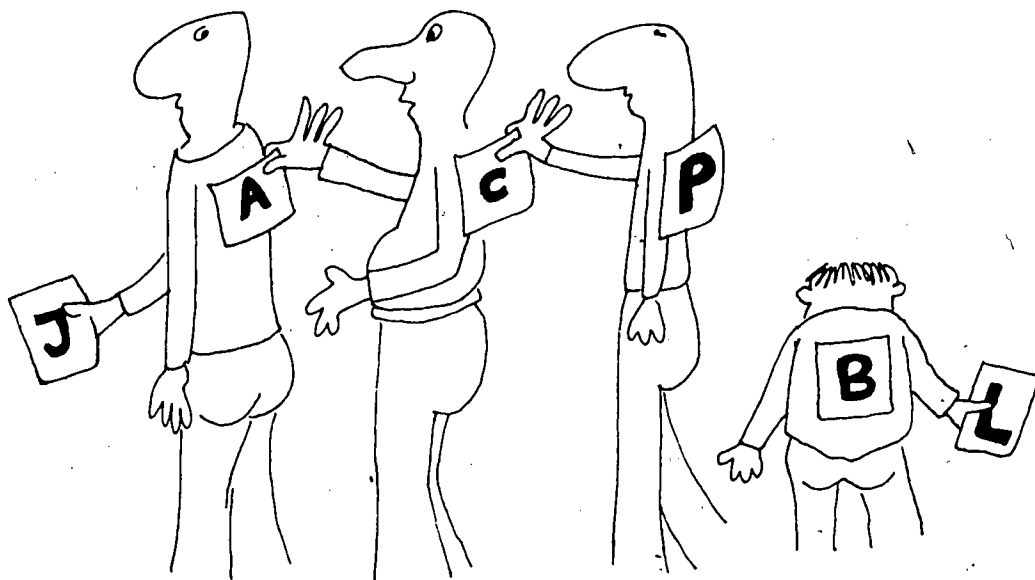
Day 2

Day 3

1 Greetings/Classroom

Notes

1. Name Game. Have students sit in a circle. One-by-one each student introduces himself/herself and gives the names of the students who have already spoken. Ex: "My name is John. This is Liu. His name is Tan." For more advanced classes, ask students to give their names and one thing that they like. Go round the circle until all students have spoken.
2. Cocktail Party. On index cards, write biographical information about fictitious characters. Distribute the cards to the students, who then take on this new "identity." Then tell the students that they are at a party and to get to know each other. Make the activity interesting by having all the characters related to one another in some way.
3. Action Sequence. Draw pictures of various classroom actions on paper (8½x11). Have students arrange these in different sequences and then give each other directives (commands) to carry these actions out in the classroom. For advanced classes, have students write the directives.
4. Cultural Exploration. Have students demonstrate how greetings are done in their country. Vary this by asking them to include greetings between people of different ages, sexes and roles--even places. Ex: Mother (age 60) greets daughter (age 30) in daughter's home. Ask students to make comparisons with greetings in the U.S. and to discuss similarities or differences. Stress the importance of non-verbal language.
5. Literacy: Letter Cards. Tape cards with letters (A,B, C,D,E) to students' backs. They must group themselves together according to letter. To do this, they have to read the cards and ask each other questions. Do the same exercise with numbers (1 - 16).

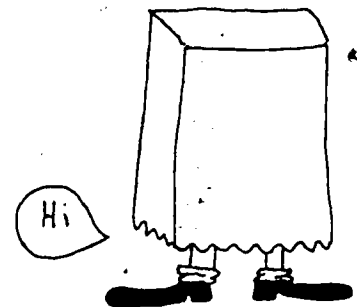


Planning

1 Greetings/Classroom

Planning

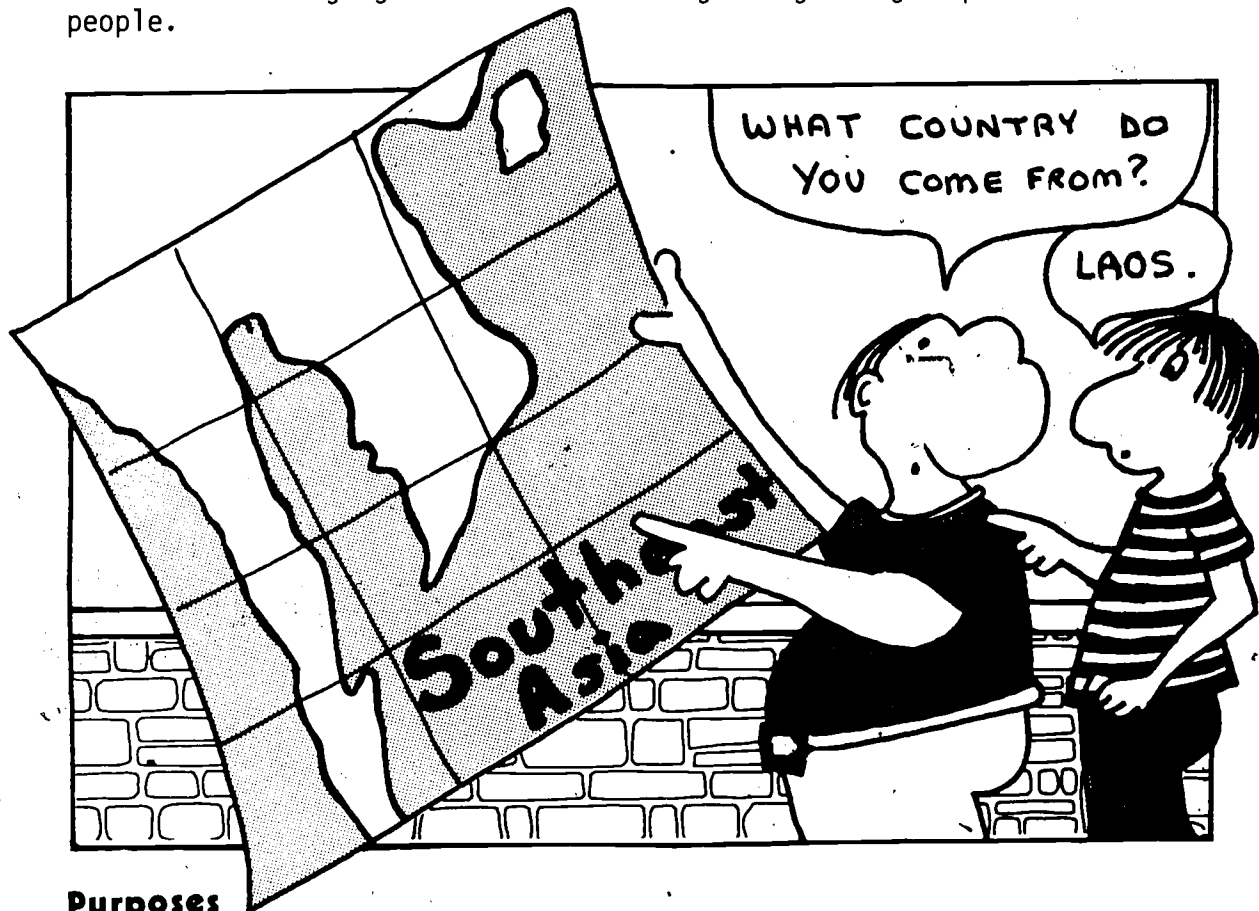
Help your students overcome their shyness when greeting.



Unit 2

Language/Nationality

When making social contacts with Americans, it is often necessary to introduce oneself and answer a few simple questions. This unit gives students the language needed for meeting and getting acquainted with people.



Purposes

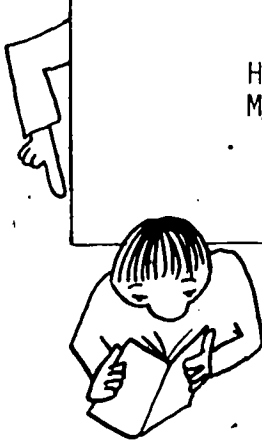
- A** To introduce oneself by name.
nationality.
ethnic group.
native language.
country of origin.
- B** To identify classmates by name.
- C** To ask questions about another's personal background.
- D** To name the languages one speaks.
To state the place and date of one's birth.
To describe the location of one's place of birth.



2 Language/Nationality

Chunk 1 Introduce oneself and others

Situation

Any business or social occasion



 <p>What's <u>his</u> name? Is <u>your</u> name ()?</p>	<p>His name is (). Yes. No, it's ().</p> 
<p>How do you do? My name is ().</p>	<p>Hi. My name's (). (I'm) happy to meet you.</p>
<p>B/C/D</p>	

Vocabulary

his
her


your
her
his

2 Language/Nationality

Chunk 2 Ask and answer questions about one's background

Situation

Business or social occasion
On the telephone
Formal interview

Where are you from?	I'm from ().	
Are you Hmong?	Yes, I'm Hmong.	
	No, I'm ().	
My name is ().	I'm from ().	
	I'm ().	
What country are you from?	I'm from ().	A
Are you from ()?	Yes, I'm from ().	
	No, I'm from ().	
What's your nationality?	I'm ().	B
What country do you come from. ()?		
What <u>city</u> are you from? ().		
What's your <u>place</u> of birth? ().		
Where were you born? I was born in ____.		C
Where did you used to live? ().		
Where did you live in ()? ().		
Where's that? (describe location)		
What's your ethnic background? ().		D

Vocabulary

Hmong
Laotian
Cambodian
Khmer
Mien

Tai-dam
Vietnamese
Lao-Theung
(other)

city
country
town

country
city
town

place
date

2 Language/Nationality

Chunk 3 Ask and answer questions about one's language

Situation

Business or social occasion
On the telephone

What language do you speak?	I speak ().	A
Do you <u>speak</u> English?	Yes. Yes, a little. No, I speak (). My name is _____. I'm from _____. I'm _____. I speak _____ (and a little English).	B
Can you <u>speak</u> _____?	Yes, I can. No, I can't (cannot).	C
How many languages <u>do</u> you speak? ().		C
What's your <u>native</u> language? ().		D

Vocabulary

English

Hmong

Mein

Lao

Vietnamese

Khmer

(other)

speak

read

write

do

can

native

first

Culture

It is considered polite to introduce the people that are with you when you meet an acquaintance. Not making introductions can make people feel uncomfortable or embarrassed.

After introductions, people often ask a few questions about each other's background. Usually, it is not polite to ask questions such as "How old are you?" "Are you married?" or "Have you taken a bath?" when you meet someone for the first time.



Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
16 - 30 A	F - J		1 - 16 F - J
B		NAME	
Options	(spell one's name)	FIRST LAST NATIONALITY COUNTRY LANGUAGE(S)	(one's name) (one's nationality) (one's country) (one's language)

2 Language/Nationality

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
C/D	<p>Fill out a simple form.</p> <p>The date: -day, month and year. Ex: Jan. 3, 1984 or 1/3/84.</p>

Grammar

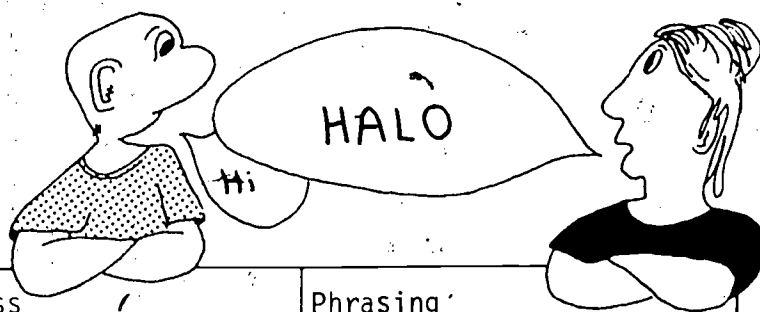
Question Word Order

Adjectives

TO BE

Am	I	Cambodian?
Are	you	Laotian?
Is	he	
	she	
	it	red?

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

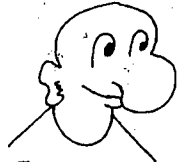
Day 1

Day 2

Day 3

Notes

1. Recitation. Have students prepare a short "speech" that they each deliver to the rest of the class. Ex:



My name is _____.
I'm from (country).
I'm (nationality).
I speak _____.



For more advanced classes, add place of birth, age and their last residence.

2. Question-Answer Practice. Have students sit in a circle. They practice the exchange: "Where are you from? I'm from _____." Have students ask and answer the question. Add other exchanges about languages spoken and nationality.
3. Biography Chart. For advanced classes, put biographical information about students on a chart. Have the students ask and answer questions using the chart as a guide.

Name	Age	Birth	Nationality	Languages
Liu	50	Vientiane	Laotian	Lao
Tan				

Ex: Who's from Laos?
Where was Liu born?
Is Tan 50 years old?



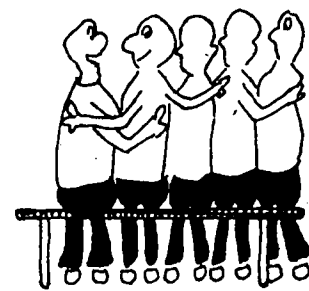
4. Double Circle. Move the chairs to form two circles--one inside the other. Students in the outer circle sit facing those in the inner circle. Ask a question. The students in the outer circle all ask their partners the same question. After they answer, the students in the outer circle move one chair to the right. Ask another question. Continue until you have asked 10 questions.
5. Survey. Give students a series of biographical questions to ask. Direct them to interview as many of their classmates as possible in a limited time (1, 3 or 5 minutes). Afterwards students report their findings.
6. Literacy: Tic Tac Toe. Each pair of students has one card and 5 markers. To put a marker down, students must say the number or letter aloud. Students try to get 3 markers in a row.
7. Cultural Exploration. Ask your students to approach an American and ask his/her name. Students then report to the class giving the name of the person met.

18	6	4
2	7	1
9	11	15



2 Language/Nationality

Planning

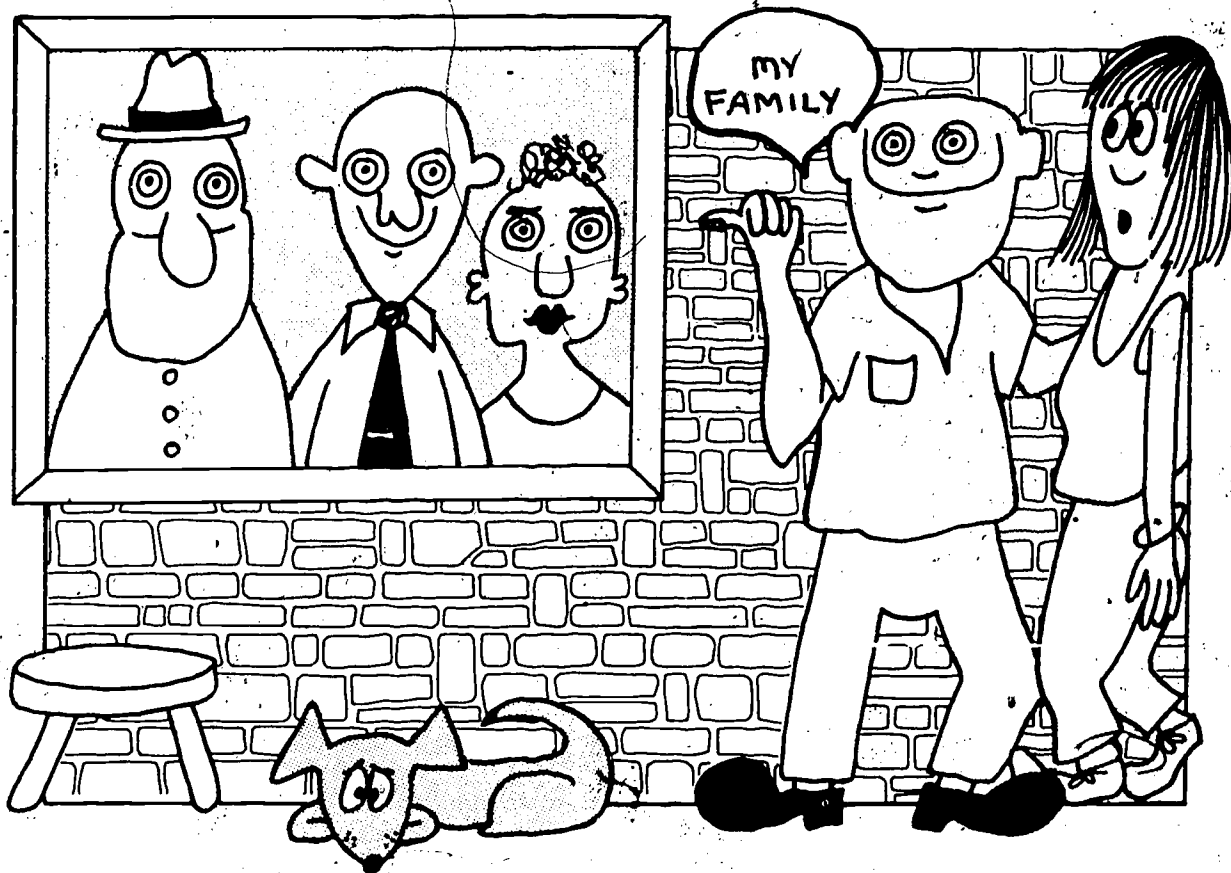


Introductions help strangers feel part of a group.

Unit 3

Family

During social encounters with Americans and in some interview situations, it is often necessary to introduce family members or give personal information. In this unit, students learn how to make introductions and respond to common questions often asked about one's family.



Purposes

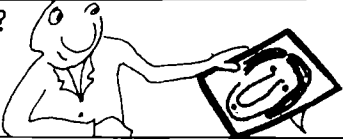

- A**
 - To identify family relationships.
 - To introduce family members.
 - To answer questions about one's: age.
 - marital status.
 - family members.
- B** To narrate personal backgrounds of oneself and family members.
- C/D**
 - To describe one's family.
 - To state residence of family members.

3 Family

Chunk 1 Identify and answer questions about one's family

Situation

Formal interview

Who is <u>this</u> ?		This is my <u>wife</u> . Her name is _____. This is my ____.		A
Is this your <u>wife</u> ?		Yes, this is my _____. No, this is my _____. 35. I'm 35.		B
Who is <u>this</u> ?		This is my <u>wife</u> .		
What's your <u>wife</u> 's name?		(_____).		
Where is your <u>wife</u> ?		In <u>Cambodia</u> .		
Does your <u>wife</u> speak English?		(_____).		
Do you have any <u>relatives</u> in America?		(_____).		
What <u>city</u> do they live in? does he/she		(_____).		
How many people are in your family?		(_____).		C
Who is <u>this</u> ?		This is my _____.		
How many people are in your <u>immediate</u> family?		(_____).		D

Vocabulary

wife
husband
father
mother
sister
brother

son
daughter (b/c)

mother-in-law
father-in-law
sister-in-law
brother-in-law
son-in-law
daughter-in-law
grandmother
grandfather

(d)

her
his
you
he
she
they
my
me

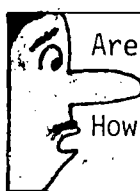
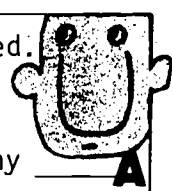
this
that
city
state
Cambodia
Laos
Vietnam
the camp

relatives
friends
family
immediate
extended

Chunk 2 Describe and answer questions about oneself and family

Situation

Social or business occasion,
Formal interview

	Are you married?	Yes, I'm married. No, I'm <u>not</u> .	
	How many <u>children</u> do you have?	I have _____. I don't have any _____.	A
	Is <u>she</u> married?	Yes, <u>she's</u> married. No, <u>she's</u> <u>not</u> .	
	Do you have (any) <u>children</u> ?	Yes, I have <u>two</u> (s). No, I don't have (any) <u>children</u> .	
		(looking at a picture) This is me. My name is _____. I'm from _____. I'm <u>Hmong</u> . I'm (not) <u>married</u> . This is my _____. <u>Her</u> name(s) <u>is</u> (_____).	B
	Do you have <u>any</u> younger children?	(_____).	
	How many <u>children</u> do you have?	(_____).	
	Is your _____ married?	(_____).	
	Does your _____ have any children?	(_____).	
	Are you <u>married</u> ?	(_____).	C/D

Vocabulary

children	she	married	her	two
sisters	your/my son	single	his	(other)
brothers	your/my daughter	widowed	their	
sons	he			
boys/girls		separated	this	
daughters	any younger children	divorced (c/d)	these	
	any older children			
kids (c/d)	any kids	not	is	
	a baby	single	are	
	Hmong			
	(other)			

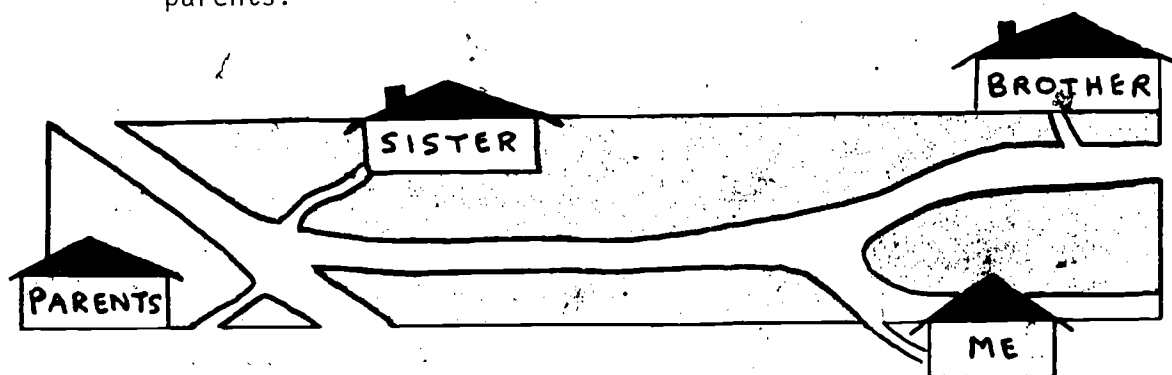
3 Family

Culture

The concept of a family in the U.S. is probably different from that of your students. American families often include just a wife and/or husband plus one, two or three children.

Americans can choose not to get married or to wait until they are older. Some American couples choose to have only a few children or none at all. Others choose to adopt children.

- Mainly because of divorce, there are many single parent families in the U.S. A few people choose to raise families without getting married.
- Grandparents sometimes live with families but often they live alone or in a home for older people.
- Children usually establish their own households after high school or getting a job. They do not usually live with their parents.



Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
31 - 60	K - O		16 - 30 K - O
A			
		MARRIED SINGLE	(one's age)
B			
		AGE	
Options			

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
C	Birthplace, nationality and name (including maiden name, if appropriate) on a form.
D	Name, relationship and age of family members on a form. Own physical characteristics (including height, weight, color of eyes and hair) on a form.

Grammar

Indefinite/Articles

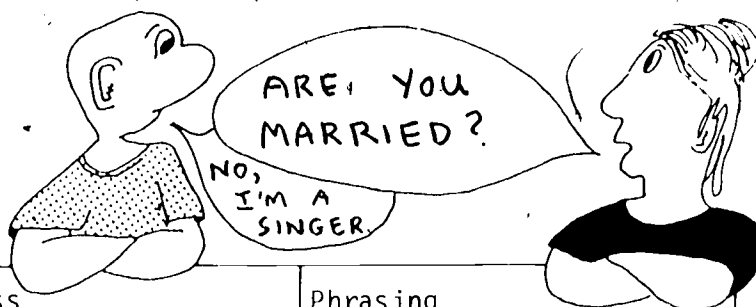
A/AN

Demonstrative Pronouns

THIS/THAT

Am	I				This	is	(not)	
Are	you	a	man?		That			
	he		woman?					
Is	she							
	it	a	pencil?					
	this		pen?					
	that	an	eraser?					

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

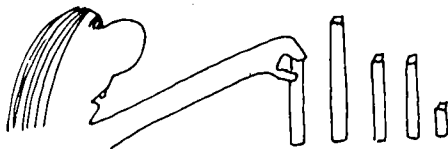
Day 2

Day 3

3 Family

Notes

1. Photographs. Have students bring photographs of themselves and their families. Put them into a box. Have each student take out a photo and ask questions to identify the people and their relationships. The student answers questions about his/her family. Afterwards, put all the photographs in view of the students and ask questions about various people.
2. Family Tree. Have students use a tree diagram to draw their family structure. In pairs, students explain their family relationships to each other. As a follow-up, have a few students explain their trees to the rest of the class.

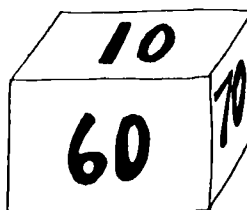


An option is to use Cuisenaire rods to represent males, females and the relationships.

3. Characters. Distribute photographs or drawings of people to the students. Have them create an identity for the person in the picture: name, age, nationality, family. Have each student present his "character" to the rest of the class. For advanced classes, have students role play encounters between characters.
4. Cultural Exploration. Put a tree diagram of a "typical American family" on the blackboard next to a student's family tree diagram. Ask the students to make observations about similarities or differences. Have them give possible reasons for differences.
5. Go Fish. Prepare sets of duplicate cards with pictures of classroom objects. In groups of 4, students ask each other for cards to make pairs. Ex: "Do you have chalk?" with the answer "Yes, here you are," or "No, I don't. Go Fish."



6. Literacy: Number Cube. Make a cube with six sides, each showing a number (10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60). Students throw the cube, look at the number facing up and say it. Vary this by making it a contest between teams.



Planning

3 Family

Planning

Your students will likely come from extended families. However, American families do not usually include a wife's sister's husband's niece or a mother-in-law's brother.



Unit 4

Food/Clothes/Money

Being able to find and purchase familiar food and clothing helps a person feel more secure after arrival. This unit gives students the language necessary for communicating wants and needs, finding needed items and then making purchases.



Purposes

A

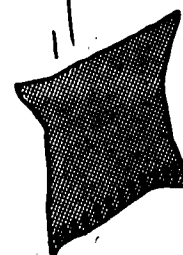
- To describe food needs.
- To describe food preferences.
- To select and pay for food in a local setting.
- To ask questions about location of food and clothing items.

B

- To ask for quantities of food items.
- To describe one's clothing preferences.

C D

- To state the cost of food items.
- To state one's clothing needs.
- To ask for change.
- To request a particular color.

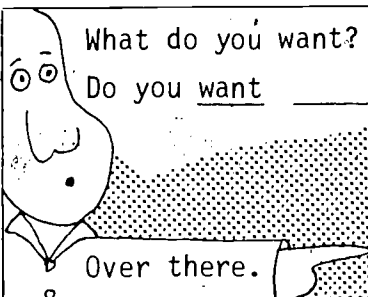
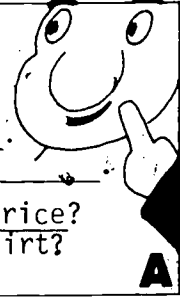


4 Food/Clothes/Money

Chunk 1 Describe food and clothing needs and preferences

Situation

In a department store or supermarket

 <p>What do you want? Do you <u>want</u> _____ ?</p> <p>Over there.</p>	 <p>I <u>want</u> <u>rice</u>. Yes/No. _____ I like _____ I don't like _____ Where is the <u>rice</u>? a <u>shirt</u>? Thank you.</p> <p>A</p>
<p>Do you want _____ ?</p>	<p>Yes, thank you. No, thank you.</p>
<p>Yes, <u>I</u> do. No, <u>I</u> don't.</p>	<p>Do you have (_____)?</p>
<p>How many do you want?</p>	<p>I <u>want</u> (to buy) a <u>shirt</u>. some <u>rice</u>. (_____).</p>
<p>How much do you want?</p>	<p>I want _____ kilo(s).</p>
<p>What color do you want?</p>	<p>I want (a) <u>black</u> (shirt).</p> <p>B</p>
<p>What do you want to buy?</p>	<p>I want to buy some <u>vegetables</u>.</p>
<p>Do you like _____ ?</p>	<p>(_____).</p>
<p>Don't you like _____ ?</p>	<p>Yes, I do./No, I don't.</p>
	<p>I like _____ I don't like _____.</p> <p>C</p>
<p>What would you like to buy?</p>	<p>I'd like _____.</p> <p>D</p>

Vocabulary

rice

oil

pork

beef

chicken

fish

shirt

skirt

dress

want

like

black

red

blue

green

white

brown

yellow

orange

vegetables

fruit

butter

noodles

coffee

juice

tea

milk

beer

wine

(other)


I

we

Chunk 2 Ask questions about food prices


Situation

In a department store or supermarket
Conversation between a customer and a clerk/stock person



How much is this?

() - local currency.



(It costs) _____.

How much does _____ cost?

().

Do you have change for
a _____? - local currency?

Vocabulary

is this
is that
is rise

are these
are those

(b)

local currency

Baht
Peso
Rupiah
(other)

dollar
quarter (c/d)
dime

4 Food/Clothes/Money

Chunk 3 State food needs and preferences

Situation

The offer of a dinner, light snack and/or drinks on a visit to someone's home.



Do you like _____?

Yes/No.

I like _____.

I don't like _____.



Do you want rice?

Yes. Thank you.

No. Thank you.

She doesn't.

Are you hungry?

(_____).

I'm _____.

Yes/No.

Don't you like _____?

I like _____.

I don't like _____.

Do you eat _____ in Cambodia?

(_____).

Would you like some _____?

(_____).

What would you like to eat?

I'd like _____, (please).

What's your favorite food?

(_____).

Vocabulary

she
he

rice
beef
pork
chicken
fish

fish sauce
pepper sauce
peanuts
coke
cookies
ice cream
coconut
sugar

(d)

Cambodia
Laos
Vietnam

eat
drink
have
take

food
fruit
vegetable

do you
does he
does she

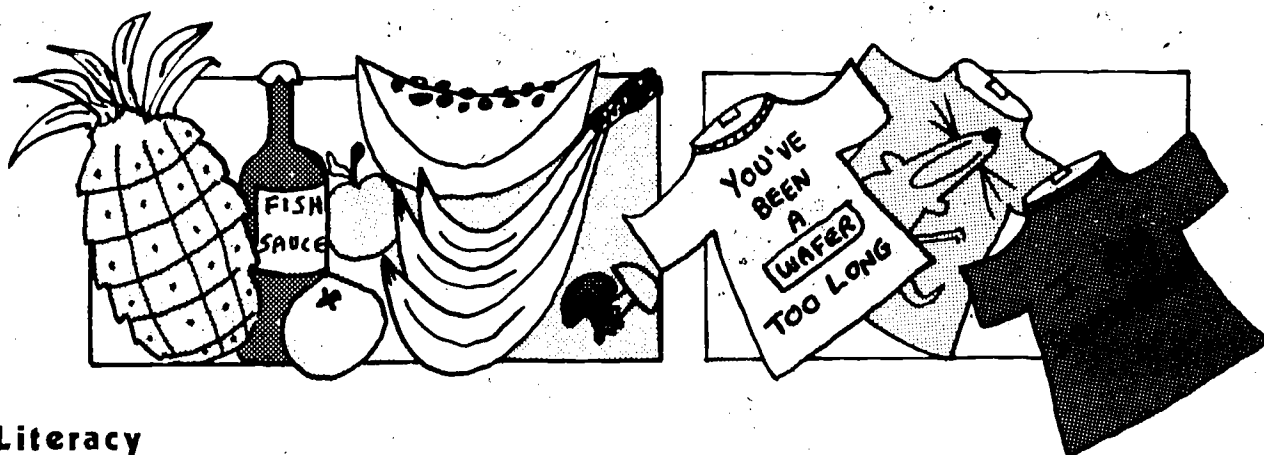
hungry
thirsty

Culture

Many foods found in Asia, Africa and Latin America can also be bought in the U.S. Usually, no seller attends the food except in very small markets or roadside fruit and vegetable stands.

Dress in America is generally informal. Clothing is made for comfort and practicality rather than high fashion. Uniforms are not required at most schools but are needed for some jobs. People buy new clothing in clothing and department stores. They also look for used clothing at rummage sales or second-hand stores.

- There is no bargaining in stores; prices are fixed. Sometimes, you can bargain at roadside stands.
- In stores, individuals stand in an orderly line and wait their turn to pay the cashier.



Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
A 61 - 100	P - T		31 - 60 P - T
B		Review NAME MARRIED SINGLE	
(prices) e.g. 30 ¢ Options			

4 Food/Clothes/Money

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
Names of food on cans, bags and containers.	C/D

Grammar

Possessive Adjectives

MY/YOUR/HIS/HER

My

Your

His

Her

name is

_____.

This

That

is

my

your

his

her

pen.

pencil.

book.

Pronunciation



I WANT TO
BUY SOME RYE.



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

Day 2

Day 3

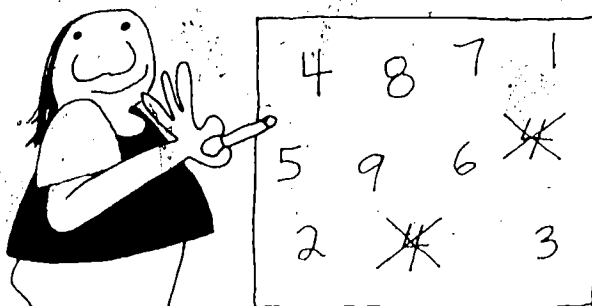
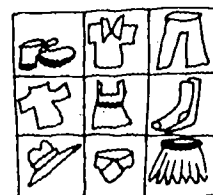
4 Food/Clothes/Money

Notes

1. Dialogue Grid. Put pictures of the lines of the dialogue on index cards. Tape the index cards to a piece of poster board. Students can refer to the cards as they practice the dialogue. As a follow-up, remove certain cards and have the students work in pairs to prepare dialogues with new lines for the empty spaces.

?	?	RICE ?	?	PORK ?	?
			PORK		

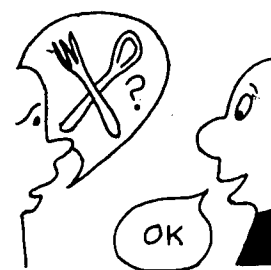
2. Card Matching. Make a set of matching pictures on index cards (e.g. 2 blue shirts, 2 brown skirts or 2 pieces of chicken, 2 bowls of rice). Give one card to each student, telling them not to show the card to the others. Students try to find the match by asking, "Do you have _____?" and answering "Yes, I do" and "No, I don't." For more advanced classes, add prices to the cards.
3. Bingo. Make Bingo cards with letters and pictures of food or clothing. Call out combinations of letters and items. Students put pieces of paper on the appropriate squares. The student who gets an unbroken line of squares says "Bingo" and wins the game.
4. Cultural Exploration. Have students describe a typical meal in their countries. Describe a "typical American meal" (e.g. breakfast) and ask students to make comparisons.
5. Tic Tac Toe. In pairs, students play Tic Tac Toe. Each pair of students has a card with pictures of food or clothing. Students also have 5 markers. To put a marker down, students must identify each item orally.
6. Literacy: Cross Out. Write down a set of numbers or letters on the blackboard. Tell students to cross out all the fours (for example). One option is to give out individual student worksheets.



4 Food/Clothes/Money

Planning

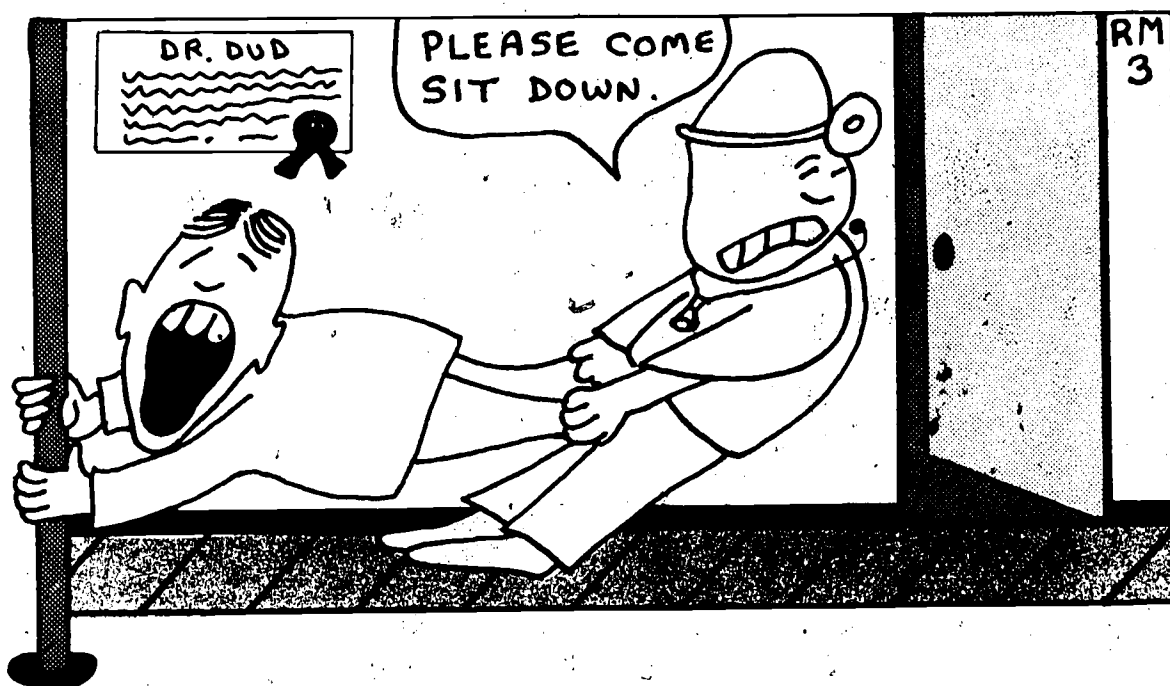
Invitations--to go shopping or have dinner--are a good way to establish friendships.



Unit 5

Medical (1)

It can be frustrating to be ill and not be able to communicate the problem to a doctor. Just knowing the names of a few parts of the body and a few ailments can give a person some feeling of confidence during an illness. In this unit, students learn the basic language for communicating a health problem before and during a medical examination.



Purposes

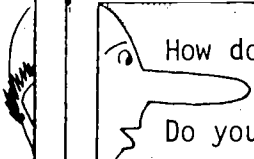

- A**
 - To describe one's physical symptoms.
 - To respond to questions about symptoms.
 - To respond to questions about the location of illness or injury.
 - To narrate medical problems.
 - To state medical problems of self and others
 - To respond to examination instructions.
- B**
 - To ask questions of an examiner about physical condition of oneself and family members.
 - To check in for an appointment.
- C**
 - To describe one's feelings.
 - To follow a doctor's oral instructions about treatment.
 - To describe medical treatment.
- D**
 - To name the appropriate specialist to visit.

5 Medical (1)

Chunk 1 Answer questions and describe one's condition

Situation

In the examination room

 <p>How do you feel?</p> <p>Do you feel <u>sick</u>?</p>	<p>I feel <u>sick</u>.</p> <p>I'm <u>sick</u>.</p> <p>Yes/No.</p>  <p>A</p>
<p>Do you feel <u>sick</u>?</p>	<p>Yes, I feel <u>sick</u>.</p> <p>No, I don't feel ____.</p> <p>B</p>
<p>How do you feel?</p>	<p>I feel <u>sick</u>.</p> <p>I have a <u>lot</u> of problems.</p>
<p>How long have you been <u>sick</u>?</p>	<p>I've been <u>sick</u> for ____</p> <p><u>hours</u>. C/D</p>

Vocabulary

sick
cold
tired
hot
 dizzy (b)
 weak
 nauseous (c/d)
 homesick


worried
 nervous
 upset
 confused
 depressed
 calm
 relaxed
 unhappy
 mad
 angry

lot of problems
 problem with ____
hours
days
weeks
months

Chunk 2 Answer questions and describe one's problem and the location of the problem

Situation

In an examination room

<p>Please sit down. What's the matter? Where does it hurt? Does this hurt?</p> 	<p>My <u>head</u> hurts. (It hurts) here. Yes/No. My name is _____. I'm sick. My _____ hurts. It hurts here.</p> <p>A</p>
<p>What's <u>wrong</u>? You have <u>diarrhea</u>. She/He has _____</p>	<p>I have <u>diarrhea</u>. What's <u>wrong</u> with <u>me</u>?</p> <p>B</p>
<p>What's <u>wrong</u>? What happened? What's <u>wrong</u>?</p>	<p>My <u>head</u> hurts. I <u>cut</u> my _____. I have <u>diarrhea</u>. I had an accident.</p> <p>C</p>
<p>When did it happen?</p>	<p>On _____ (day) At _____ (time) Today.</p> <p>D</p>

Vocabulary

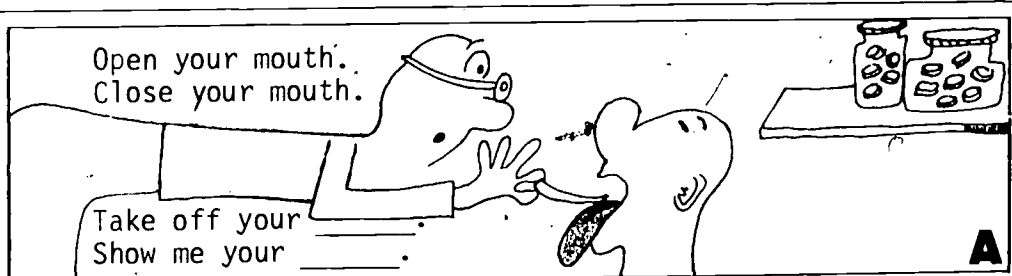
me	diarrhea	head	cut
my baby	a cold	eye (s)	broke
my son	a fever	ear (s)	burned
my daughter	a cough	stomach	hurt
my wife	a sore throat	back	toe (c/d)
my husband	a nose bleed (c/d)	chest	finger
him	wrong	leg(s)	knee
her	the matter	arm(s)	My
		hand(s)	Her
			His
			Today
			Yesterday

5 Medical (1)

Chunk 3 Respond to a doctor's instructions

Situation

In an examination room



Open your mouth.
Close your mouth.

Take off your _____.
Show me your _____.

A

I'll give you a shot.
Lie down.
Breathe in (out).

Say "ah."
B

Stand on the scale.
Eat good food.
Stay in bed.
Sleep a lot.
Drink a lot of water.
Take this medicine.
Don't smoke.
 drink.
 work.
 worry.
 stay up late.
 go to bed late.

Hold your breath.
C

We need a blood sample.
I'll give you a shot.

().
D

Vocabulary

a shot
a prescription
some medicine

blood
urine
stool

Lie
Sit

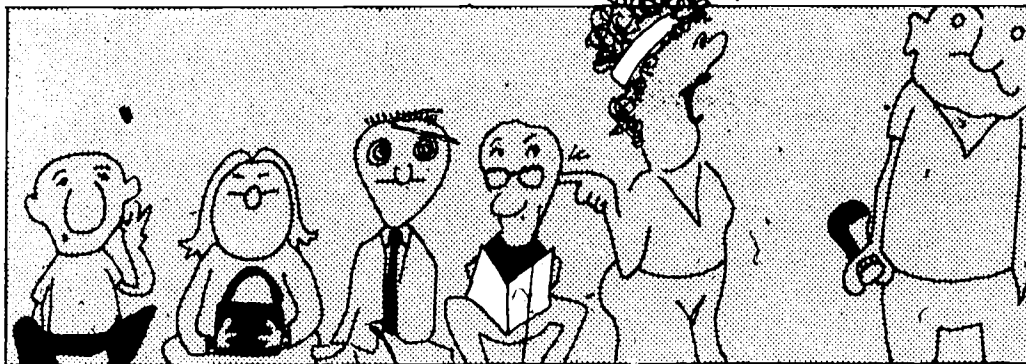
a prescription for some tranquilizers
a prescription for some _____
a pain killer
some tranquilizers

(c/d)

Chunk 4 Answer questions and describe the treatment

Situation

In the waiting room of a clinic or doctor's office
On the street with a friend
In someone's home



Did you see a doctor? ().
What did he say? ().
Did he give you any medicine? ().
Did you take any medicine?
get a ? ().

C

Did you see a specialist? Yes, I saw a .

D

Vocabulary

any medicine
a shot
a prescription

he
she
the doctor

a
the
your

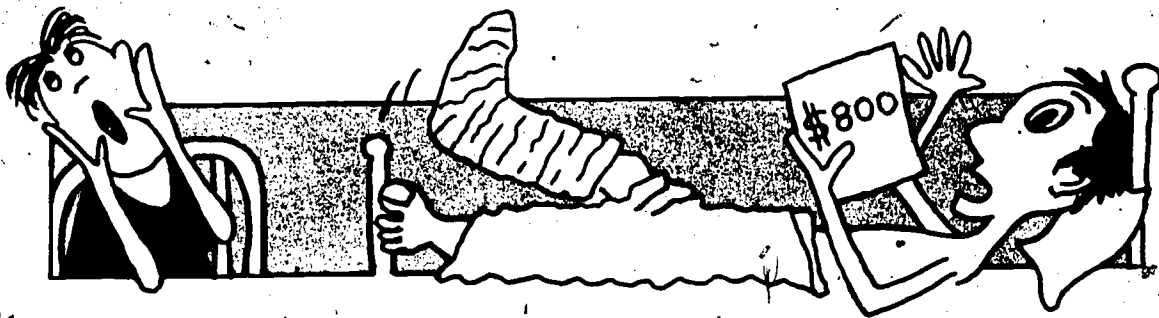
5 Medical (1)

Culture

In a clinic or a doctor's office, a patient needs to inform the receptionist of his/her arrival and then wait in a waiting room to be called by the doctor. New patients need to fill out a medical history form. Usually, a nurse will take a patient's weight, height, blood pressure and temperature before the patient sees the doctor.

In an emergency room in a hospital, patients get emergency care for serious burns or cuts, broken bones, poison, births, heart attacks, miscarriage or accidents. It is important to remember to bring identification and insurance documents to fill out forms.

- At a clinic, you may not see the same doctor each visit.
- A woman doctor may examine a man and vice versa.
- Eighty percent of all illnesses can be treated at home.
- Care in a doctor's office, clinic or hospital can be very expensive.



Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
A	U - Z		61 - 100 U - Z
B		DOCTOR CLINIC HOSPITAL EMERGENCY	
Options			

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
Sight words related to health.	C
Names of medical specialists.	D

Grammar

Statements

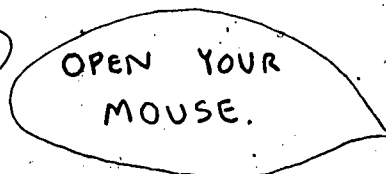
Affirmative/Negative

TO HAVE

I	have	a pen.
You		a pencil.
He	has	an eraser.
She		a book.

I	don't	have
You		
He	doesn't	
She		

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

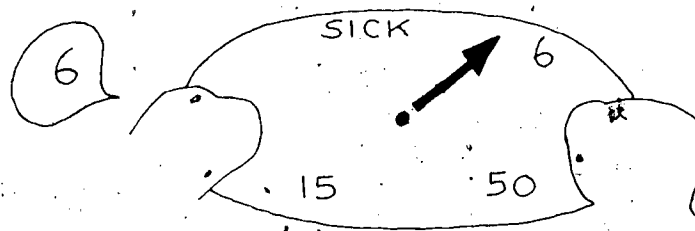
Day 2

Day 3

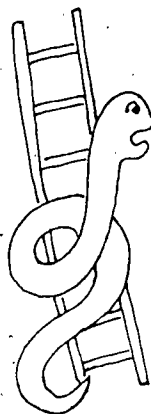
5 Medical (1)

Notes

1. Simon Says. One person plays the role of "doctor" and gives directives to the students, who stand in a semi-circle. Ex. "Open your mouth." Students perform the action only if the "doctor" says "Simon Says, open your mouth." Those who miss get a mark against their name. The student with the fewest marks wins.
2. Picture Cube. Make a cube with six sides, each showing a picture of a symptom or illness. Students throw the cube, look at the picture facing up and give the appropriate response (e.g. "I feel ____"). Vary this by making it a contest between teams.
3. Twenty Questions. Put pictures or names of illnesses or symptoms on index cards. A student takes a card and then responds to questions from the others who ask questions to identify the illness. They can only ask questions that require "Yes" or "No" as an answer.
4. Spinner. Make a Spinner board and cards. Students spin, and the arrow points to the response that should be given.



5. Literacy: Snakes and Ladders. Divide students into groups of four. Give each group a snakes and ladders board, a pair of dice and tokens for each player. Players throw the dice in turn and move along the lines saying each number aloud. When landing in a square with a ladder, the student goes up it. When landing in a square with a snake's head, the student goes back to square 1. The winner reaches 100 first.



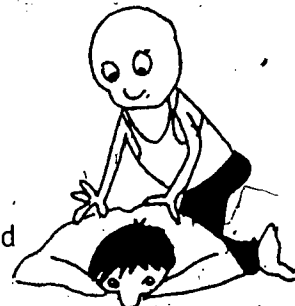
100	99	98	97	96	95	94	93	92	91
81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90
80	79	78	77	76	75	74	73	72	71
61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70
60	59	58	57	56	55	54	53	52	51
41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50
40	39	38	37	36	35	34	33	32	31
21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10

Planning

5 Medical (1)

Planning

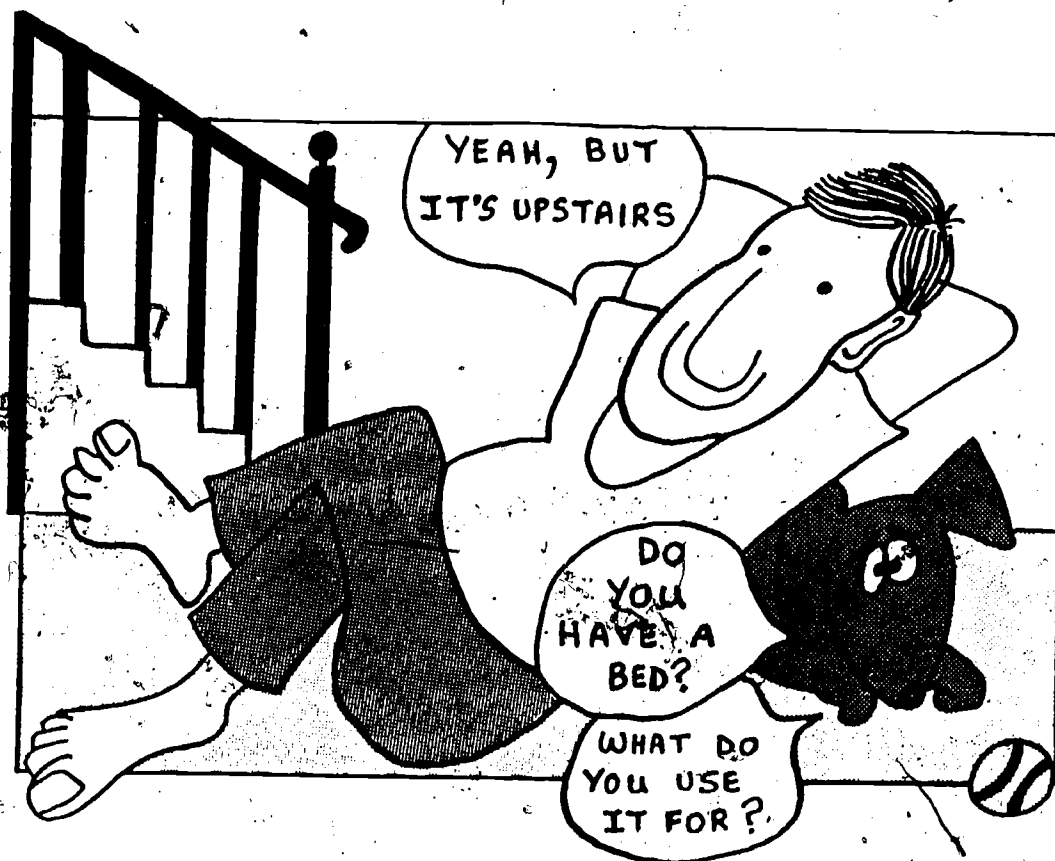
Help your students understand how to use medical services but stress that many illnesses can be treated at home.



Unit 6

Housing (1)

In this unit, students learn the language to describe their housing situation and give information about themselves.



Purposes

A

To describe one's house and the function of rooms.
To give one's address.
To identify the houses of classmates.

B

To act appropriately as a guest or host.
To identify the personal belongings of classmates.
To narrate personal information.

C/D

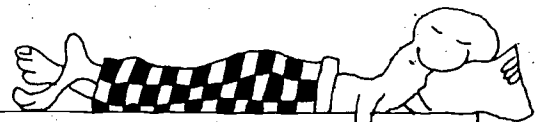
To describe one's housing situation.
To describe the location of one's house.
To describe furniture.
To find out the use of household articles and appliances.
To describe household activities.

6 Housing (1)

Chunk 2 Answer questions about rooms, furniture, appliances, activities and food

Situation

In the home



Where <u>do you</u> sleep?	I sleep(s) here.	A
Do you sleep there?	Yes, I _____ there. No, I _____ there.	B
Do you have a chair?	(_____).	C
What <u>do you</u> use the _____ for?	(_____).	
Where <u>do you</u> sleep?	(_____).	
What <u>do you</u> do in the _____?	(_____).	
Where is _____?	It's there.	D
Where is the elevator?	(_____).	
Do you have electricity?	(_____).	
What kind of chicken do you like?	Boiled.	

Vocabulary

chair	toilet	sleep	chicken	You/I
bed	bath tub	eat	fish	he
table	shower	cook	pork	she
bedroom	sink (c/d)	take a bath	beef	do
bathroom (b)	lamp	take a shower	boiled	does
kitchen	iron	go to the toilet	fried	electricity
living room	vacuum cleaner	study	steamed	running water
refrigerator	there	talk with	baked	an oven
stove	here	your friends (c/d)	broiled	It's
washing machine	over there	listen to music	barbecued	He's
dryer (c/d)	inside (c)	watch TV		She's
dishwasher	outside (c)	keep your food		
mop	upstairs (d)	keep your clothes		
broom	downstairs	put on your clothes		
couch		take off your clothes		

6 Housing (1)

Culture

Americans tend to move from one place to another. They may move because of jobs, because of families and friends or simply because they "need a change." It is not uncommon to see families scattered from Maine to California with parents, grandparents and children all living in different parts of the country.

When they arrive, most refugees will probably live in apartments. Apartments vary in size from one room (a studio) to several rooms. They can be in large apartment buildings, small buildings or in part of a house. Rent depends on the size and location of an apartment. California, Washington, D.C. and New York are areas where rent can be expensive.

Refugees in America also move a lot--many times in search of apartments with lower rents or larger apartments to house their extended families.

Housing is rented based on the number of people in the family unit. A family of 6 needs a 3-bedroom place.

Large apartment buildings usually have an elevator. There are sometimes washing machines and dryers in the basement.

Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
(identify written numbers orally) A		(one's name)	(one's name)
B		ADDRESS Review NAME MARRIED SINGLE	
(one's house number, barrack number or quad number) e.g. 2J24 Options			



Reading and Writing

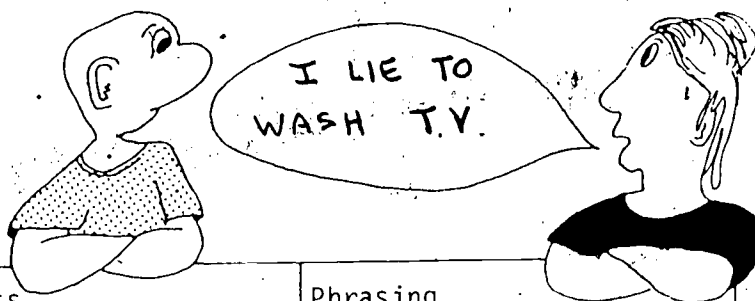
READING	WRITING
Common U.S. addresses.	
C/D	

Grammar

Yes-No Questions
TO HAVE

Do	I you	have	a pen? a pencil? an eraser?
Does	he she		

Pronunciation



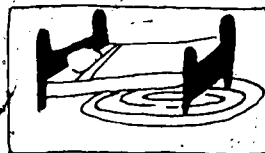
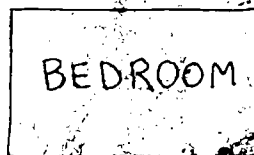
Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1
Day 2
Day 3

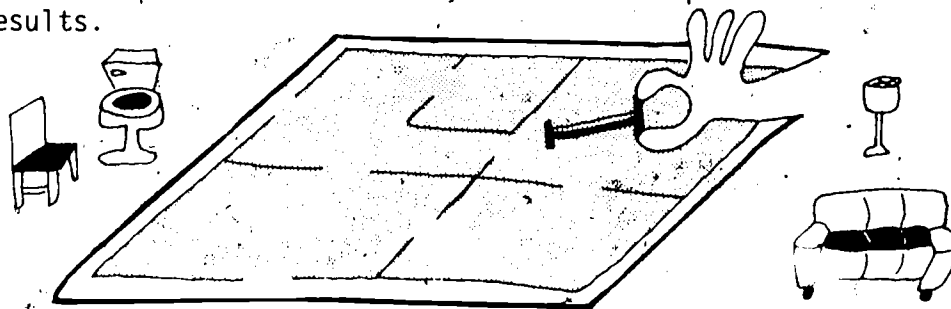
6 Housing (1)

Notes

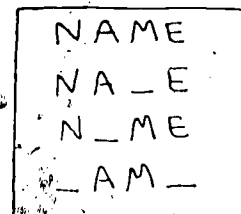
1. Snap. Use index cards to make a set of 60 cards. 30 cards have the names (or pictures) of the rooms in a house. The other 30 have names (or pictures) of furniture. Deal equal numbers of cards to each player. One by one players put down a card facing up in a single pile. When the student sees a card that matches one in his/her hand he/she puts it down and calls "SNAP" before anyone else claims it. The winner is the one who makes the most matches.



2. Floor Plan. Use Cuisenaire rods to lay out the floor plan of a "typical" house in the U.S. Point out the rooms and their functions. Use other rods to represent pieces of furniture. Have the students place them in the proper rooms.
3. Cultural Exploration. Have students use rods to make floor plans of their houses in their countries. Ask them to make comparisons between their houses and the "typical" house in the U.S. Have them explain differences.
4. Toy Furniture. Divide students into groups. Give each group a paper with a floor plan of a house. Distribute sets of toy furniture. Ask students to place the furniture in the rooms indicated on the floor plan and to describe where the items are placed. Afterwards, have them compare their results.



5. Literacy: Missing Letters. Write a word the class knows on the blackboard. Write the word several more times erasing different letters. Students then write in the missing letters. Vary this by making it a contest between teams. Another option is to prepare individual student worksheets.

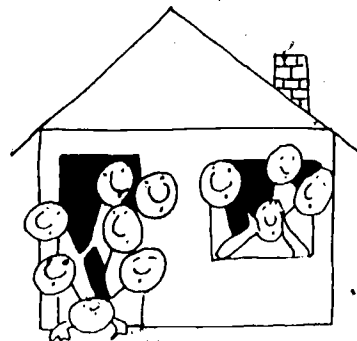


Planning

6 Housing (1)

Planning

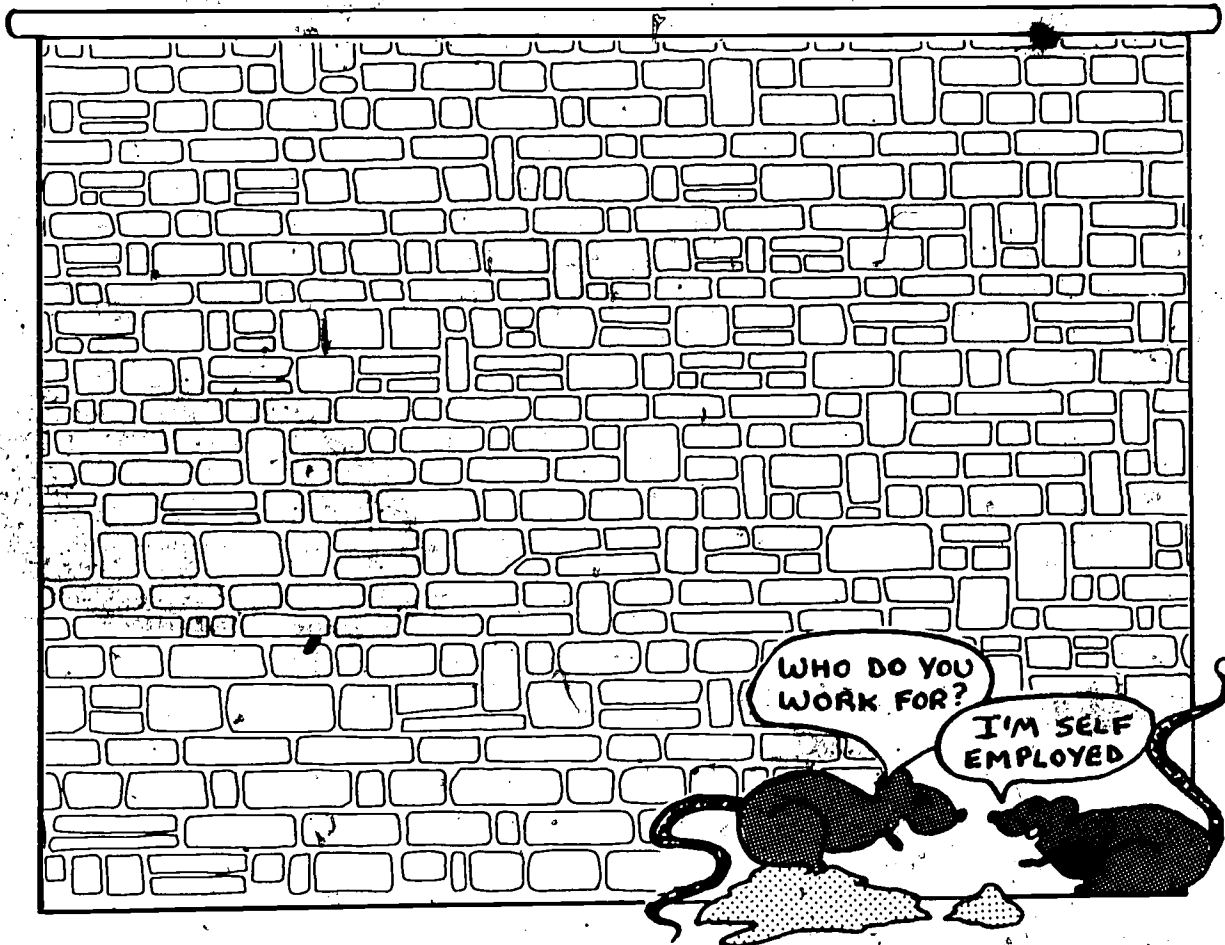
Stress the point that zoning laws do not allow an unlimited number of tenants in an apartment.



Unit 7

Employment (1)

At some point after arrival, a person will likely have job interviews of some sort and will need to provide information about past jobs. In this unit, students learn how to describe their jobs and also identify their skills for others.



Purposes



- A** To describe one's past and present occupations.
To describe one's work skills.
To narrate one's name, address and country of origin.
- B/C** To describe the past occupations of one's family members.
To indicate the length of time one worked.
To indicate means used getting to work.
- D** To indicate own general strengths related to work.
To indicate one's salary.

7 Employment (1)

Chunk1 Describe one's past and present jobs and skills

Situation

A formal interview

 <p>What was your job in <u>Laos</u>?</p> <p>Can you <u>farm</u>?</p>	<p>I was a <u>farmer</u>.</p> <p>Yes, I can _____</p> <p>No, I can't _____</p>	 <p>A</p>
<p>What can you do?</p>	<p>I can <u>farm</u>.</p>	<p>B</p>
<p>How long <u>were</u> <u>you</u> a <u>farmer</u>?</p>	<p>_____ years.</p> <p>From 19__ to 19__</p>	<p>C/D</p>

Vocabulary

farm
cook
sew
wash (clothes)
build (a house)

You/I
he
she

farmer
housewife
soldier
seamstress
(dressmaker)
carpenter

were
was



Laos
Cambodia
Vietnam
(other)

7 Employment (1)

Chunk 2 Answer questions about past and present jobs

Situation

An interview situation sitting in an office

	What is your job now?	I'm a student.	
	What do you do now? does he/she	I'm a _____ He's/She's a _____	A
	Are you a _____ now?	Yes, I am a _____ he/she is _____	
	Is he/she _____	No, I am a _____ he/she is _____	
	What did you do in <u>Laos</u> ?	I was a <u>farmer</u> . He/She _____	
	What did <u>your wife</u> do in <u>Laos</u> ?	My _____ was a _____ His/Her _____	B
	<u>Do</u> you have a job? (in <u>Laos</u>)?	(_____).	
	<u>Do</u> you work?	(_____).	
	Does <u>your wife</u> work?	(_____).	
	<u>Do</u> you work hard?	(_____).	
	What <u>do</u> you do?	I am a _____ was _____ I <u>sell</u> _____ in a <u>shop</u> . <u>sold</u> _____	C/D

Vocabulary

farmer	mechanic	shop	sell/sold	Laos
dressmaker	repairwoman	market	study/studied	Cambodia
gardener	repairman	office	teach/taught	Vietnam
barber	baker (c/d)	school	farm/farmed	(other)
tailor	homemaker	hospital		
soldier	government worker	garage	wife	do
cook	government employee	restaurant	husband	did
student	policeman	hotel	mother	your
teacher	policewoman	store	father	his
doctor (c/d)	driver			her
nurse			Laos	
			(other)	

7 Employment (1)

Chunk 3 Describe one's past and present jobs

Situation

A formal interview



Where do you work?

(_____).

On a farm.

What time do you work?

8 to 5.

8 AM to 5 PM.

Who do you work for?

(_____).

How do you go to work?

By car.

On foot.

I walk(ed).

Do you like your job?

(_____).

Why?/Why not?

(Because) _____.

How many hours a day do you work? (_____).

What days do you work?

Monday to Friday.

Everyday except _____.

Everyday.

How long have you worked there?
did you work

Since January.

For _____ years.

Vocabulary

car
bicycle
bus
motorcycle
cart

on a farm.
in an office.
at home.
in a school.
in a hotel.

in a restaurant
in a store
in a shop
in a hospital

day
week

Laos
(other)

time
hours

Hmong
(other)

years
months

do
did

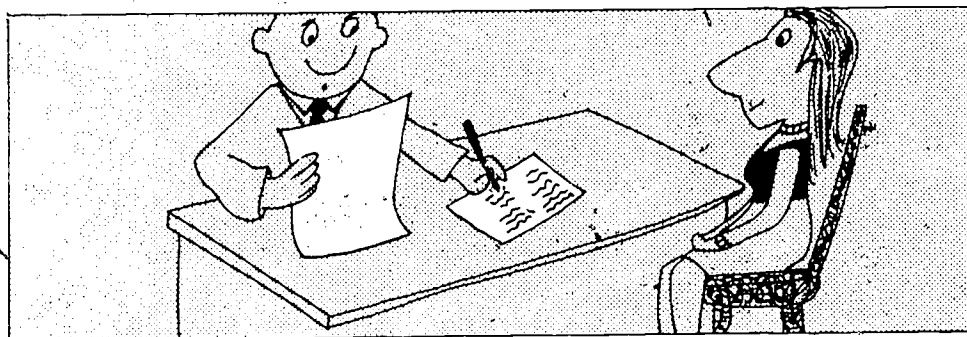
farmer
(other)

January
(other)

Chunk 4 Indicate one's salary

Situation

An interview situation sitting in an office



How much (money) do you make? \$ _____ an hour.

C

How often do you get paid? Once a month.

How much do you get an hour? \$ _____.

What's your salary? \$ _____.
What was

D

Vocabulary

once a month
~~once a week~~
every week
twice a month
every 2 weeks
monthly
weekly

an hour
a day
a week
a month
a year

do
did

7 Employment (1)

Culture

A person's education and job experience are important and provide valuable information to an employer. Americans believe strongly in hard work and study. They respect people who have an education or who have worked seriously at a job.

A person may have skills that are job-related, even though he/she has never had a job. A refugee needs to speak with confidence of these skills. Housekeeping, cooking, childcare, sewing, jewelry making and painting are examples.

Volunteer work is a way to gain job experience. Americans value volunteer work. Volunteer work provides experience, contacts and friends. It can also demonstrate to an employer a good attitude toward work.

- Refugees may need help in identifying their skills.
- A resume or record of past education and employment will prove helpful when applying for a job.
- Service in the army can also be considered as a job.



Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
A (time) e.g. 9:00 10:00			
B			(one's name) (one's address) (one's country of origin)
Options		FROM 19__ TO 19__ (occupations) e.g. WAITER Review COUNTRY ¢ \$	

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
	Fill out a simple form. C/D

Grammar

Question Word

HOW MANY

Plurals

-S

How many

pens

pencils

books

erasers

do you have?

Pronunciation



I'M A STUDENT.
I GO TO SKOON.



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

Day 2

Day 3

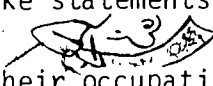
7 Employment (1)

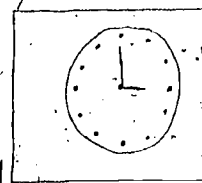
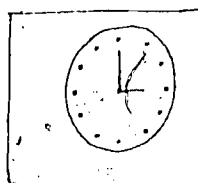
Notes

1. Picture Narrative. Prepare a brief descriptive paragraph to accompany a picture of a person. Hold the picture up and read the narrative a few times to the students. Ask them questions. Have them recite the narrative. As a follow-up, have them write a narrative to accompany a picture of theirs following a model, e.g.,

This is Lin.
He's in Chicago now.
He's a typist.
In Laos, he was a teacher.



2. Matching. Prepare a worksheet with pictures or frames of common occupations and work sites (e.g. farmer and farm, teacher and school). Students draw lines connecting each job with the appropriate places. As a follow-up, have students make statements about their choices.
3. Depiction.  Students draw a picture of themselves at their occupation in their country. They also draw a picture of their present occupation (student) and the job they want in the U.S. Students exchange drawings and interpret the other's drawing for the class. Ex: "He was a farmer. He is a student now. He wants to be a typist."
4. Charades. Put the names (or pictures) of several common jobs on index cards. Students form teams. Taking turns, a person from each team takes a card and mimes the occupation to get team members to guess it. Put a brief time limit on this activity (2 minutes). As a follow-up for advanced classes, ask them to describe the sequence of guesses.
5. Answer Cards. Put answers (pictures or statements) on index cards. When a student takes a card, he/she reads the answer and then gives the question that elicits that answer. Vary this by making it a contest between two teams. The team representative who asks the question correctly gets a point.
6. Cultural Exploration. Bring a guest to the classroom to be a case worker in a state employment office. Practice interview techniques. Ask students how they get jobs in their country.
7. Literacy: Time Concentration. Make 2 sets of cards that match clock faces and play the game.

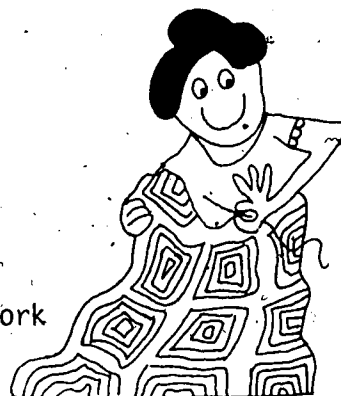


Planning

7 Employment (1)

Planning

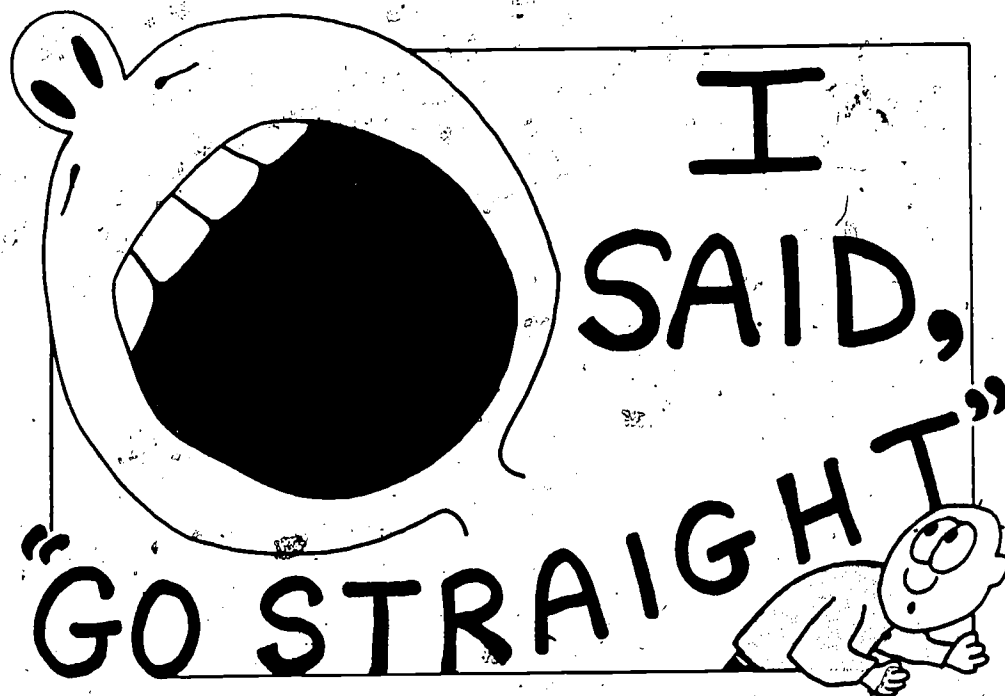
Your students may make little distinction between work and other parts of their lives. Help them identify and define their work skills.



Unit 8

Directions

Being lost in a new community with only limited language skills can be disturbing. This unit gives students the language necessary to ask for and understand directions and give personal information to those who aid them.



Purposes

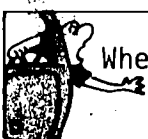

- A** To ask for and give locations of the local community services.
To ask for, understand, and follow directions to a place.
- B** To state address of oneself and one's classmates.
To respond to questions about locations.
To narrate information about one's destination.
- C** To ask for and give directions to stores.
To answer questions about one's own route.
To ask for and use information to locate unfamiliar medical facilities.
- D** To clarify by repeating and rephrasing explanations and instructions.
To ask for clarification by giving alternatives.

8 Directions

Chunk 1 Ask for and give locations of buildings

Situation

On the street

 <p>Where's the <u>hospital</u>? your house?</p>	 <p>Next to the <u>bank</u>. Next to _____</p>
<p>What's the <u>address</u>?</p>	<p>The address is _____</p>
<p>Is the <u>hospital</u> <u>next to</u> the <u>bank</u>?</p>	<p>Yes, it is. No, The <u>hospital</u> is <u>next to</u> the _____</p>
<p>Is the <u>hospital</u> far? near?</p>	<p>Yes, it is. No, it's _____</p>
<p>Where's _____'s house?</p>	<p>It's next to _____'s house. I live in _____. My house is near the _____. My address is _____.</p>
<p>Where's the _____? Is it far? near?</p>	<p>Two blocks <u>ahead</u>. (_____).</p>
<p>Where's the _____?</p>	<p>Just past the <u>intersection</u>. (_____).</p>

Vocabulary

hospital/bank

market

school

post office

supermarket

drug store

clinic

gas station (c/d)

police station

electric company

telephone company

department store

the
your/my
his
her
John's

next to

behind

in front of

(across from)

near

beside (b)

opposite (c)

across the street from _____
on the other side of _____
the street from _____ (d)
to the left of _____
to the right of _____

intersection

corner

(other)

ahead

back

Chunk 2 Answer questions and state one's destination

Situation

A conversation between people who know each other somewhat:
 on the telephone
 on the street
 in a building

Where are you going?



Are you going _____?

I'm going to the market.

home.

to _____'s house.

Yes/No.

Are you going to the market? (_____).

Where are you going? (_____).

Who are you going with? (_____).

What time are you going? (_____).

What are you doing? (_____).

How are you going (to work)? I'm going to walk.

C/D

Vocabulary

the market

my house

school

the post office

my home

the hospital

the drugstore

the department store (c)

the gas station

the police station

the supermarket

the _____

the telephone company (d)

the electric company

work

school

walk

drive

take the bus

8 Directions

Chunk 3 Ask for and give directions

Situation

On the street

In a building

On the telephone (some of the exchanges)

<p><u>Go straight.</u></p>	<p>How do I go to the <u>market</u>?</p>
<p><u>Go straight.</u></p> <p>(_____).</p> <p>Yes, it's <u>on the corner.</u></p> <p>No, I don't know (where it is).</p>	<p>Excuse me. How do I get to the <u>market</u>?</p> <p>Can you help me?</p> <p>I'm looking for the <u>market.</u></p> <p>Do you know where the _____ is?</p>
<p><u>Walk 2 blocks.</u></p> <p>(_____).</p> <p>(_____).</p>	<p>Can you tell me how to get to the <u>market</u>?</p> <p>Which way is the _____?</p> <p>Can you give me direction to the _____?</p> <p>What direction is the _____?</p>
	<p>Left or right?</p>

Vocabulary

market

bank

school

post office

hospital

supermarket

drugstore

department store

gas station

police station

_____ clinic

electric company

telephone company

go straight

turn left

turn right

go two blocks

go to the corner

and turn right

left

on the corner

on the left/right

on the left side of
the street

right (c/d)

between _____ and _____

near the _____

at the next intersection

stoplight

walk 2 blocks

walk _____ blocks

turn right at _____

turn left at _____

turn at _____ St.

Culture

If you cannot find your way around, it is common in America to stop a stranger on the street to ask for directions. Americans do not usually go with strangers to their destination, although this does happen.

Politeness helps when asking strangers for directions. "Excuse me," or "Please, excuse me. Can I ask you a question?" are useful expressions. Thanking the person for the information afterwards is a polite thing to do. When the person does not provide information, it is still customary to offer thanks.



Literacy

READING		WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sign Words/Signs
A		POST OFFICE HOSPITAL (city) PANAT NIKOM (country) THAILAND
		SCHOOL MARKET
B		BANK Review (one's address) e.g. 2324 Panat Nikom Thailand
Review (time) e.g. 9:00 1:00 9:30 4:45 1:15 Options		Review (one's address)

8 Directions

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
Follow a simple map.	C/D

Grammar

Question Words

HOW/WHO/WHAT/WHERE

How	are you?
Who	is he?
What	is it?
Where	is the hospital?

Pronunciation



'KISS ME,
WHERE IS THE
HOPITAL?



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

Day 2

Day 3

Notes

1. Action Sequence. Have students direct each other to build small constructions with Cuisenaire rods. Ex. "Put the red rod on the blue rod." As a follow-up, students describe the completed structure. For advanced classes, have students sit back-to-back. One student builds a structure and directs the partner to build the same.
2. Floor Map. Use chalk to mark off the classroom floor into streets. Add names of streets and buildings. On cards or orally, give the students a series of directions to follow. Ex: "Pick up a money order at the bank on Apple Road. Then go to the post office on 3rd Street. Sit down at Kay's Restaurant on Coffee Avenue." An option is to move benches or desks to mark streets.
3. Map Dyad. In pairs, students work to complete information that is missing on each of their maps. The maps are of the same area except each has names of places and streets that do not appear on the other. Students ask each other questions to get the information, e.g. "Where's the _____?" Put the students back-to-back, so one can't see the other's map.
4. Destination Chart. Make a chart showing various destinations and people. Have students ask and answer questions based on the information in it. For advanced classes, add more information to allow for more types of questions.

NAME	DATE
Borden	
Tam	
Bouney	
Samkhut	

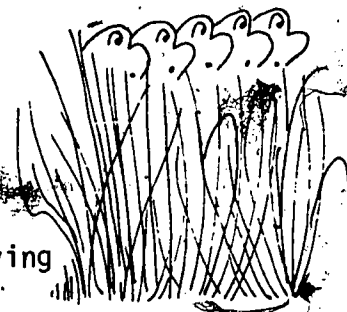
5. Cultural Exploration. Have students draw a map of a town or village in their country. Put this next to a "typical" town in the U.S. Have the students make comparisons and draw conclusions about differences.
6. Language Exploration. For advanced classes, elicit various expressions and actions for stopping someone on the street to ask for directions. Discuss differences and appropriate usage. Ask the students to consider non-verbal language also.

Maze Pairs. Have students sit back-to-back. Each student has the same maze drawn on a piece of paper. With a pencil, one student in each pair draws lines to show how to get out of the maze. The students then give oral directions to their partners helping them to get out in the same way. Mazes are compared at the end of the exercise.

8 Direction

Planning

Take your students on a field trip to practice giving and receiving directions.



Unit 9

Shopping (1)

After arrival, a person is not going to be able to call up a friend or sponsor every time shopping must be done. This unit gives students the language necessary to use a supermarket, shopping center and department store to secure their needs.



Purposes

A

To describe one's shopping needs.

To ask for information about the location of shopping areas.

B

To ask for directions to locate shopping areas.

To describe one's errands.

To describe daily schedules.

To describe one's shopping preferences and desires.

C/D

To return items for refund.

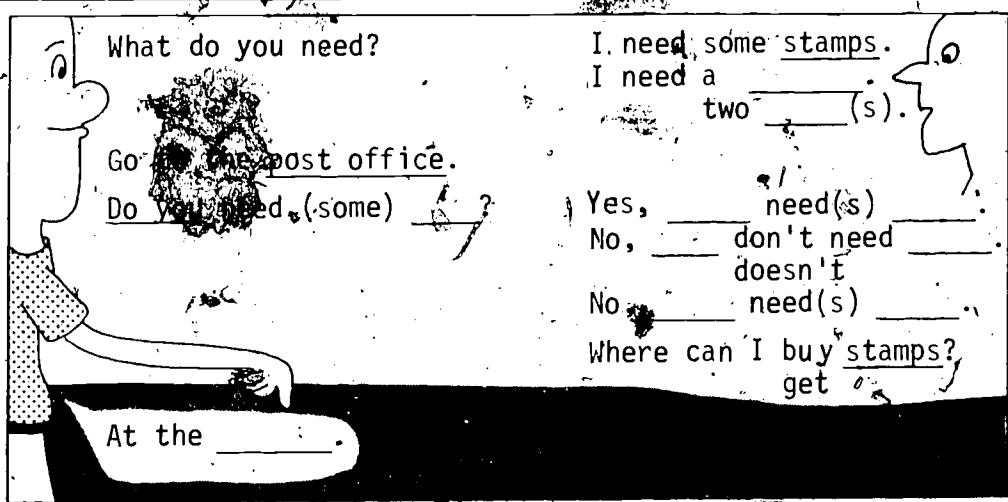
To give reasons for returning or exchanging items.

9 Shopping (1)

Chunk 1 Describe shopping needs and ask questions about location

Situation

In a store
In someone's home



What do you need?

I need some stamps.

I need a two (s).

Go to the post office.

Do you need (some) stamps?

Yes, I need (s).

No, I don't need (s).

No, I doesn't need (s).

Where can I buy stamps?

get stamps.

At the post office.

I need to send a letter.

Where do I go?

(Please) go to the post office.

Do you want (some) stamps?

Yes, I want (some) stamps.

No, I don't want (any) stamps.

What do you want (to buy)?

I want stamps.

What do you need to get?

at the post office?

Do you need anything at the post office?

I want stamps.

B

C/D

Vocabulary

to get

to buy

to buy at the
supermarket

to buy at

to make dinner

to mail a letter

post office

hospital

market

store

drugstore

stamp(s)

pencil(s)

shirt(s)

book(s)

medicine

food

aerogramme

send a letter

mail a letter

study English

buy

get some

see a doctor

want

need

do you

does he

does she

Chunk 2 Describe errands

Situation

In someone's home
On the street

APPLE RD.



Where are you going?

I need stamps.
I'm going to the post office.
I need to send a letter.

B

Where are you going?

I'm going to the post office
to buy stamps.
get _____.

I'm going to the post office
because I need to buy _____.
want to get _____.

Where are you going?

I'm going to the _____
to _____
because my foot hurts.
because I need to send a
letter.

want

Why are you going to the _____? Because _____

C/D

Vocabulary

stamps

aerogrammes

food

medicine

some food

envelopes

books (c/d)

a dictionary

a magazine

a newspaper

clothes

furniture

gas

oil

a bus ticket

a train ticket

vitamins

paper

to send a letter

to mail a letter

to buy

to get some

to see a doctor

some food

some

food

to study

my foot hurts

(other ailments)

post office

market

hospital

school

drugstore

bookstore

department store

gas station

bus station

train station

clothing store

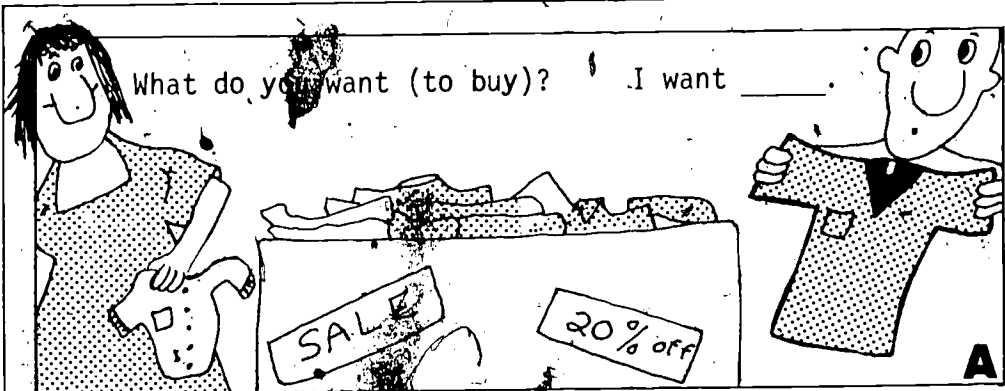
supermarket

9 Shopping (1)

Chunk 3 State and comment on shopping preferences and get a refund

Situation

At a department store, supermarket, market or a shop



What do you want (to buy)? I want ____

SALE 20% off

A

This is cheap.
This is expensive. B

Can you give me a refund?
This meat isn't good.
This shirt doesn't fit. C/D

Do you have the receipt? Yes/No.

Vocabulary

shirt
hat
skirt
dress
jacket
coat

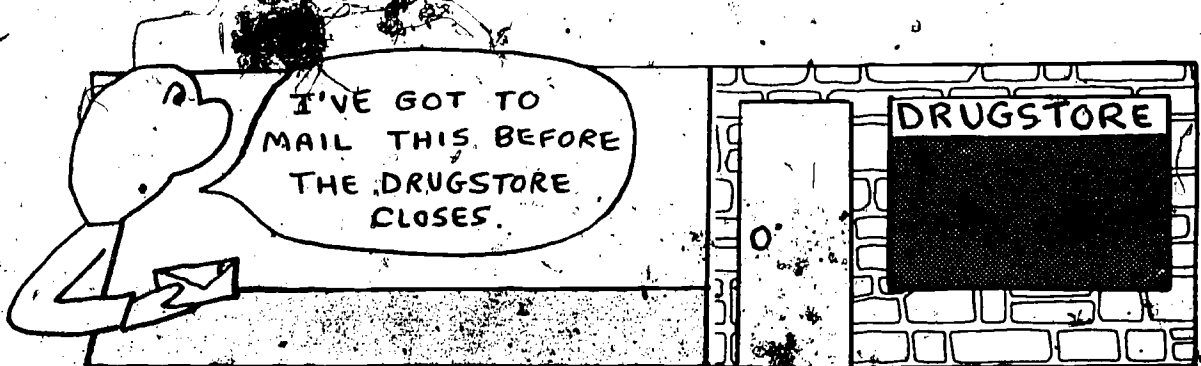
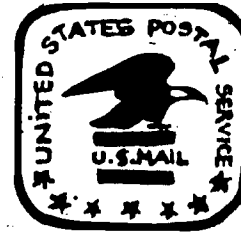
meat
fish
chicken
pork
beef
milk

good
fresh

Culture

There are many community services in the U.S. Almost every town has at least one post office, drugstore or supermarket.

- The postal service is run by the U.S. government. Its colors are red, white and blue and its emblem is the bald eagle.
- In very small towns, the local post office may be the supermarket or drugstore.
- "Where are you going?" is not used as a greeting.
- You need a receipt to return purchases to a store for a refund.



Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
Review 1 - 100 A		MARKET Review POST OFFICE MAIL	
B			
Options			

9 Shopping (1)

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
Names of different types of stores. Ex: Hardware, Jewelry	
Supermarket and department store ads. Identify coupons in newspapers or magazines to use for comparative shopping.	

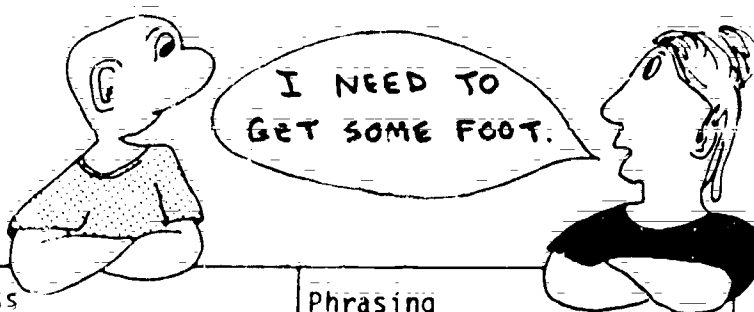
Grammar

Imperatives _____
Affirmative/Negative

Touch _____
Don't touch

this.
that.
your nose.

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1 _____

Day 2 _____

Day 3 _____

Notes

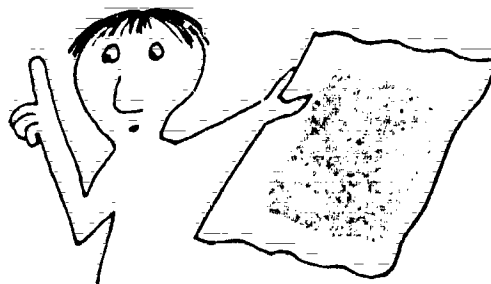
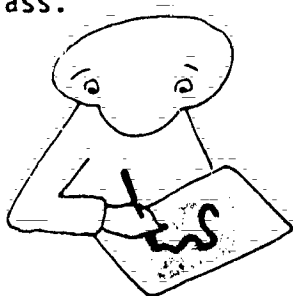
1. Getting Your Own Back. Collect one or more personal belongings (e.g. pen, notebook, sandal, watch) from each student. They get their belongings by responding to the question "What do you need?" with "I need my ____." Vary the activity by demanding accuracy. Keeping the item if the student gives an incorrect response.
2. Missing Pictures. Prepare a set of pictures in which something is missing or needed (e.g. an envelope without a stamp, a man without a shoe). Use the pictures as cues when modeling the question "What do you need?" and the response "I need a ____." As a follow-up, have the students make their own pictures with something missing. Have them work in small groups to ask and answer questions about their pictures.
3. Memory Chain. Begin the exercise by saying, "I'm going to the store because I need to buy some rice." The next person repeats the statement and adds another item, e.g. "and some oil." Continue until all students have added an item.
4. Cummings Device. Have students practice the exchange:



- A: What do you need?
 B: I need some _____. Where can I buy it?
 A: In the _____.
 B: Where is it?
 A: It's _____.

On the blackboard, put names or pictures of a few possible answers for each slot. Have the students practice the exchange by substituting various expressions. As a follow-up, have students add their own expressions for the slots.

5. Cultural Exploration. Ask students to draw a picture of how community services are provided in their country and how basic needs are met. They explain their depictions to the class.



6. Buzz. Students count from 1-100. The first says 1. The second says 2. The third says "Buzz". The number 3 or any number with 3 in it cannot be said (23, 13, 93). Whenever a mistake is made, the students must start again at 1.

9 Shopping (1)

Planning

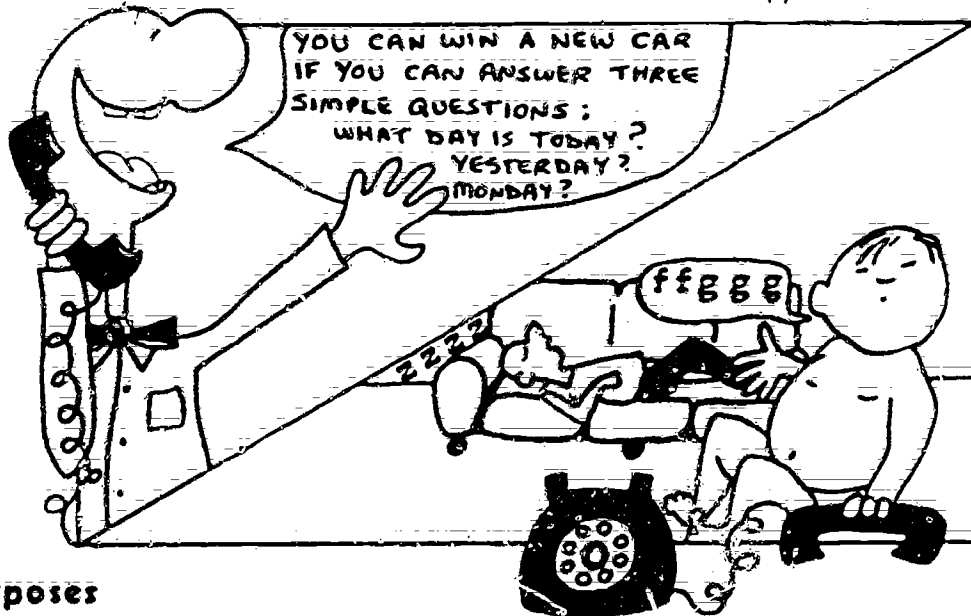


"Please" and "excuse me" can make the most direct question more polite.

Unit 10

Calendar/Telephone

Knowing how to read calendars and identify time and time periods is essential knowledge to have when keeping appointments. This unit gives the student the names of months, days and various time periods and helps prepare them for later units when the focus is on appointments.



Purposes

- A**
 - To ask and answer basic questions about time.
 - To identify the day (today, yesterday, tomorrow).
 - To describe daily schedules.
 - To identify morning, afternoon, evening and night.
- B**
 - To ask about and give the date when asked.
 - To identify the current month and names of the twelve months.
 - To give one's birthdate.
- C**
 - To ask for assistance using a pay phone.
 - To indicate to a caller whether a person is there.
 - To use a calendar.
 - To use ordinal numbers.
 - To initiate and answer telephone calls.
 - To make and receive long distance and collect calls.
- D**
 - To respond appropriately to recorded messages.
 - To ask for help making a long distance call.
 - To respond appropriately when dialing or receiving a wrong number.
 - To call the operator for information.
 - To give a short telephone message.

10 Calendar/Telephone

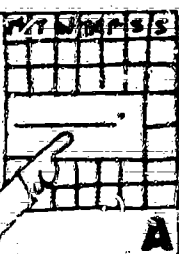
Chunk 1 Ask and answer basic questions about time

Situation

Questions asked of strangers or friends in a business or social setting
Part of a conversation taking place on the telephone

What day is it (today)?
month is it?
What day was yesterday?

It's Monday.
It's January.
Yesterday was _____.



A

What day is tomorrow?
Is today Monday?

Is it _____?
Is today Monday?

What day is this?

Tomorrow is _____.
Yes, it is.
No, it isn't.
It's Monday.
It's January.

B

What day is it today?
What's the date today?
What was the date yesterday?

(____).
(____).
(____).

C/D

Vocabulary

Monday
Tuesday
Wednesday
Thursday
Friday
Saturday
Sunday

January
February
March
April
May
June
July
August
September
October
November
December

day
month

yesterday
last Tuesday
last _____

today
tomorrow
next Monday
next _____

Chunk 2 Give one's birthdate

Situation

Social or business meeting
Formal interview



(In) what month were you born? October.
October, 1958.
().

My name is _____. I'm
from _____. I was born
in October.

B

What is your birthdate? January 11 (th), 1952.

When is your birthday? January 11 (th).

What month were you born? ().

C/D

Vocabulary

October
November
December
January
February
March

April
May
June
July
August
September

month
day
date

10 Calendar/Telephone

Chunk 3 Describe daily schedule and activities

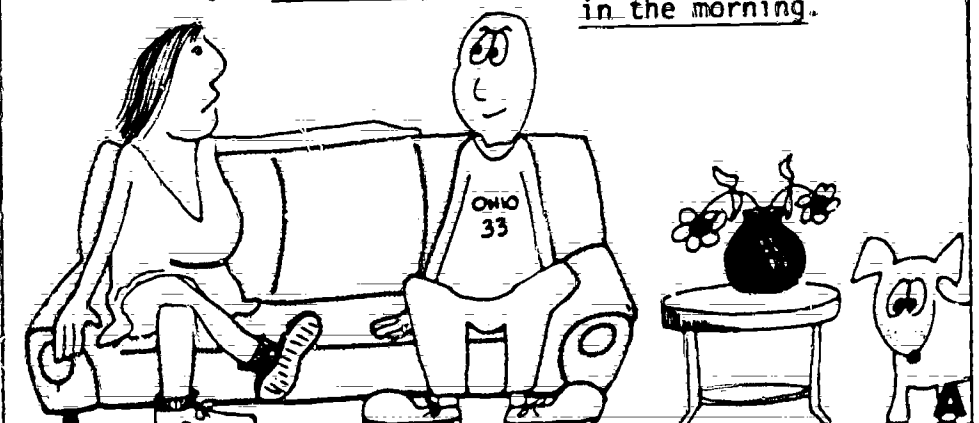
Situation

The first two questions could be asked in a business or social setting by friends or strangers

The second two questions will probably be asked of friends and co-workers

When do you study English?

I study English
in the morning.



Do you _____ in the morning?

Yes, I _____ in the morning.
No, I _____ in the morning.

B

what are you doing this _____?

What did you do last weekend? _____.

C D

Vocabulary

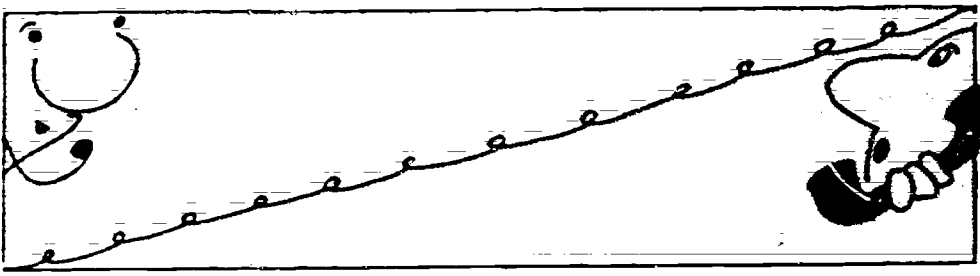
study English
study C.O.
study pre-skills
sleep
eat
work
go to ==

in the morning	this
in the afternoon	next
in the evening	
at night	
at noon (b/c/d)	
at 8:00	

Chunk 4 Make a long distance call

Situation

On the telephone



I'd like to call long distance to _____.

What is your number, please? _____

Heilo. This is Gail.
Is _____ there?

Hello.

Hello. May I speak to _____?

Hi.
This is _____.
Yes, just a minute.
No, she is not here.
She's coming back at 5:00.
(I think) you have the wrong number.

I'd like to leave a message.

OK.

Vocabulary

she
he

call long distance
make a long distance phone call

Gail
(your student's name)

5:00
(any time)

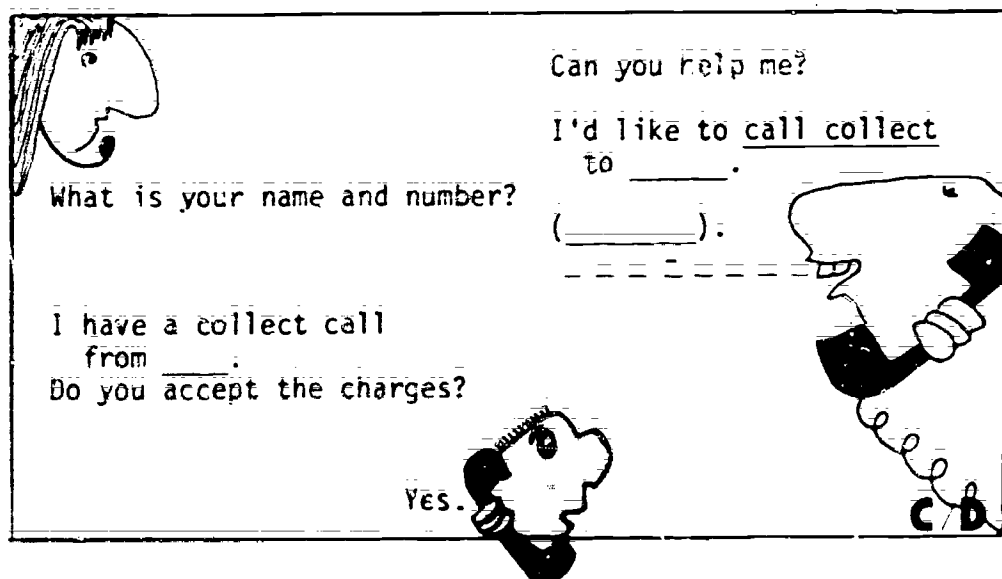
your
the

10 Calendar/Telephone

Chunk 5 Make a collect call and a call to the operator

Situation

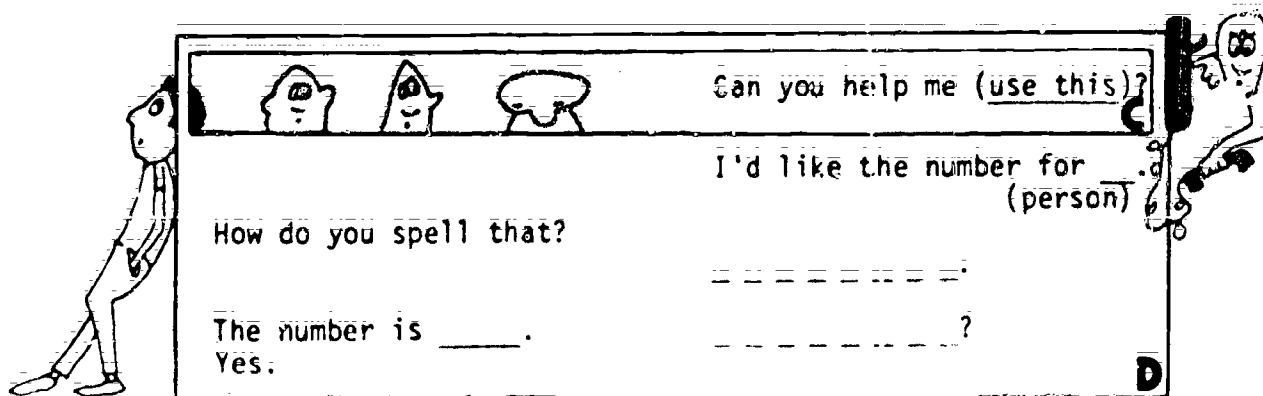
On the telephone



Situation

Using a pay phone

On the telephone calling the information operator



Vocabulary

use this
call this number
call the operator

call collect
make a collect call

Chunk 6 Respond to previously recorded messages

Situation

On the telephone

All of our lines are temporarily busy.
Please hold and someone will assist
you as soon as a line is free.

Thank you for waiting.
Our lines are still busy.
Please hold on ...

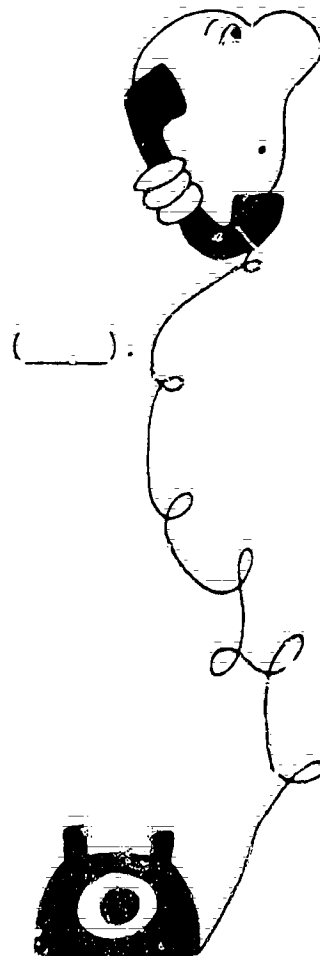
Thank you for calling Ms. _____.
Ms. _____ is not available to
take any calls now. At the
sound of the bell please give
your name and leave your
message. Thank you.

Hi. This is John.
Sorry, I'm out.
Leave your name and message
when you hear the bell.

Thank you for calling.
365-0134 has been changed.
The new number is 581-2611.

I'm sorry. The number you
have dialed is not in service
at this time. If you need
assistance, stay on the line and
an operator will assist you.

D



Vocabulary

still busy
now engaged

Ms.
Mr.
Miss
Mrs.

10 Calendar/Telephone

Culture

The telephone is an integral part of American life. Americans use the telephone for many purposes. They make appointments, get information, do business, even talk to friends and family on the telephone instead of traveling and talking to them directly. It is easy to find public telephones, which operate on coins (nickels, dimes and quarters).

- All local numbers have 7 digits, e.g. 257-7751. There is a pause between the third and fourth digit when saying the number.
- Long distance calls are made by dialing 1 and the area code before the number, e.g. 1-802-257-7751.
- Person-to-person calls: You make this call when you want to speak to a specific person. It is usually more expensive than a regular call.
- Collect calls: The person called pays for the call, not the person calling. The person called can accept or reject the call.
- On hold: Sometimes, when calling a store or office, you will be put on hold. This means that the person answering the phone wants you to wait until he/she is free to talk. Don't hang up.

Literacy



READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
A (dial a telephone number)		(date) e.g. Jan. 16, 1982	
B		(months) e.g. JANUARY Review (date)	
Options		(days of the week) e.g. MONDAY (abbreviations) (days) e.g. MON., TUES. (months) e.g. JAN., FEB.	(date)

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
Ordinal numbers.	The date on a variety of forms. C
Spell something for the purposes of clarification (with/without reference to a written sheet).	Write something for the purpose of clarification.
Telephone book to find area codes, telephone numbers and long distance rates.	The name, address and telephone number of a caller.
	A short telephone message. Ex: DR. GAT CALLED. CALL HIM BACK AT 10. D

Grammar

Present Continuous

TO BE

Contractions

I'm

touching

this.

You're

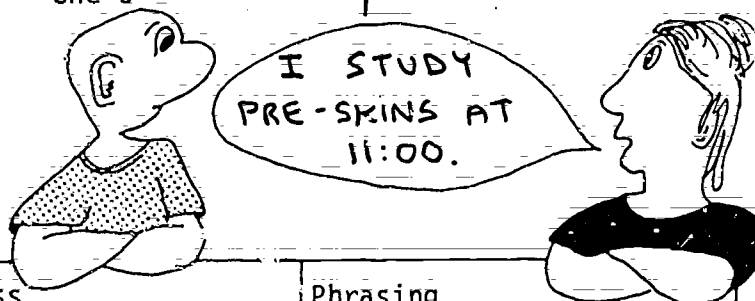
that.

He's

my hair.

She's

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

Day 2

Day 3

10 Calendar/Telephone

Notes

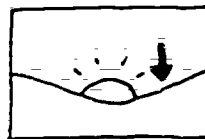
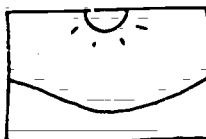
1. Daily Routine Chart. Prepare a chart with pictures of a mythical person's activities and parts of the day (e.g. "eat breakfast," "In the morning"). Use the chart to elicit a statement from students. As a follow-up, have students make a chart of their own daily routines. Ask them to prepare a 3-minute "speech" where they use their chart to explain their daily routine. For advanced classes, add the time of day (e.g. 9:30, 4:00).
2. Date Cards. Prepare 4 sets of index cards. On one set put the months and on the others put days of the week, numbers 1-31 and various years (e.g. 1979, 1940). Students turn over a card from each set and give the date.
3. Birth Dates. Have students put their birth dates on cards and ask them to arrange themselves in order from oldest to youngest. Have them arrange themselves in order by month of birth -- from January to December. Have them do this without talking just by reading each other's cards.
4. Calendar Roulette. On poster board, put calendars of all months of the year. Put the poster board on the table or floor. Have students toss a coin onto the board. They read the date that the coin lands on.

5. Song. Have students sing "Happy Birthday."

Happy Birthday to you
Happy Birthday to you
Happy Birthday, dear _____
Happy Birthday to you.



6. Picture Cues. Use pictures to signal students to say parts of the day, e.g. "in the morning."



7. Cultural Exploration. Have students show (or demonstrate) how they note the time or date in their own country when they do not have access to watches or calendars.
8. Literacy: Matching. Students draw lines to connect each month of the year with its abbreviation. Vary this by matching days of the week and their abbreviations. Another option would be to match dates with their numerical abbreviations. Ex: Jan. 1, 1984 - 1/1/84.

Planning

10 Calendar/Telephone

Planning

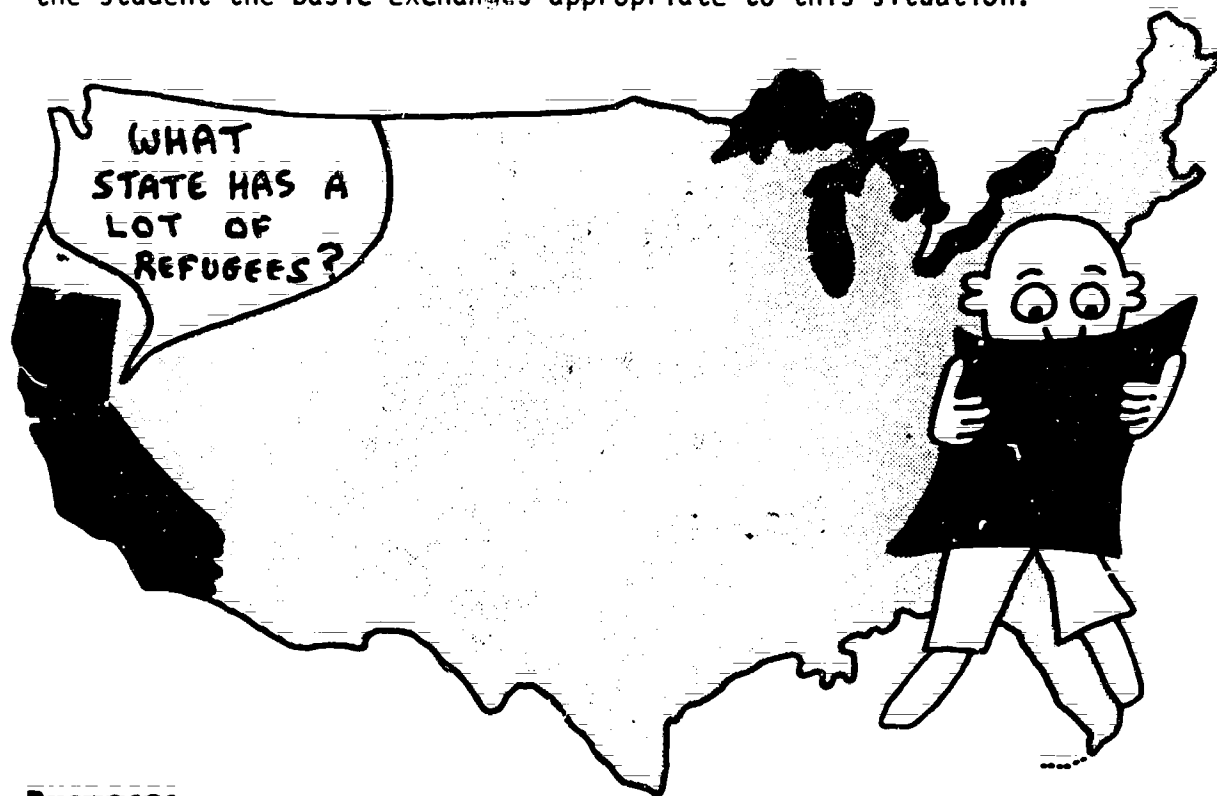
Long distance phone calls to friends and family can be a big temptation--and very expensive.



Unit 11

Geography/Weather

In the refugee camp, a refugee is often asked about his/her destination in the U.S.A. and often wants to ask questions as well. This unit gives the student the basic exchanges appropriate to this situation.



Purposes

- To state one's: first and last name.
marital status.
ID number.
- A** To spell one's first and last names.
To give one's destination in the U.S.
To describe the locations of towns and states.
- B** To describe one's family members (number, names, ages).
To identify one's sponsor's name, address, contact person
and telephone number.
- To recognize important states and cities on a map of the U.S.
To use compass points.
- C/D** To describe location of states in relation to each other.
To describe weather in the United States.
To state the location of relatives in the United States.


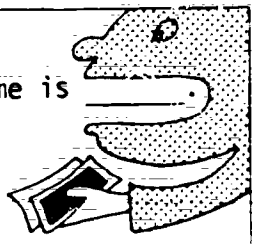
11 Geography/Weather

Chunk 1 State and spell names and give information about one's family

Situation

In the camp

A formal interview in the U.S.A.-- applying for a job, welfare, school entrance, bank loans and accounts, and so on

	Please show me your <u>papers</u> .	Here.	
	What's your <u>first</u> name?	My <u>first</u> name is _____	
	How do you spell your _____ name?	(_____).	
	What's your ID number?	(_____).	
	Are you married or single?	I'm _____.	
	Is _____ your <u>first</u> name?	Yes, it is.	A
	No, it's my _____ name.		
	Is _____ your <u>first</u> name or _____ name?	It's my _____ name.	
	Is this your family?	Yes, it is.	
	No, it isn't.		
	How many people are in your family?	Five.	
	There are <u>five</u> .		
	What are their names and ages?	<u>Lee</u> ... <u>14</u> .	
		<u>Yang</u> ... <u>22</u> .	
		etc.	
	What's your sponsor's name, address and telephone number?	(_____).	B C/D
		I don't know.	
		I don't have a sponsor.	

Vocabulary

papers

ID

five

(the appropriate number)

first

last

middle (c/d)

maiden

Lee/Yang

(the appropriate name)

14/22

(the appropriate age)

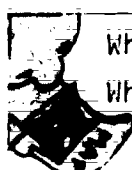
11 Geography/Weather

Chunk 2 Give destination and describe the location and weather

Situation

Formal interview

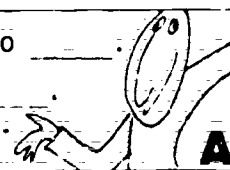
Some of the exchanges are appropriate when planning ANY trip



What state are you going to? I'm going to ____.

Where is California? Next to ____.

Near ____.



A

California is in the west.

B

You're going west.

____ is west of ____.

(____).

Would you like to live near the ocean?

It's hot in California in the summer.

It snows a lot.

It doesn't.

(____).

California is on the west coast.

I'm going from ____ to ____.

What direction am I going?

What direction is ____ from ____?

Which ____?

What state is west of ____?

Which ____?

(____).

How much does it snow in ____?

What are the biggest states in America?

C

What region is ____ in?

What states have a lot of refugees?

Why do a lot of refugees live in ____?

The midwest.

(____).

(____).

(Because) ____.

D

Vocabulary

<u>near the ocean</u>	<u>west</u>	<u>midwest</u>	<u>west coast</u>	<u>snow</u>	<u>state</u>
<u>in the mountains</u>	<u>east</u>	<u>west</u>	<u>east coast</u>	<u>rain</u>	<u>city</u>
<u>in the city</u>	<u>north</u>	(other)			
<u>in a small town</u>	<u>south</u>				
<u>in the country</u>	<u>northeast</u>	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="font-size: 2em; line-height: 1;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <u>hot</u> <u>cold</u> <u>cool</u> <u>warm</u> </div> </div>	<u>summer</u>	<u>California</u>	
<u>in the desert</u>	<u>northwest</u>		<u>winter</u>	(other state names)	
<u>on the farm</u>	<u>southeast</u>		<u>spring</u>	(other city names)	
<u>on a farm</u>	<u>southwest</u>		<u>fall</u>		
			<u>autumn</u>		
				<u>region</u>	
				<u>area</u>	

11 Geography/Weather:

Culture

There are 50 states in the U.S. Washington, D.C., the capital, is a separate district. Each state has its own state capital.

The largest states in size are Alaska, Texas and California. The largest states in population are California and New York. The biggest cities are New York, Los Angeles and Chicago.

Weather varies according to the region. The weather in California is mild in many parts of the state, but it does snow there (in northern California and in the mountains). In the winter, New York can be very cold but in the summer it can be very hot. In the spring and fall, New York can have warmer temperatures than San Francisco.

- Many refugees live in California, Oregon, Texas and Rhode Island.



Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
(one's ID number) A			(one's ID number)
B		(names of own family members)	(names of own family members)
Options	Review (spell one's first and last name)	ID NUMBER Review NAME FIRST LAST MARRIED SINGLE (one's destination in the U.S.)	

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
Use a map to find a place (with assistance). Use compass points. Ex: N, NE	C/D

Grammar
Contractions
TO BE + NOT

I am not/I'm not

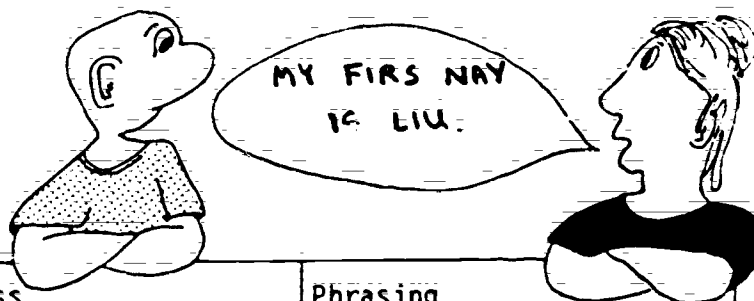
You are not/You're not

He is not/He's not

She is not/She's not

here.

there.

Pronunciation


Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

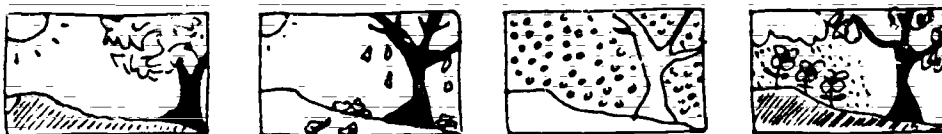
Day 2

Day 3

11 Geography/Weather

Notes

1. Role Play. Play the role of an immigration officer in the U.S. Simulate an interview situation and have students bring papers to class. Vary this activity by deliberately misunderstanding what students say. At the end of each role play, ask students which words or expressions they would like to add to the exchange. Practice these for a short time. then continue with role plays. Have students take on the interviewer role.
2. Picture Cues. Make pictures of the 4 seasons of the year and use these to cue student responses in practice exercises. Add pictures of weather (rain, snow, heat, cold), symbols (? , + -) to cue questions and affirmative or negative statements. Point to combinations of pictures and have students make sentences.



3. Map Game. Divide the class into 2 teams. Call out the name of a city, state or region. A member from each team goes to the map. The first to point to the place gets a point.
4. Spiel. For advanced classes, put a list of key words (north, south, rain, snow, autumn, city, mountain, etc.) on the blackboard. Ask each student to prepare a 30-second "talk" using as many words as possible. Vary this by putting up maps instead of words. Have students ask questions after each spiel to check comprehension.
5. Twenty Questions. Put the names of states on index cards. A student takes a card and then responds to questions from the others who try to find out his/her "destination."
Ex: "Is it in the east?"
"Is it near Oregon?"
6. Literacy: Same or Different. Give each student a worksheet with rows of ID numbers. Students look at the ID number on the left and circle the same number in the row.

39417	93417	39417	71934
44143	31343	34134	44143
68687	78686	86867	68687
52149	52149	52941	94125



Planning

11 Geography/Weather

Planning

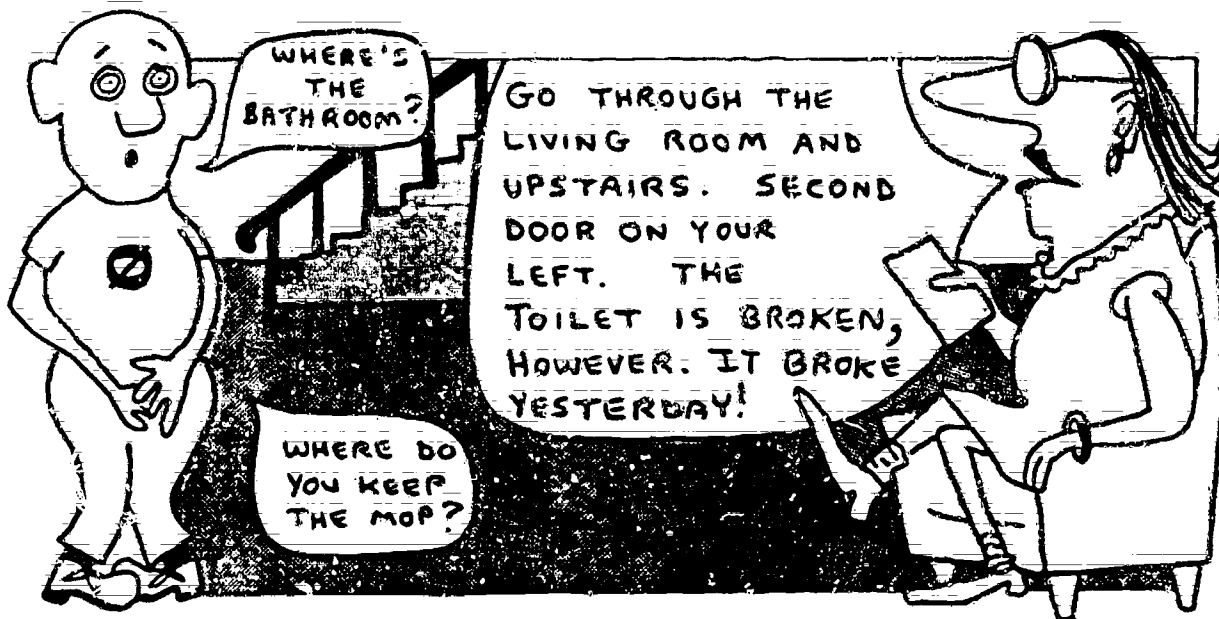


Help your students understand regional differences in culture, weather, food and language in the U.S.

Unit 12

Housing (2)

When visiting someone's house or making the initial visit to one's own, a person often needs to know where things are and how to use household facilities and appliances. In this unit, students learn the language necessary to locate and use rooms and facilities.



Purposes

- A**
 - To respond to instructions for using common household objects.
 - To ask for instructions for using common household objects.
 - To locate and give directions to rooms.
 - To identify common household objects, rooms and facilities.
 - To ask for the location of household facilities.
- B**
 - To give the location of household items.
 - To ask permission to use household items or facilities.
 - To describe common household activities.
- C D**
 - To describe the storage of household articles and food.
 - To follow instructions for using an appliance.
 - To describe the working condition of an appliance.

12 Housing (2)

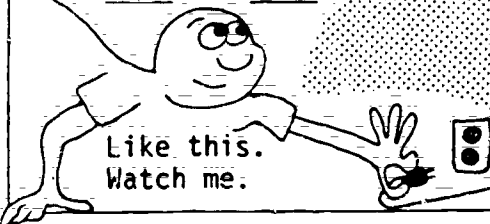
Chunk 1 Ask for and respond to instructions and explanations

Situation

In a house or apartment

- a conversation between a landlord or tenant
- a conversation between a refugee and sponsor

Turn on the light.
Plug in the lamp.
Lock the door.



Like this.
Watch me.

How do I turn on the light?
plug in the lamp?
lock the door?
use the toilet?

Here.

Yes/No.

The doesn't work.

Lock the door.

How do I turn on the ?

Does the work?

I can fix it.
I can't fix it.

May I use the bathroom?
telephone?

OK.

It's broken.

It doesn't work.

It broke yesterday.

The switch is on the wall.

The switch is over there.

Here is the switch.

What's wrong with the ?

How do you use the ?

How do you turn on the ?

C/D


Vocabulary

light	fan	lamp	toilet	dishwasher	on
lamp	air conditioner	light	telephone	garbage disposal	off
water	furnace	radio	shower	washing machine	
shower	gas (c/d)	iron	sink	dryer (c/d)	lock
radio	car	stove	bathtub	oven	close
iron	door	telephone			
stove	window		you	plug in	
			I	unplug	

Chunk 2 Locate and give directions to rooms, facilities and places

Situation

Initial visit to an apartment
In a friend's home



Over there.

Where's the kitchen?

Over there.

I'll show you.

Where do I put this?

Put it in the cabinet.

Put the plate in the cabinet.

Where do you keep the plates?

In the cabinet.

A

B

C/D

Vocabulary

plate
glass
spoon
fork
knife
pan
pot
soap
toilet paper
towel
pillow
sheet
blanket
bowl

this
these
that
those

kitchen
living room
bathroom
bedroom
fire escape
garbage can
mail box

over there
upstairs
downstairs
next to the _____

inside]
outside (b/c/d)]
behind the building]

in the cabinet
in the garbage can
refrigerator

here
there
under the sink
over the _____

in the freezer]
drawer (c/d)]
cupboard]
closet]

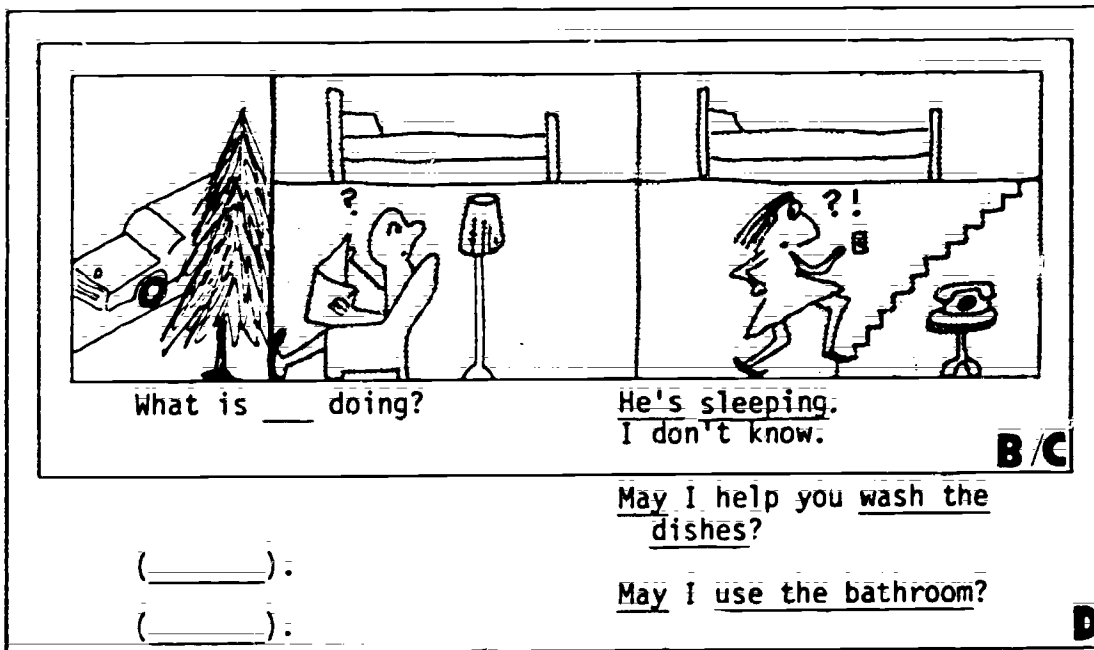
it
them

12 Housing (2)

Chunk 3 Describe activities and offer assistance

Situation

In a friend's home



What is doing?

He's sleeping.
I don't know. **B/C**

May I help you wash the dishes?

May I use the bathroom? **D**

():

():

Vocabulary

wash the dishes
cook dinner
do the laundry
wash the clothes
sweep the floor
mow the lawn
work in the garden
clean the
set the table
put the away

He's
She's
 's

use the bathroom
watch T.V.
have something to eat
have something to drink
help you
use the telephone

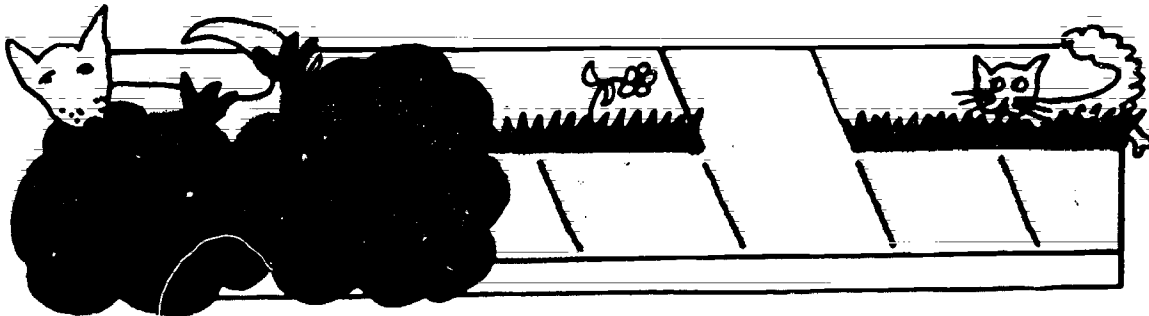
sleeping
taking a bath
taking a shower
watching T.V.
cleaning
washing the clothes
eating
cooking

may
can

Culture

In the U.S., you can rent houses or apartments that are either unfurnished or furnished. Unfurnished housing usually includes a refrigerator and a stove. "Furnished" usually means that there is furniture included.

- The tenant is responsible for damage he caused to furniture and appliances owned by the landlord.
- Tenants are expected to inform their landlords when repairs are needed.
- The bathtub and the toilet are in the same room.
- Bathtubs should not be used for storing food or other items.
- Garbage is usually disposed of by garbage collectors. Tenants put their garbage out tied in plastic bags the night before collectors come.



Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
A		ON OFF FIRE ESCAPE	
B		ELEVATOR DANGER	
Options		STAIRS LAUNDRY EXIT ENTRANCE TOILET POISON MEDICINE (Symbols for each of the above.)	

12 Housing (2)

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
A simple recipe.	D

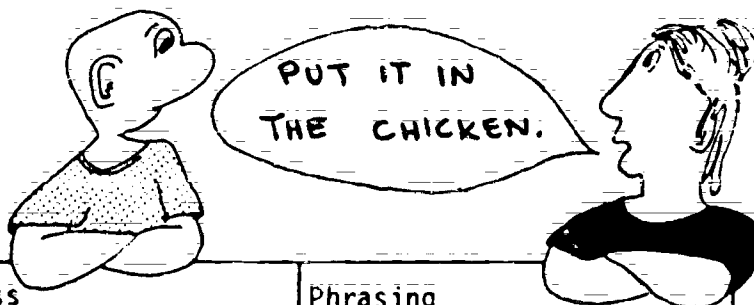
Grammar

Simple Present

Affirmative/Negative

I	(don't)	eat(s) _____
You		
He		
She	(doesn't)	
It		
We		
You	(don't)	
They		

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

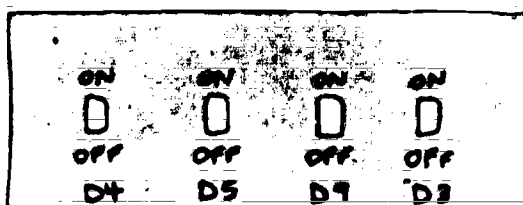
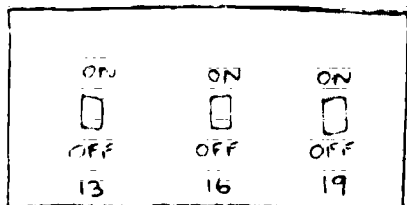
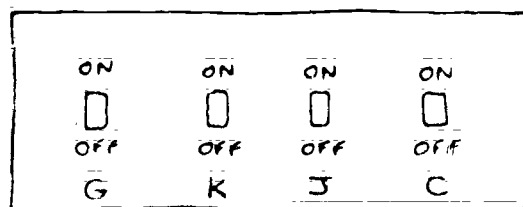
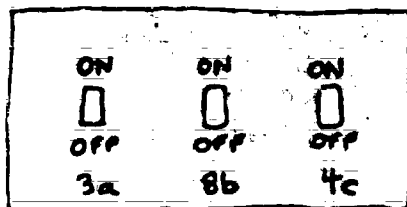
Day 1

Day 2

Day 3

Notes

1. Operation. Bring in a small radio or cassette player. Give the students directives for operating it, e.g. "Plug it in" and "Turn it on." Have them practice giving and responding to instructions. For advanced classes, ask them questions about their actions ("What are you doing?" or "What are you going to do?").
2. Charades. On 2 sets of index cards, put names (or pictures) of actions and rooms of the house. A student takes a card from each set and the others make statements to guess the action and the room, e.g. "You are washing dishes in the living room."
3. Sorting. Divide students into groups of 4. Give each group a floor plan of a "typical" house in the U.S. and an assortment of Cuisenaire rods. One student takes a rod and asks, "Where do I put this?" Another responds with "Put it in the _____." Vary this by having students say what object the rod represents. Instead of a floor plan, use pictures of a cupboard, garbage can, refrigerator, closet, etc.
4. Cultural Exploration. Have students choose one room of their house in their country and make a list of all the actions that are done there. Choose a similar room in a "typical" home in the U.S. and list activities done there. Ask the students to make comparisons and explain differences.
5. Literacy: Flip the Switch. Make a set of task cards out of cardboard. Each card should have a number of cardboard "switches" attached with tape. Write ON above and OFF below each switch. Identify each switch with a number, letter or color. Students respond to directions given by the teacher. Ex: "Turn off 3A" and "Turn on number 16."

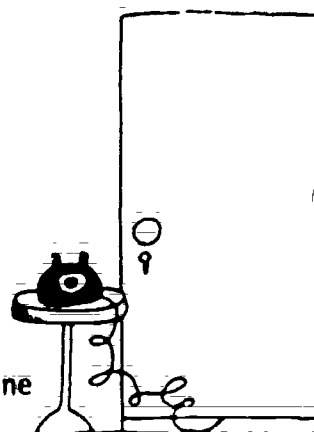


Vary this by having different size buttons instead of switches. Instead of "turn" say "push" or "pull."

12 Housing (2)

Planning

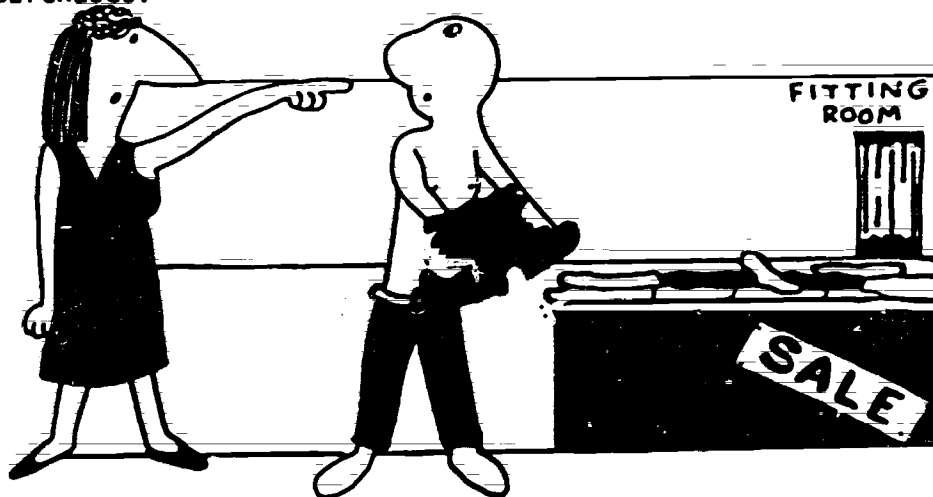
It's polite to ask to use the bathroom or telephone in someone's home.



Unit 13

Shopping (2)

A person needs to be able to buy food and clothing alone not long after arrival. There will not always be a sponsor or friend there to assist or to translate. This unit gives students the basic language to locate food and clothing in stores, find the correct sizes and quantities and make the purchases.



Purposes

A

- To get correct change when paying for an item.
- To ask for the location of food items in a market.
- To ask for food prices.
- To ask for comparative prices.
- To ask for a measurement of food items.
- To recognize common units of measurement.
- To recognize and count money.

B

- To indicate that change is incorrect.
- To ask for the location of clothing items.
- To indicate one's clothing preferences and needs.
- To compare clothing sizes.
- To request different sizes or prices.
- To ask about prices in single terms for comparative shopping.

C/D

- To describe the departments in a department store.
- To ask for directions in a department store.
- To locate cashier, pay for merchandise and indicate means of payment.
- To weigh food items.
- To ask for the correct change when wrong change is given.
- To state satisfaction and dissatisfaction with clothing.
- To request a particular style of clothing.
- To ask for a receipt.

13 Shopping (2)

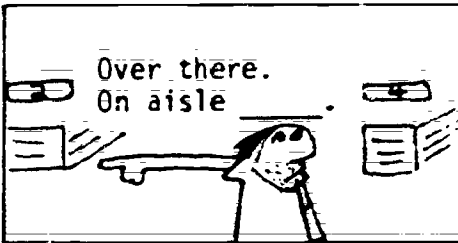
Chunk 1 Locate clothes and food

Situation


On the street

In a store or shopping mall

Over there.
On aisle



Where's the milk?



On the first floor.

().

().

They're on the first floor.
in the .
in the department.

Where are the men's clothes?

Where is the men's department?

Which way is the clothing store?

Where are the men's clothes?

().

().

Where is the appliance store?

Which way is the clothing store?

Vocabulary

men's clothes
women's clothes
shirts
shoes
pants

socks
hats
coats
sweaters

boots
gloves

milk
meat
rice
chicken

clothing store
hardware store
furniture store
basement
record store
parking lot

appliance store
jewelry store
fabric store
bakery

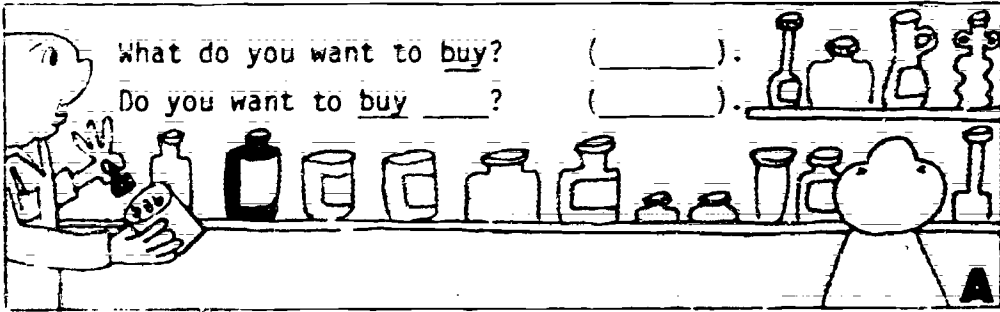
men's department
jewelry department
fabric department
appliance department
elevator
women's department

first
second
third
etc.

Chunk 2 Indicate needs and preferences

Situation

In the supermarket



What do you want to buy? ().
Do you want to buy ____? ().

(). I want a pound of beef. **B**

What do you have to buy? I have to buy a pound of beef.
Let's go to the supermarket. some red pepper.

What kind of meat do you want? I'd like a pound of beef,
Here you are. (). please.
How much does it weigh?
pounds. **C**

I have to buy ____ (s).
I have to buy some _____. **D**

Vocabulary

red pepper
black pepper
soy sauce
fish sauce
green beans
bean sprouts
potatoes
tomatoes
lettuce
cheese

pound of beef
dozen eggs
bottle of ____
loaf of bread
bag of rice
can of ____
supermarket
shopping center
store
market


buy
get
meat
vegetables
bread
rice
fruit
pounds
ounces
kilos

13 Shopping (2)

Chunk 2 Comment on prices and sizes

Situation

In a department store with a sales assistant



\$ ____.

_____c.

How much is this?
the ____?

This is cheap.

This one is the cheapest.
Which one do you want?

It's \$ ____.

Try this/these on.
(_____).

Try this on.
Try these on.

Do they fit?
Does it fit?

Oh sorry.

Which is the cheapest?

I want small.

How much is this shirt?

This shirt is ____.
These shirts are very cheap.

Can I try this/these on?

Where can I try this/these on?

This pair of shoes is ____.
These shoes are very cheap.

It's too big.
They're too big.

C/D

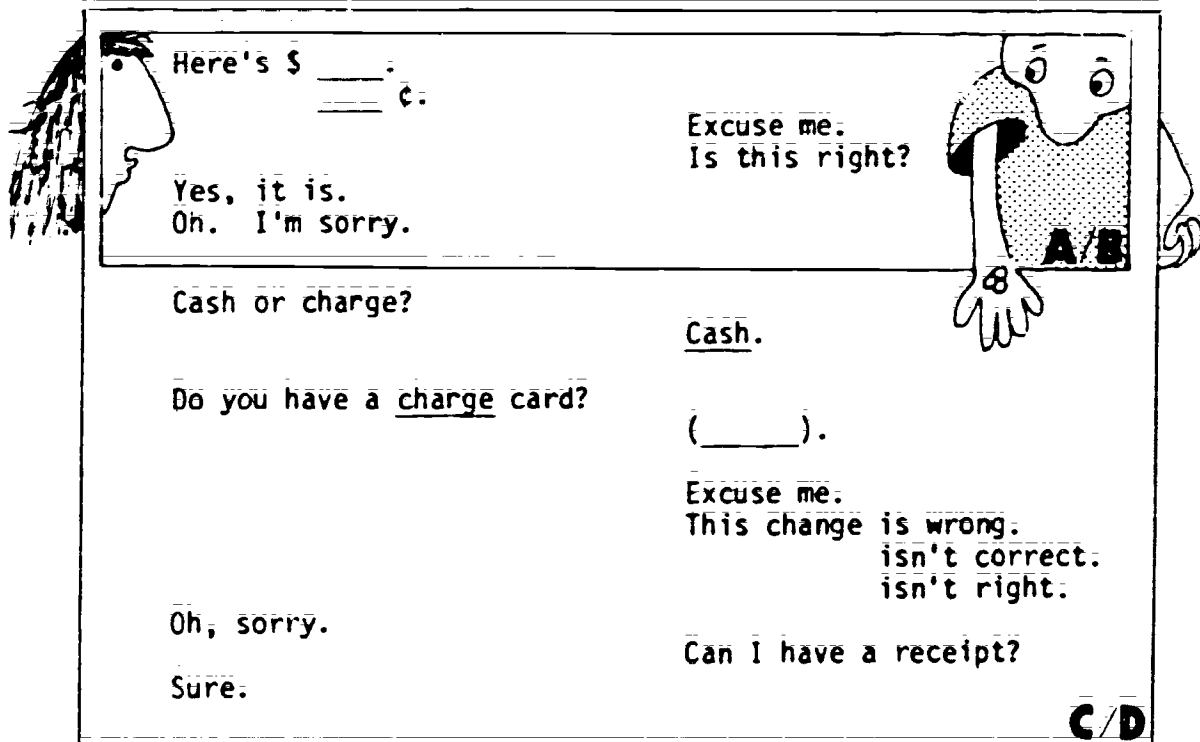
Vocabulary

pair of shoes	shirt	cheap	very	these
pair of pants	coat	expensive	too	those
pair of socks	sweater			
pair of boots	hat	big	cheapest	
pair of gloves	suit	small	most expensive	
long sleeved shirt				
short sleeved shirt	small	loose	big	this
pair of pyjamas	medium	tight	small	that
	large	nice	tight	
			loose	

Chunk 4
Situation

Pay, get correct change and ask for a receipt

In a department store or supermarket



Here's \$ ____.
____ c.

Excuse me.
Is this right?

Yes, it is.
Oh. I'm sorry.

Cash or charge?

Cash.

Do you have a charge card?

(____).

Excuse me.
This change is wrong.
isn't correct.
isn't right.

Oh, sorry.

Can I have a receipt?

Sure.

A/B

C/D

Vocabulary

cash
charge
check
food stamps
credit card

charge
credit

13 Shopping (2)

Culture

Supermarkets are divided into sections and aisles. Sections include: produce, meat, frozen foods, snacks, etc. Aisles are often labeled with a number and a letter, e.g. 1A, 3B. Aisle signs usually hang above the aisles to make it easier for shoppers to locate what they need.

Cashiers are located at the front of the store in a "check-out" area. The customer can pay with cash, food stamps (for welfare recipients) or by check (with a check cashing card from that store).

There are often several brands of food to choose from. The weight, volume, ingredients and brand name are all stated on the label. The "unit price" (the price per ounce, lb., etc.) is sometimes on the label or on the shelf. This allows shoppers to compare prices.

In department stores or clothing stores, clothing is often arranged according to size but customers can try on clothes in fitting rooms. Clothing should not be tried on in the middle of the store.

- Credit cards can be used in many stores (not supermarkets). They allow people to pay later when a bill is sent to them.

Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
(aisle numbers) e.g. 1a, 2c (prices) e.g. \$1.25 A		(measurements) lb. doz. gal. qt. \$ ¢	
B	(clothing sizes) S M L		
(prices) e.g. 3/99¢ 3 for 99¢ Options	(clothing sizes) XS XL	OPEN CLOSED DEPARTMENT STORE MEN WOMEN SUPERMARKET PRODUCE DAIRY MEAT	

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
<p>Section and department signs. Ex: PRODUCE, DAIRY.</p> <p>Expiration dates.</p> <p>The names of common food items.</p>	<p>C</p> <p>D</p>
<p>A variety of store signs indicating sales or specials. Ex: TODAY ONLY, REDUCED.</p> <p>Unit price signs to compare prices of similar food items.</p> <p>Clothing labels.</p> <p>A department store directory to find merchandise.</p>	

Grammar

Word Order

Adjectives

Definite/Indefinite Articles

A/AN/THE

Show

me

a

blue

Give

the

red

pen.

an

orange

pencil.

the

Pronunciation

Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation



Day 1

Day 2

Day 3

13 Shopping (2)

Notes

1. Store Dyad. Students work in pairs to fill in the information missing on their maps-- a cross-section of a department store showing several floors. They ask and answer questions without looking at each other's maps.

HATS
SHIRTS
SHOES

A. SKIRTS?
B. DRESSES?
C. SOCKS



SKIRTS
SOCKS
DRESSES

A. HAT?
B. SHOES?
C. SHIRTS?

2. Store Simulation. Set up the classroom as a department store. Use the desks and chairs to mark off aisles labelled 1A, 1B, 1C, etc. Place store "items" at various points throughout the store. Students ask for and give directions. Add roles of store clerk and cashier for advanced classes.
3. Chart Practice. Make a chart with names of items and prices of different amounts of that item. Use the chart to practice questions and answers with "how much?"

BEEF	2 lbs. / \$1	3 lbs. / 98¢	½ lb. / \$2.24	1 lb. / \$.90
PORK	3 lbs. / \$3.29	2 lbs. / \$1.49	\$6.19 / lb.	\$1.59 / lb.
CHICKEN	1 lb. / \$1.40	4 lbs. / \$5.20	2 lbs. / \$2.00	\$2.40 / lb.
FISH	\$1.09 / ou.	2 lbs. / \$1.98	\$3.40 / ou.	1 lb. / \$1.29

4. Concentration. Play the game with sets of 15 cards which match the names of amounts and their abbreviations.



QUART

QT.

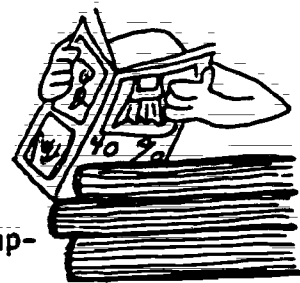
5. Literacy: Check the Box. Give the students individual worksheets to complete. Students look at the amount and price in the left column and check the corresponding amount and price in the row to the right.

3 / 99¢	3 ✓ 96¢	1 69¢	2 99¢ ✓
2 for 59¢	4 59¢	2 95¢	5 \$5.90

Planning

13 Shopping (2)

Planning

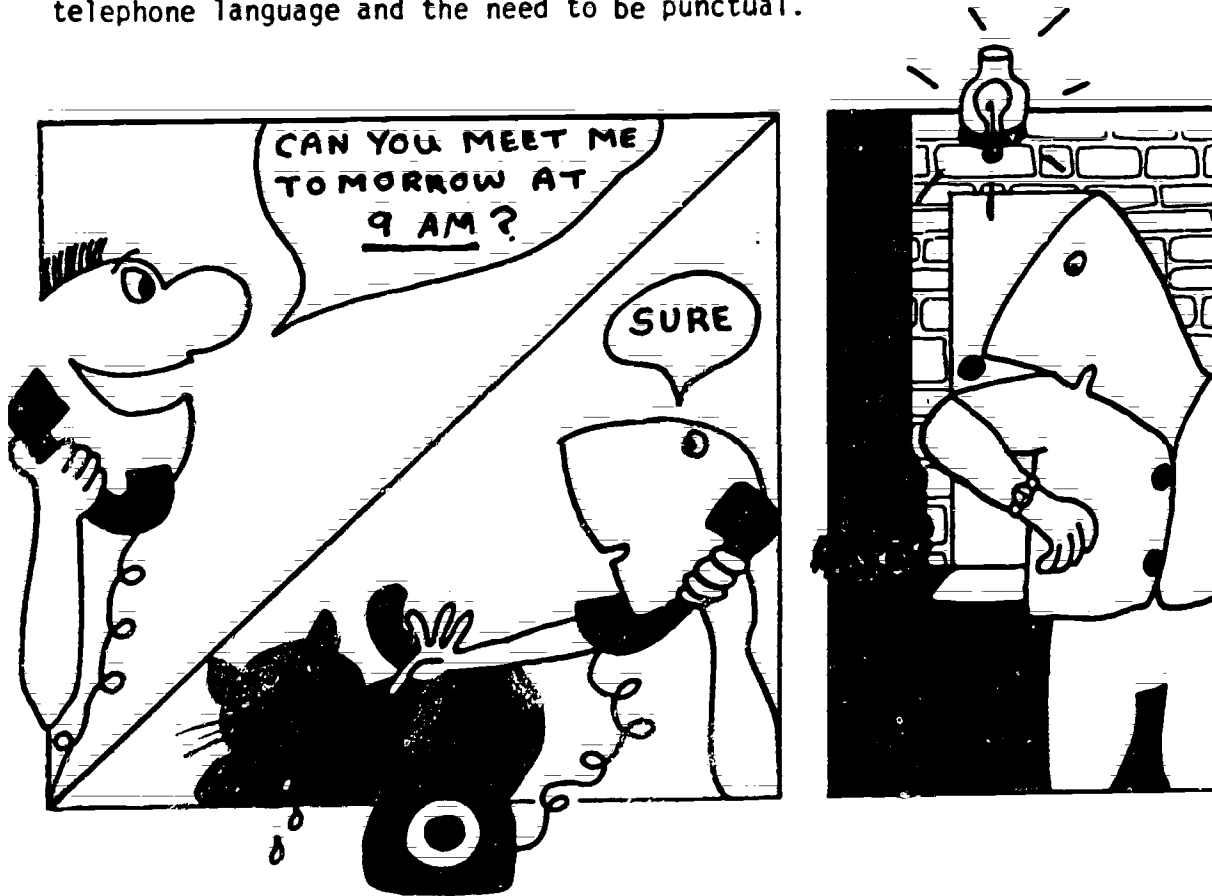


Use store catalogs, newspapers and magazines for up-to-date pictures and prices of clothing and food.

Unit 14

Appointments

Americans make many kinds of appointments in their lives--social appointments, medical appointments, appointments for job interviews, appointments for school admission and many more. In this unit students not only learn the need for making appointments but also learn appropriate telephone language and the need to be punctual.



Purposes

A/B

- To state and identify the time on a clock.
- To describe one's daily activities by the hour.
- To make appointments (in person and by phone).
- To demonstrate an understanding of how to use the telephone.

C/D

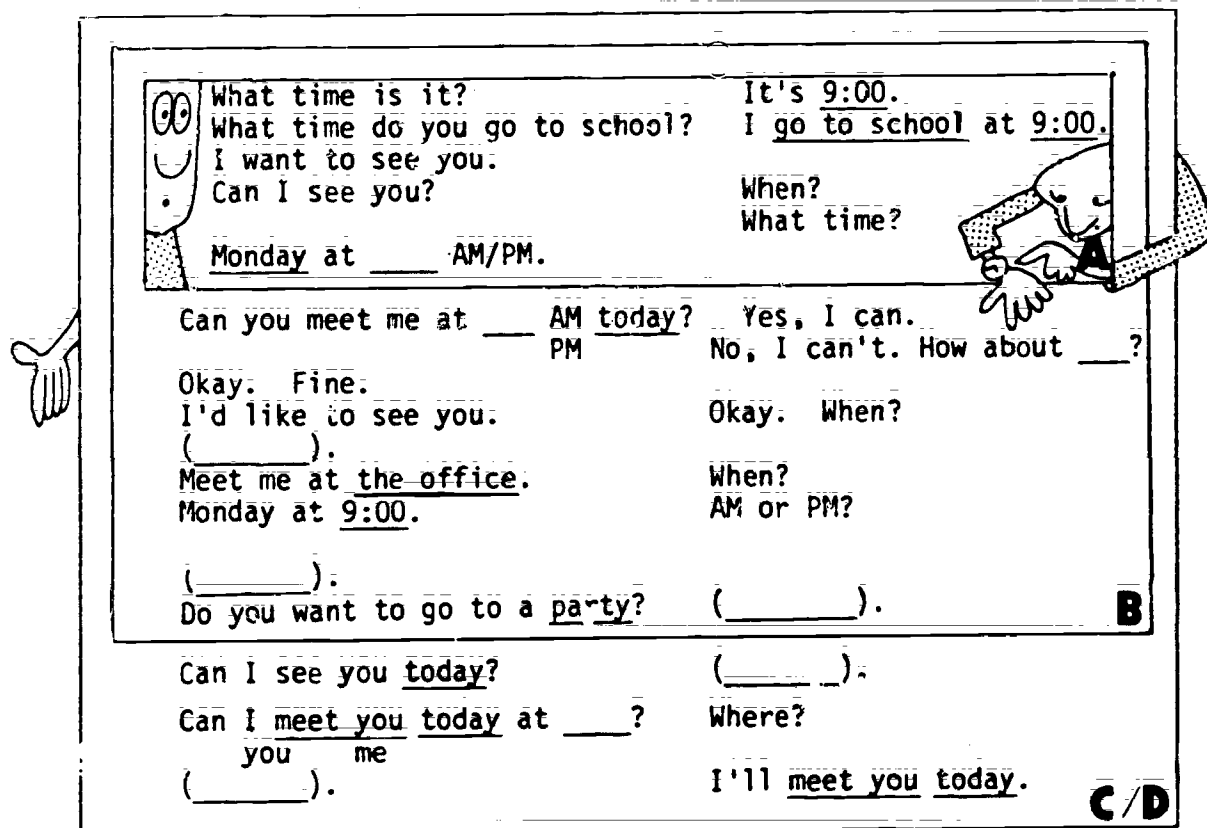
- To make a social appointment.
- To ask for job openings.
- To change or cancel an appointment.
- To use a telephone directory.
- To give a reason for cancelling or changing an appointment.

14 Appointments

Chunk 1 Identify the time, state activities and make appointments

Situation

In person or on the phone



What time is it? It's 9:00.

What time do you go to school? I go to school at 9:00.

I want to see you.

Can I see you? When?

Monday at ____ AM/PM. What time?

Can you meet me at ____ AM today? Yes, I can.

PM No, I can't. How about ____?

Okay. Fine.

I'd like to see you. Okay. When?

(____).

Meet me at the office. When?

Monday at 9:00. AM or PM?

(____).

Do you want to go to a party? (____). **B**

Can I see you today? (____).

Can I meet you today at ____? Where?

you me

(____). I'll meet you today. **C/D**

Vocabulary

9:00
(any time)

go to school
go to bed
go to sleep
get up
eat breakfast
eat lunch
eat dinner
study English
study ____

Monday
Tuesday
Wednesday
Thursday
Friday
Saturday
Sunday

meet you
see you
call you
come back

today
tomorrow
on Monday
on ____
again
tomorrow night

the office
the market
school
home



tonight

party
movie

Chunk 2 Make, change and cancel appointments

Situation

On the telephone
At the reception desk

	<p>Hello. What's your name? How do you spell that? Can you come Monday at ___ AM?</p>	<p>I need an appointment. (). (). Yes, I can. No, I can't.</p>	
	<p>Can you come Monday, June 12 at ___ AM ? (). Have you seen Dr. ___ before?</p>	<p>I'd like an appointment with the doctor. Yes, I can/No, I can't. Can I come today at 10? Yes, I have./No, I haven't.</p>	
	<p>Can you come back Monday at 3:30? Is ___ morning at 9 all right? (). Yes, we do.</p>	<p>I'm very sick. Can I come today? I have to come today. right away. When is my next appointment? No, I have to work then. Yes./No. I have an appointment today, but I can't come. Can I change the time? Do you need any dishwashers? I'd like an interview.</p>	
	<p>(). When can you come instead?</p>	<p>I'd like to make an appointment with the personnel manager. social worker. I have to break my appointment. I can't keep my appointment. I can't make it on ___ because ____. ().</p>	C

Vocabulary

with the doctor	for a check-up	Can I come	today	AM
with the dentist	physical	How about	tomorrow	PM
for an interview			on	

14 Appointments

Culture

Americans make appointments to see the doctor or dentist, to interview for jobs, to look at an apartment, to talk to the boss about a problem, to meet a teacher/counselor, etc. It is possible to just "drop-in" on friends, but people are often so busy that they have to make social appointments, as well.

- You need to have an appointment to see a doctor, except in an emergency.
- Appointments are very often made on the telephone.
- If you cannot keep a scheduled appointment you ought to inform the office or person beforehand. In the case of an appointment with a doctor you may be charged for the appointment even if you didn't go.
- It is a good idea to arrive early for an appointment. People arriving late may find themselves rescheduled for an appointment at a later date.
- Dental appointments are often made for weeks or months in advance.

Literacy



READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
A (time) e.g. 9:00 9:15 9:30 9:45	(spell one's name)	a.m. p.m. AM PM	
B		(days of the week)	
(numbers in the hundreds) e.g. 256 Options		OFFICE <u>Review</u> (months) (abbreviations for days) SCHOOL MARKET DOCTOR	(time) e.g. 10:15

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
An appointment card.	C/D

Grammar

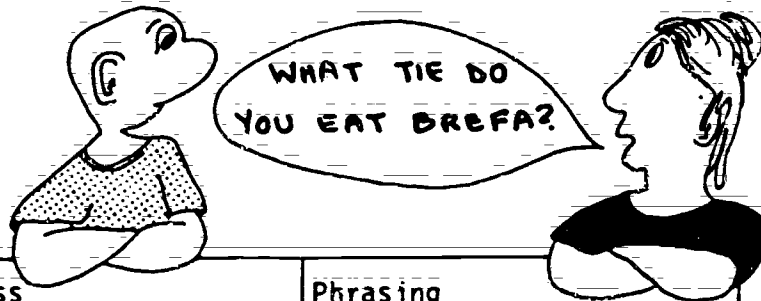
Polite Requests

Could
Would
Will

you please

stand up?
come here?
sit down?

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

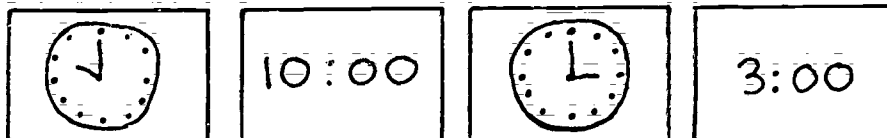
Day 2

Day 3

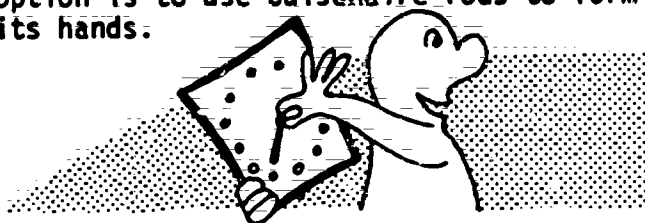
14 Appointments

Notes

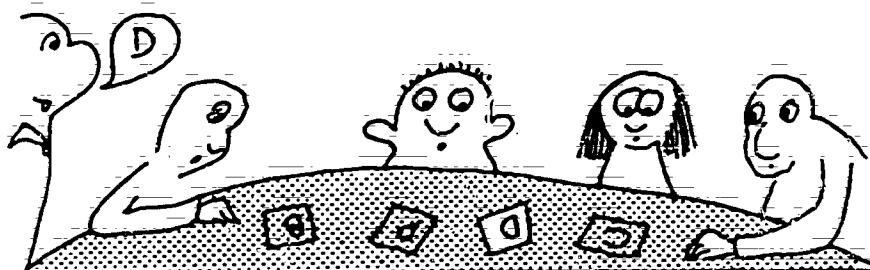
1. Concentration. Play the game with 2 sets of cards that match clock faces to written times.



2. Role Play. Play the role of a secretary or receptionist in an office. Give students appointment cards that they need to fill out in the "office." Vary this by simulating a phone conversation.
3. Language Exploration. Elicit different expressions and actions for cancelling or breaking appointments. Compare these and discuss appropriateness.
4. Cultural Exploration. Ask students to give examples of appointments they made in their countries. Have them specify how they set and observed appointment times. Choose an appointment situation in the U.S. and ask them to make observations about setting times and punctuality. Discuss the similarities or differences and have the students give reasons for the latter.
5. Literacy: Clocks. Distribute cardboard clocks with moveable hands to students and state a time, e.g. "9:30." Students move the hands to make the correct time. Vary this by having students work in pairs. One student moves the hands and the other gives the time. An option is to use Cuisenaire rods to form a clock and its hands.



6. Literacy: Letter Names. Prepare sets of alphabet cards. Put students in groups of 4 and give one set of cards to each. Hold up letter "B", for example, but say "D." Students work together to find "D" and hold it up. This can be played as a contest between teams.

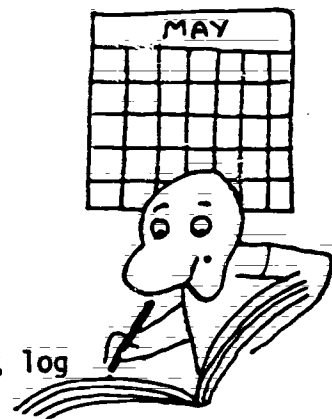


Planning

14 Appointments

Planning

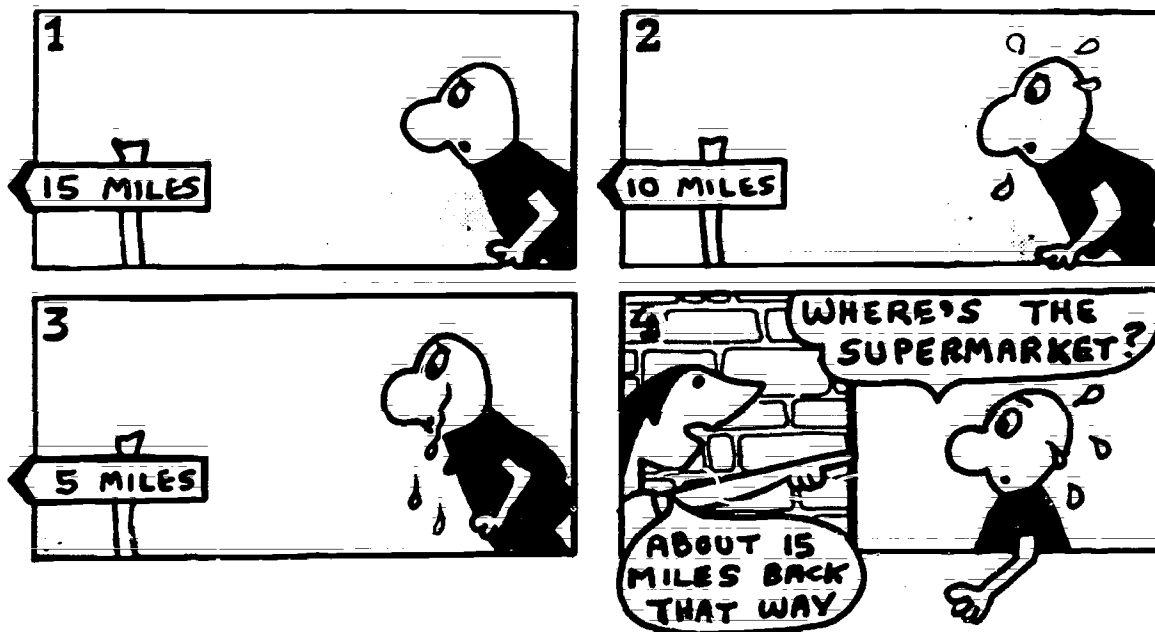
Have your students start writing in a daily diary, log or appointment book.



Unit 15

Transportation

Once they arrive, some people will have the means and ability to get a car fairly soon. Others will have to rely on buses and trains for some time. This unit gives students the basic language for getting from one place to another.



Purposes

A

- To ask for the location of stores and businesses.
- To ask for information/clarification about public transportation (cost, access, destination, arrival and departure times).
- To respond to questions about destination.
- To follow oral directions and a simple hand-drawn map in a familiar setting.

B

- To ask for help for directions and locations.
- To purchase tickets.
- To ask for a bus transfer.

C/D

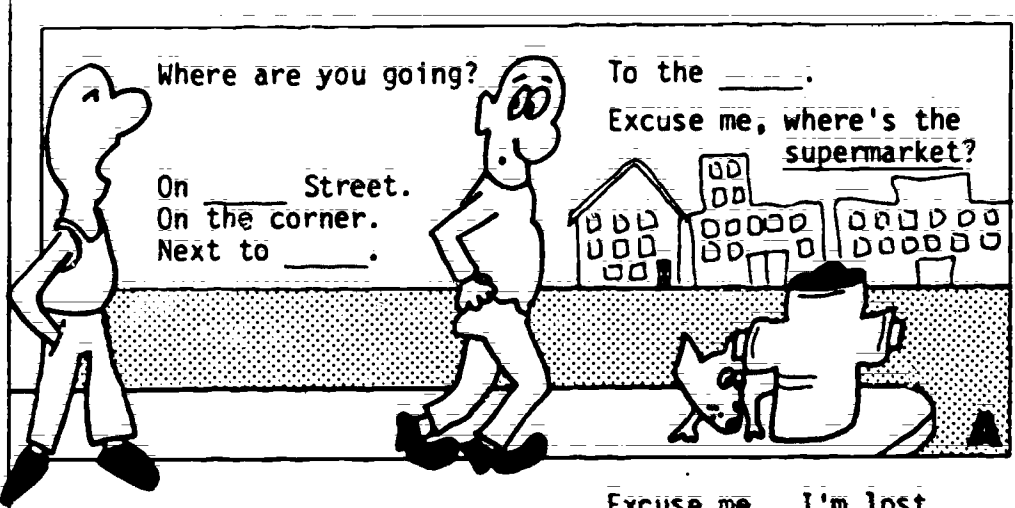
- To ask for information about bus stops and schedules.
- To buy a city-to-city bus ticket.
- To find out travel times, distances and duration of travel.
- To ask where to get off a bus or train.
- To find out different means of getting to a place.

15 Transportation

Chunk 1 Ask for and respond to questions about destination

Situation

In the street with a stranger



Where are you going?

To the ____.

Excuse me, where's the supermarket?

On ____ Street.
On the corner.
Next to ____.

Excuse me. I'm lost.
Where's ____ Street?
the supermarket?

I don't know.
Go ____ blocks and turn left.
It's on the corner.

How far is it to the supermarket?

Not far.
Very far.
A long way.
____ miles.
____ kilometres.
____ blocks.

B

C / D

Vocabulary

supermarket
department store
police department
fire department
drug store
bank
hospital

telephone
university
park
library
shopping center

left
right
(c/d)

Chunk 2 Ask for information about public transportation

Situation

In the street
On the telephone with the local bus company

How are you going?

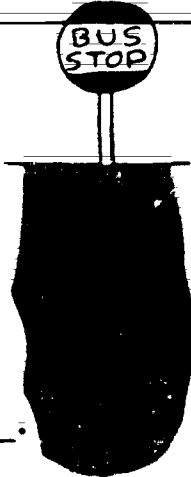
Number 15.

50 cents.

Yes.

At _____ Street.

(It comes) at _____.



By bus.

Which bus goes to the _____?

How much is it?

Do I need a transfer?

Where do I transfer?

What time does bus number _____ come?

A/B

(_____).

(_____).

At the intersection of _____ Street and _____ Street.

(_____).

(_____).

Which bus goes to the _____ theater?

(name) _____

What bus should I take to go to _____?

Where is the bus stop for _____?

Do I have to change buses?

Has bus #15 come yet?

C/D

Vocabulary

theater
bar
nightclub
disco
shopping center
university

beach
hotel
restaurant
library
museum

by bus
by car
walking

15
1-100

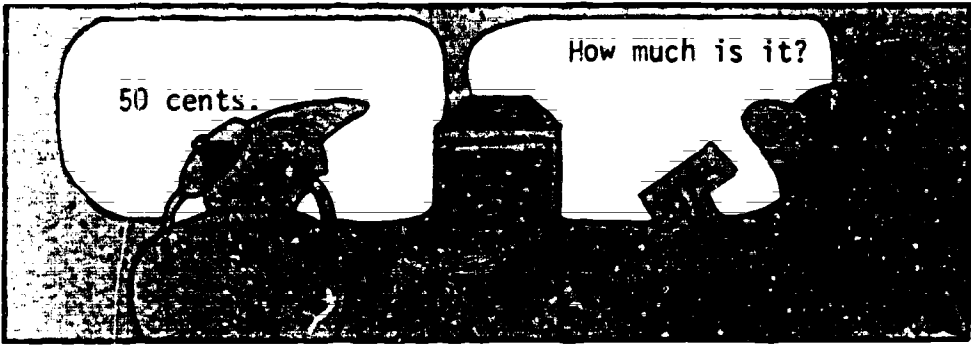
what time
when

15 Transportation

Chunk 3 Ask about fares and bus stops

Situation

On the bus
Asking questions of the driver or other passengers on the bus



50 cents.

How much is it?

All right.

I'm going to the _____.
Please tell me where
to get off.

(_____).

(_____).

_____, next stop.

Thank you.
Does this bus go downtown?
Is this my stop?
I'm going to _____.
Can you tell me where
to get off?

B

C/D

Vocabulary

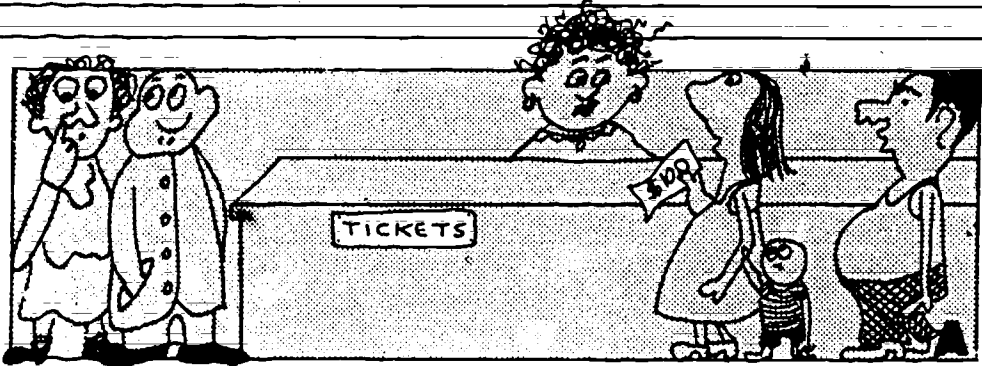
downtown
to the _____
to _____ St.

where
when

Chunk 4 Purchase city-to-city bus tickets

Situation

At a ticket counter in a bus station



What time does the bus from Houston arrive?

It arrives at nine.

One-way or round-trip?

\$, please.

Two tickets to , please.

One-way.

B

().

Adult or child?

Could you tell me which bus goes to Houston?

Adult.

C

().

What is the cheapest way to get to ?

D

Vocabulary

Adult
Child
 1 adult and 1 child
 2 adults and children
Houston
 (other city names)

Could
Can
arrive
leave
from
to

two
 (any number)
one-way
round trip
cheapest
fastest

15 Transportation

Culture

There are two types of public transportation: local and long distance. Local transportation is provided by buses, subways and taxis. Long distance transportation is provided by buses, planes or trains.

Local. Buses and subways are the cheapest ways to travel. Tickets are not used on buses. Buses have fare boxes next to the bus driver. On most buses, you must deposit the exact change. Transfers are given to passengers who need to change from one bus to another. Transfers can only be made to buses going in the same general direction, i.e. you can not make a round-trip on transfers. Also, transfers usually have a time limit (1-2 hours). Buses stop only at bus stops. People line up to get on and off.

Long Distance. Buses are usually cheaper than trains or planes. They often go to places that trains and planes do not. Bus tickets are usually purchased with cash at the time of departure at the station. One-way and round-trip tickets are available.

Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
(bus numbers) e.g. S27,28 <u>Review</u> (prices) e.g. \$1.25 A		SUPERMARKET <u>Review</u> MARKET	
<u>Review</u> (time) 9:00 9:15 9:30 9:45 B		WALK DON'T WALK TICKETS	
(numbers in the hundreds) Options		POLICE POLICE DEPARTMENT DRUGSTORE BUS STOP STREET ST. TELEPHONE AVENUE AVE.	(numbers) (times) (prices)

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
The arrival/departure information board in a bus or train station.	C
Signs indicating routes, destinations and street names. Simple written directions to find a place. Bus, train and plane schedules (with assistance).	D

Grammar

Count/Non-Count Nouns

This is

coffee.
milk.
soup.
a bottle.
a cup.
a bowl.
a cup of coffee.

Pronunciation

Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1
Day 2
Day 3

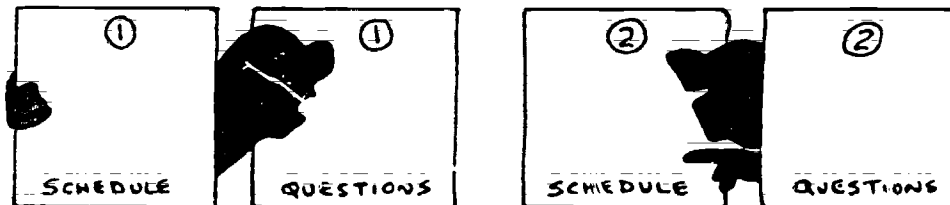
15 Transportation

Notes



1. Bus Schedule. Make a chart with numbers of buses, departure times, destinations, arrival times and fares. Use this as a basis for a question-answer exercise.

16a	9:30 am	9:45 am	Main St.	50¢
34	10:00 am	10:14 am	4 CORNERS	50¢
21b	10:15 am	10:36 am	3 rd AVE.	75¢
48	10:32 am	11:01 am	APPLE RD.	75¢

2. Bus Schedule Dyad. Vary this by preparing two sets of handouts of the same schedule, each one missing different items of information. Students work in pairs to fill in the missing information by asking each other questions.



3. One Way/Round Trip. Divide students into three groups. Each group goes to a corner of the room (labelled Los Angeles, Chicago and New York). Simulate a ticket counter at each location where students have to purchase either one-way or round-trip tickets to another city. With their tickets, they can "travel" from one corner to another.
4. Concentration. Students play the game with two sets of cards, making matches between written names (BUS, SUPERMARKET, STREET) and pictures of these words.
5. Bus Map. Put a street plan of a city on poster board. Use Cuisenaire rods to represent city buses. Give students destinations and have them move the buses needed to reach there. Vary this by having students give each other destinations and describing routes to take.
6. Literacy: Prices. Give each student a worksheet. Students count the amount of money seen and write the amount beside it. Ex:

	\$2.10
	\$

Planning

15 Transportation

Planning

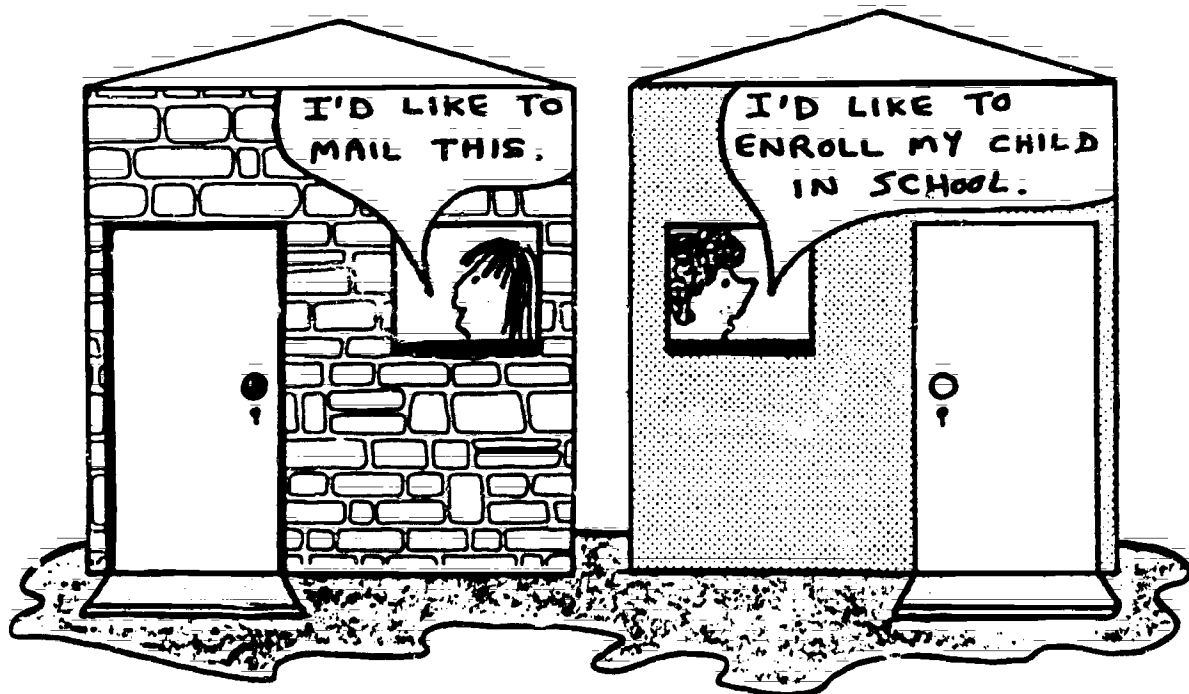


"Where are you going?" is not used with strangers or as a greeting.

Unit 16

Post Office/School

Community services such as post offices and schools are important. Knowing how to use the post office can provide a person with a simple way to accomplish a clear task and also give confidence in other situations. In this unit, students learn the language necessary for making purchases in the post office. Students also learn how to respond to and ask questions about enrolling children in school.



Purposes

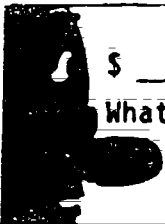
- A**
 - To ask for stamps and aerogrammes.
 - To ask about mailing prices and make purchases.
 - To locate places to mail letters (US MAIL, POST OFFICE).
 - To correctly address an envelope or package.
 - To respond to questions about the education of one's children.
- B**
 - To respond to questions about one's address and destination.
 - To locate places to mail letters (mail slots).
 - To ask questions about school for one's children.
- C**
 - To find out about the availability of adult ESL classes.
- D**
 - To ask for information about mailing by different means.
 - To describe the education of one's child.
 - To ask and respond to questions about school enrollment.

16 Post Office/ School

Chunk 1 Ask about stamps and mailing prices

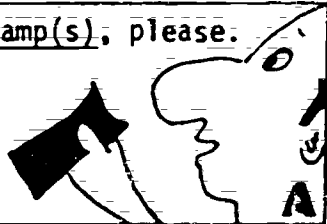
Situation

At the counter in the post office

 \$ _____. please.

What's the address? (_____).

I want ____ stamp(s), please.

 A

Can I help you?

That's \$ _____.

Airmail or surface mail? (_____).

That's \$ _____.

I'd like to mail this.
this package
(to Laos).

I want to mail this package to ____.

B

(_____ c).

That's \$ _____.

This letter doesn't have
the address.

(_____).

How much is a first-class stamp?

I'd like two 20¢ stamps, two 40¢ stamps and four aerogrammes.

(_____).

What's the zip code for Oakland?
this address?

C/D

Vocabulary

Laos
Cambodia
Vietnam

mail
send

stamp(s)
aerogramme (s)

address
street
street number
apartment number
city
state
zip code
return address

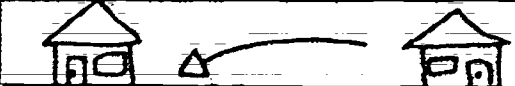
a first-class stamp
an air mail stamp
a stamp (within the U.S.)
a stamp to _____
an aerogramme
the Oakland
your (other cities)

two 20¢/two 40¢/four
(other combinations)

Chunk 2 Ask questions about mailing and get forms
Ask how someone is doing in school

Situation

At the counter in the post office



I'd like a change of address form, please. **C**

Can I help you?

(Send it) airmail.

(_____).

(_____).

It'll take about a week.

Please fill this out.

How should I send this?

Which way is the fastest?

How long will it take to get there?

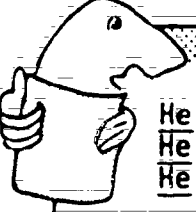
I'd like to register this. **D**

Vocabulary

<u>fastest</u>	<u>this</u>	<u>I'd like</u>	<u>register</u>	<u>a week</u>
<u>best</u>	<u>it</u>	<u>I want</u>	<u>insure</u>	<u>2 days</u>
<u>cheapest</u>		<u>I need</u>		<u>2 weeks</u>
<u>safest</u>			<u>airmail</u>	
			<u>surface mail</u>	

Situation

In an office or classroom at a school.



How is my son doing?

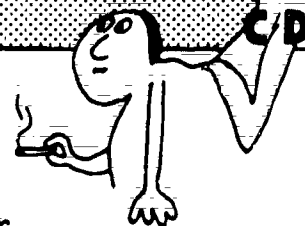
He's doing fine.

He needs to do better.

He could be doing better.

Vocabulary

<u>my son</u>	<u>He</u>	<u>fine</u>
<u>my daughter</u>	<u>She</u>	<u>OK</u>
<u>my child</u>		<u>better</u>
<u>(name)</u>		




16 Post Office/School

Chunk 3 Respond to questions about school

Situation

A casual conversation with a friend or neighbor
In an office (sitting at a desk or standing at a counter)



Did your daughter go to school in Cambodia? ().

How many years did your daughter go to school? ().

Did she go to school in Cambodia? Yes/No.

R C/D

Vocabulary

she
he
they

Cambodia
Laos
Vietnam
(other)

daughter
son
child
children

How many years
How long

Chunk 4 Respond to and ask questions about school

Situation

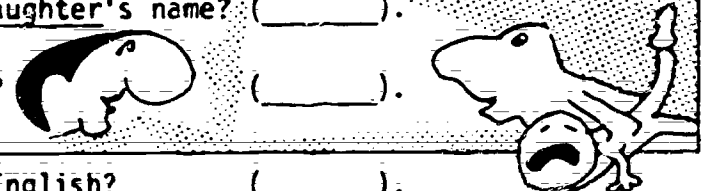
In a casual conversation with a friend or neighbor
In an office at a school

What is your daughter's name? ().
are

How old is she? ().
are

Can she speak English? ().

().



When does she go to school?
Where

What's her teacher's name?

B

First grade.
She'll be in kindergarten.
She's in ____.

You're in ____.

School starts on Monday.
it

Her teacher's name is ____.

____ 's in room ____.

I'd like to enroll (my daughter) in school.

What grade is she in?
are

What class am I in?

What time does school start?
When

What's her teacher's name?

What room is ____ in?

C/D

Vocabulary

kindergarten
the first grade
the ____ grade

daughter
son
child
children

on Monday
on ____
at 8:00
at ____

her
his
their
my/your

speak
read
write
start
get out
school
ESL class

first
second
third
fourth
fifth
sixth
seventh
eighth
ninth
tenth
eleventh
twelfth
she does
he do
they

16 Post Office/School

Culture

Post Office. Letters and packages mailed in the U.S. should have the main address and the return address (in the upper-left-hand corner). Zip codes should always be included. The zip code is a 5 digit number which indicates the state, city and zone a letter should be sent to. Mail is sorted by computer. If there is no zip code, mail will be sorted by hand and delivery will be delayed.

- If you send cash in letters, it may be stolen. Use a check or money order instead.
- Within the U.S., all letters go by air. Overseas mail goes by air (more expensive) or surface (long delivery time). Surface mail usually goes by boat.

School. All children between the ages of six and sixteen must attend school. Public school (up to 12th grade) is free. Private schools are available, but you have to pay tuition and fees.

- Children will usually be enrolled in ESL classes for a period of time after arrival.
- Church groups, voluntary agencies and international institutes often offer adult ESL classes.

Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
A Review U.S. (prices)		POST OFFICE	Review (one's address)
B Review (time)		U.S. MAIL	
(ordinal numbers) e.g. FIRST SECOND Options	(zip codes) e.g. 05301	STAMPS AIRMAIL LOCAL OUT OF TOWN EDUCATION NUMBER OF YEARS AGE COUNTRY LANGUAGE(S)	(write own address as a return address)

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
	<p>Fill out a change of address form.</p> <p>A note to report or explain a child's absence.</p>
<p>Common signs found in recreation or other public areas. (Do Not Litter, No Trespassing, etc.).</p> <p>Respond appropriately to notices, forms and other communications sent by school.</p>	<p>Fill out postal forms for registration, customs, etc.</p>

Grammar

Simple Past

TO BE

Yes-No Questions

I

You

He

She

It

was

was

late.

sick.

Sunday.

Did

I

you

he

she

eat?

sleep?

go?

Pronunciation

Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

Day 2

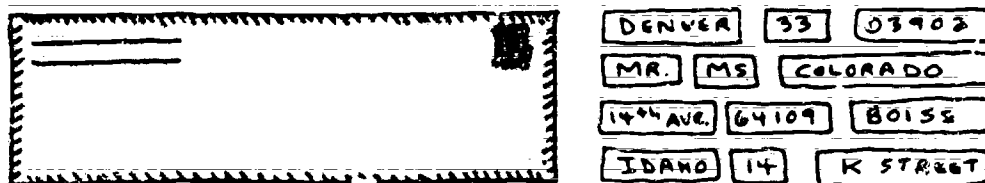
Day 3

Notes

1. Go Fish. Prepare sets of cards with a variety of matching pairs. Divide the students into groups of 4 students. Each gets 4 cards, the rest of the cards are in a pile. The object of the game is to make matching pairs by asking the others if they have the card in question in their hand. If they do, they give it. If they don't, they say "Go Fish" and the student takes a card from the pile. Possible matches:



2. Envelope Board. Make a large "envelope" on a piece of poster board (2½' x 4'). On separate cardboard strips, write names, titles, numbers, street names, city names, state names and zip codes. Mix the strips together and have the students sort them into piles according to category. Then have the students select strips from each pile to compose addresses on the envelope board.



3. Characters. Have students draw pictures or use photographs to create identities for 2-3 school-age children. Have them include names, ages and previous schooling. Have them present their "children" to the class. An option is to have students do the same biographies for their own children (see Family Tree in Unit 3). As a follow-up, simulate an interview between a parent and a school official.
4. Postage Chart. Prepare a chart with information about postage fees for airmail, surface mail, money orders. Use the chart as a basis for question-answer practice. As a follow-up, prepare a set of "problem" cards which students read and solve by looking at the chart.
5. Literacy: Tic Tac Toe. Each pair of students has one card and 5 markers. To put a marker down, students must say the number and price aloud. Students try to get 3 markers in a row.

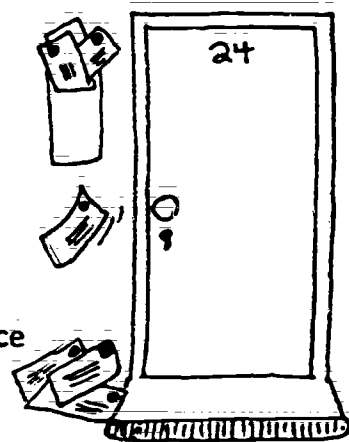
2	10¢	3	20¢	4	10¢
1	40¢	3	10¢	2	30¢
2	20¢	1	30¢	1	20¢



Planning

Planning

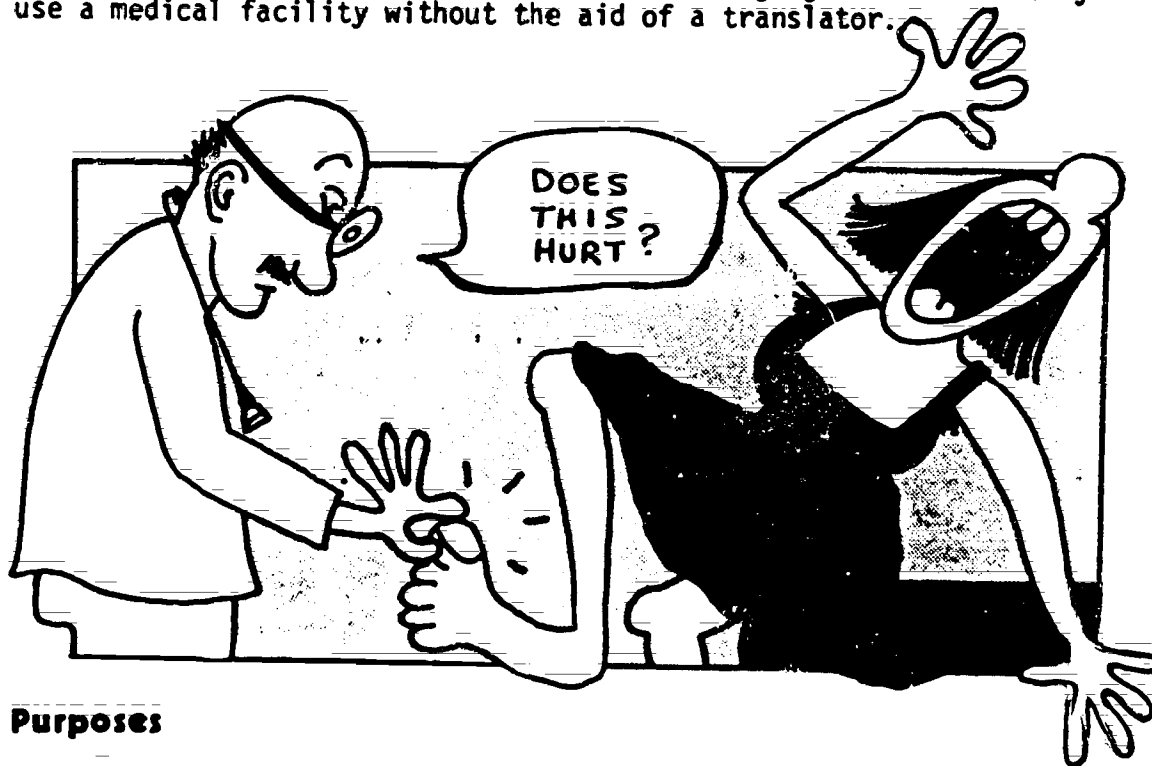
Stress the importance of informing the post office
when moving.



Unit 17

Medical (2)

When someone is sick or has a family member who is sick, the person is hit with a series of challenges: making an English speaker aware of the problem, arranging for a time to be treated, finding the facility and responding to instructions during the medical examination. This unit provides students with the basic language to successfully use a medical facility without the aid of a translator.



Purposes

- To set up and verify appointments.
- To ask questions about the location of appropriate medical facilities.
- A** To give information about injury or illness.
- To respond to instructions during a medical exam.
- To spell one's name.
- To answer questions about injury, illness and general condition.
- B** To accept and change appointments.
- To describe an illness or injury of a family member.
- C** To describe medical history of oneself and a family member.
- To indicate need for an interpreter.
- To respond to questions about means of payment (insurance).
- D** To get information about a hospital patient's location and condition.
- To call and report lateness for an appointment.
- To make appointments giving name, address, telephone number and problem.

17 Medical (2)

Chunk 1 State one's problem and make an appointment

Situation

On the telephone

At the reception desk in a doctor's office

I need to see the doctor.
My leg hurts.

()

Please spell your name.

Can you come today at 4:00 P.M.?

Today at 4:00 P.M.?

Yes, I can.

No, I can't.

When can I see a doctor?

How about today at 4:00 P.M.?

I can't, I'm busy.

Can I come at _____?

tomorrow at _____?

Tomorrow at _____ is O.K.

What language do you speak?

I need an interpreter.

I speak Lao.

B

C/D

Vocabulary

leg
tooth
eye (s)
ear (s)
stomach
back
chest
arm(s)
hand(s)

today
May 10th
June 20th
etc.

4:00 P.M.
4:15 P.M.
4:30 P.M.
4:45 P.M.

blood test
urine sample
stool sample

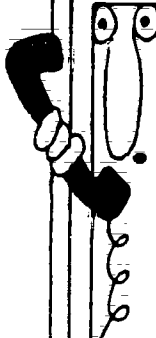
doctor
dentist

Lao
Hmong
(other)

Chunk 2 Make an appointment and report lateness

Situation

On the telephone



What's your name?

Please spell that.

Please give me your address and telephone number.

What's your problem?

I need to see the doctor.

().

().

().

().

_____ is OK.

I'm sorry.

How about _____?

Sorry.

I'm late.

Can I come at _____?

().

B

I'm sorry.

The bus broke down.

C/D

Vocabulary

your problem
the matter

broke down
was late

doctor
dentist

the
my

17 Medical (2)

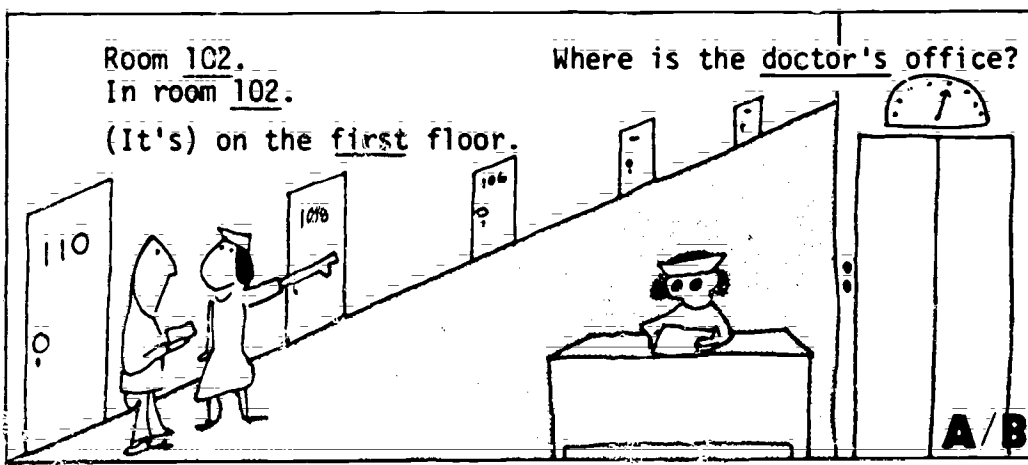
Chunk 3 Locate medical facilities and a particular person

Situation

On the street, in a hospital hall or at the reception desk

Room 102.
In room 102.
(It's) on the first floor.

Where is the doctor's office?



It's on the first floor,
room 102.

Where's the _____?

C

How do you spell that?

Room 102.
He's better.

What room is _____ in?
(person)

How is he doing?
(_____):

D

Vocabulary

doctor's
dentist's

laboratory (c/d)
lab
X-ray lab

first
second
third
fourth
fifth

102
210
315
409
4a


he
she

better
OK
much better
about the same

Chunk 4 Describe and answer questions about one's problem and medical history

Situation

In an examination room at the doctor's office or at the hospital



A How long has your leg hurt? For day(s).

How long have you been sick? (I've been sick) (for) day(s).

Does this hurt? Yes/No.

it hurt here?

What's the matter? I feel .

wrong? I have a stomachache.

B

I have a stomachache.

My leg hurt(s).

I can't sleep.

I'm handicapped.

C

Have you ever had malaria? Yes/No.

Has anyone in your family ever had ?

Has there been in your family?

Do you have a medical plan? ().

medical insurance?

D

Vocabulary

a stomachache
a backache
an earache
a toothache
a headache
a fever

a rash
a sore throat
pains
pains in my chest (c/d)
problems with my eyes
trouble sleeping
worms

day (s)
week(s)
month(s)
hour (s)

sleep
eat
drink
work
read
hurt(s)
ache(s)
itch(es)

leg
tooth
eye
ear
stomach
back
chest
arm(s)
hand(s)

muscle
body (c/d)

sick
bleeding
vomiting
dizzy

run-down (c/d)

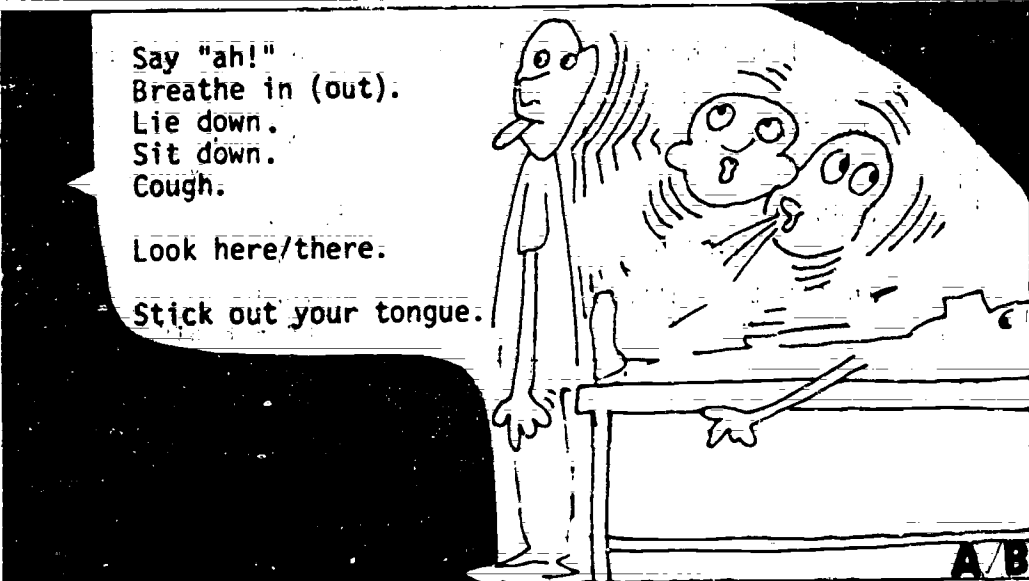
malaria
cancer
heart trouble
mental problems
diabetes
ulcers
a stroke

17 Medical (2)

Chunk 5 Respond to instructions during a medical exam.

Situation

In an examination room at the doctor's office or at the hospital



Say "ah!"
Breathe in (out).
Lie down.
Sit down.
Cough.
Look here/there.
Stick out your tongue.

I have to examine you.
You need an operation.
Inhale/Exhale.

You need a ____.

When can I come for a
blood test?

A/B C/D

Vocabulary

an operation
a chest X-ray
a check-up
a TB check
an eye examination

blood test
stool sample
urine sample

Culture

To cope with medical costs, many people have health insurance. It can usually be obtained through your employer. You can also buy insurance privately (not through an employer), although it is more expensive. Many health insurance plans do not cover dental expenses, drugs or visits to the emergency room.

- Private doctors are expensive and you have to pay for each visit at the time of the visit. Appointments are usually made over the phone.
- Community clinics are supported by the government or by charitable organizations. Patients pay according to how much they earn. Medicaid (government medical insurance) is usually accepted as payment. Service is sometimes on a first come, first served basis.
- Out-patient clinics, where patients stay only long enough to be treated, are attached to hospitals and may or may not be private.



Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
A Review (time)	Review (spell one's name)		
B (floor numbers) (room numbers) (elevator numbers)		Review (days of week) (months of year)	
(ordinal numbers) e.g. FIRST SECOND Options		UP/DOWN ELEVATOR X-RAY LAB	

17 Medical (2)

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
<p>Time, date and name of the doctor or nurse on a medical appointment card.</p> <p>C</p>	
<p>D</p>	<p>Fill out a standard medical history form with the use of bilingual reference materials.</p>

Grammar

Question Word

HOW LONG

How long

were you

there?

sick?

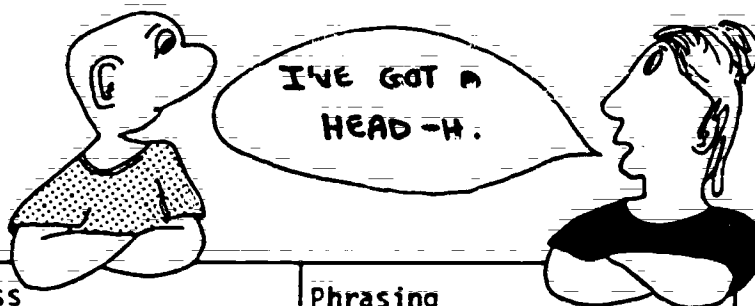
a soldier?

did you

live in _____?

sleep last night?

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

Day 2

Day 3

Notes

1. Symptoms. Use four different Cuisenaire rods to represent lengths of time (white = hour; green = day; pink = week; yellow = month). Numbers of rods convey the length of time, e.g. two white rods means two hours. Put a piece of masking tape on a part of a student's body to elicit "My _____ hurts." The rods then cue the length of time. Vary this by putting the tape on a picture of the human body. Have students work in small groups to ask and answer questions using rods and tape as cues.
2. My Body/Your Body. Review parts of the body by making false statements which students must "correct." One person stands in the center of a circle of students, points to his/her hand, saying "This is my mouth." The students must respond by pointing to their mouths and saying, "This is my hand." The student who makes an error goes to the center of the circle and continues the activity.
3. Simulation. Set up a "reception desk" and an "examination room" in a clinic. Assign roles of the doctor, the receptionist and patients. Have the students make appointments, return to the office, wait and then see the doctor. For advanced classes, give students appointment cards and prescriptions. Vary this by including a pharmacist in a drugstore.
4. Picture Sequence. Prepare a series of pictures that represent the various steps in getting medical treatment: symptoms, making an appointment with the doctor, seeing the doctor and getting treatment. Include a variety of symptoms and treatments. Have the students arrange these pictures in the proper sequence and describe the series of events. Vary this by including ailments which do not require a visit to the doctor or ones that should be treated in the emergency room of a hospital.
5. Literacy: Office. Give each student a worksheet showing a 10 story office building with several rooms on each floor unnumbered. Students complete the worksheet by writing in floor numbers and room numbers.

FLOOR

									10
				5					
8	1								
7		2							
					6				
							8		
									10
3			3				7		
		2			6			9	
	1			4			8		

17 Medical (2)

Planning

"Wounded in the front arm" and "paralyzed in the abdomen" are interesting medical conditions but doctors need simpler, more accurate statements. Help your students state their symptoms exactly.



Unit 18

Drugstore

Unlike other countries, many drugs in the U.S. require a prescription before purchase. Also, proper use of prescription drugs requires reading labels or understanding oral instructions. In this unit, students learn the language necessary to read instructions, ask appropriate questions and make purchases in a drugstore.



Purposes

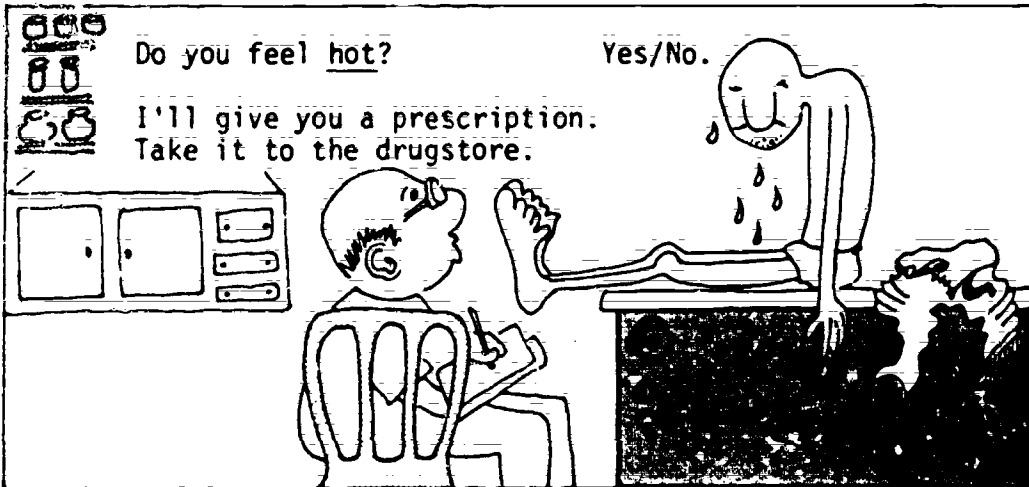
- A**
 - To respond to questions about symptoms.
 - To purchase medicines.
 - To follow instructions for taking medicine.
- B**
 - To ask about instructions for taking medicine.
 - To ask questions of a medical examiner about oneself or a family member.
 - To ask for clarification of a prescription.
- C/D**
 - To find appropriate over-the-counter medication.
 - To get a prescription filled and refilled.
 - To buy non-drug items in a drugstore.
 - To ask questions about treatment plan.

18 Drugstore

Chunk 1 Answer questions about symptoms and ask about treatment

Situation

In the examination room



Do you feel hot? Yes/No.

I'll give you a prescription.
Take it to the drugstore.

Do you have any pain? Yes, here.
Does _____ No.

Can I work?

Yes, you can.
No, you should rest.

B/C/D

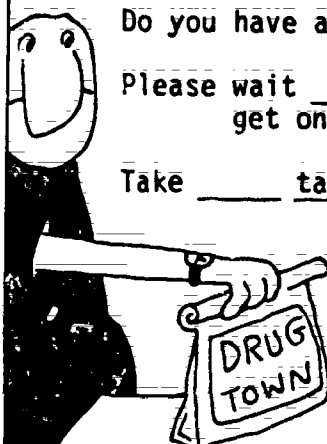
Vocabulary

<u>hot</u>	sick	<u>work</u>
<u>cold</u>		go to work
<u>tired</u>		go to school
<u>dizzy</u>	nauseous (c/d)	go out: ide
<u>weak</u>	nervous	
<u>you/I</u>		<u>rest</u>
<u>he</u>		stay home
<u>she</u>		stay in bed

Chunk 2 Get a prescription filled

Situation

At a prescription counter in a drugstore



Do you have a prescription? Yes/No.

Please wait _____ minutes.
get one (from your doctor). (_____).

Take _____ tablet(s) every 2 hours.

Take _____ every 2 hours.

Every 2 hours.

How many should I take?

How often?

(_____).

I'd like a refill, please.

B

C/D

Vocabulary

<p><u>every 2 hours</u></p> <p>every _____ hours</p> <p>before meals</p> <p>after breakfast</p> <p>lunch</p> <p>dinner</p>	<p>once a day</p> <p>twice a day (b)</p> <p>three times a day</p> <p>at bedtime</p> <p>before you sleep (c/d)</p>	<p><u>tablet(s)</u></p> <p><u>teaspoon(s)</u></p> <p><u>tablespoon(s)</u></p>
--	---	---

Culture

A drugstore sells drugs, health products and beauty aids. They often sell and develop camera film. Many drugs that can be bought over the counter in other countries require a prescription in America. When purchasing prescription drugs, the customer takes the prescription written by a doctor to the pharmacist. The pharmacist works behind a counter usually wearing a white coat. Often the pharmacist will ask you to wait or come back later to pick up the order.

- Some drugs are dangerous when taken with beer or alcohol. Ask the pharmacist if you can drink.
- Pharmacies can be found in hospitals, shopping malls, in town or in large supermarkets.



Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
Review (aisle numbers) 2A 6B A		DRUGSTORE CLINIC	
B		PHARMACY TEASPOON TABLESPOON TABLET (abbreviations) TSP TBSP	
ONE TWO THREE Options		(prescription labels) PRESCRIPTION OUT-PATIENT PHARMACIST	

18 Drugstore

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
Labels on prescription medicine (including abbreviations and warnings).	C
The generic names of common non-prescription medicines. Ex: ASPIRIN, COUGH SYRUP.	

Grammar

Question Word

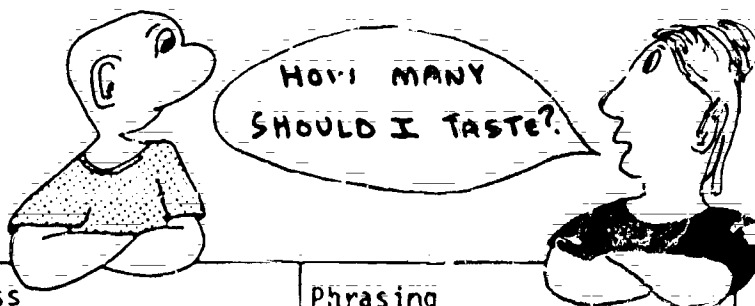
WHY

Why

are you
is he

late?
eating?
drinking?
going to town?

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

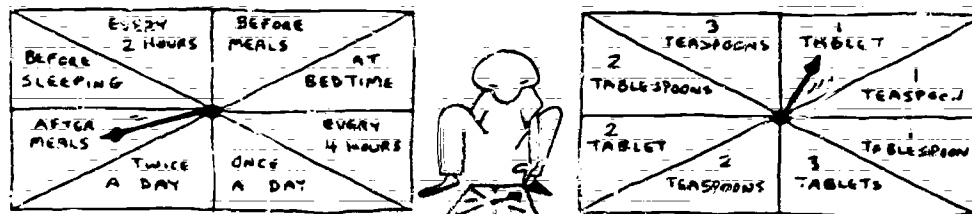
Day 1

Day 2

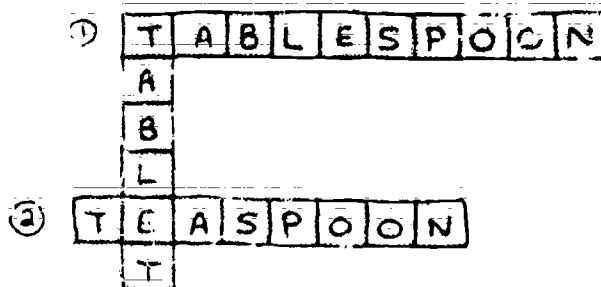
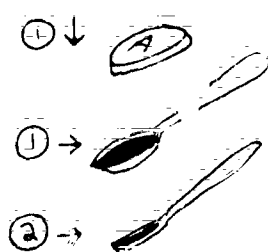
Day 3

Notes

1. Spinner. Make spinner cards for number of pills and when to take them. Have students practice the questions and spin to cue the answers.



2. Memory Table. To practice vocabulary, bring 5-20 objects found in a drugstore and put them on a table. Cover the objects with a cloth. Remove the cloth for 20-30 seconds to allow the students to study the items. Then cover them with the cloth. Have the students work alone or in groups to record what they saw. Compare and check lists. Vary this by asking students to record the position of items. For advanced classes, include several items that are the same so that they have to use more language to distinguish among items.
3. Cultural Exploration. Ask students to describe how a certain illness is treated in their countries. Put this information (in words or pictures) on a large piece of newsprint. Then have them describe how this same illness is likely to be treated in the U.S. Have them discuss and explain similarities and differences.
4. Picture Narrative. Distribute drawings or photographs of sick persons to students. Have them prepare a brief paragraph describing a person's illness and treatment. Provide a model for students by putting key words or pictures on the blackboard.
5. Literacy: Crossword. Prepare a crossword puzzle using words the students already know. Pictures can be used as cues. Ex:



6. Simulation. Set up the classroom to resemble a drugstore, with a prescription counter and aisles. Have students play the roles of pharmacist, cashier and customers. Give task cards to the customers.

18 Drugstore

Planning



Stress the need to keep prescription and non-prescription drugs out of the reach of children.

Unit 19

Employment (2)

Not long after arrival, a person will probably need to express the need for a job and even for a particular type of job. Once the person is in the interview situation it is also necessary to provide information about past work experience. This unit gives students exposure to several language exchanges so that they are better able to cope with this part of a job interview.



Purposes

- A**
- To indicate a need and preference for a job.
 - To provide information about one's present occupation.
 - To provide information about one's past occupation.
 - To answer questions about one's job history and work experience.
 - To identify entry-level jobs in the U.S.
 - To identify one's job skill areas.

- B**
- To respond to questions about one's job skills.
 - To respond to questions about one's educational background.
 - To indicate one's job preferences (to employer, friends or sponsor).

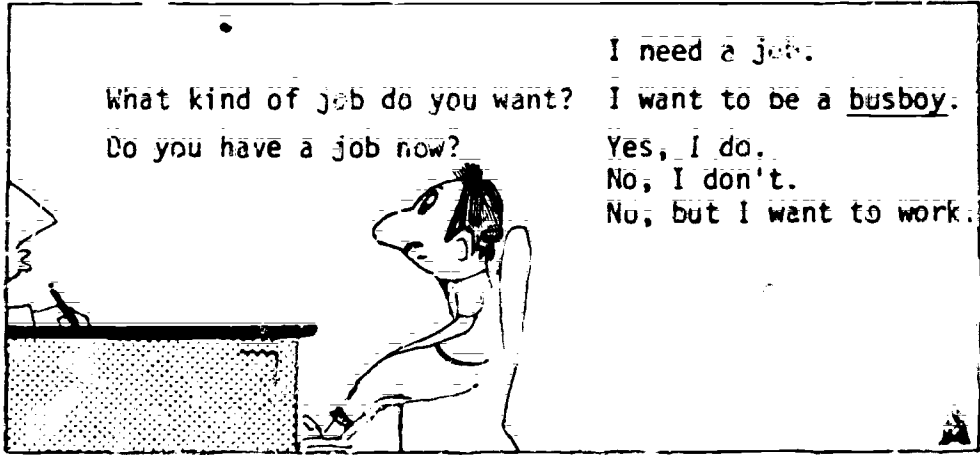
- C/D**
- To give appropriate information when applying for a job.
 - To indicate duties, qualifications and working hours of employees in entry-level jobs.
 - To describe work experience in detail.
 - To describe areas of previous study.
 - To state ability to use tools, equipment and machines.

19 Employment (2)

Chunk 1 Indicate need and preference for a job

Situation

In a formal interview



I need a job.
What kind of job do you want? I want to be a busboy.
Do you have a job now? Yes, I do.
No, I don't.
No, but I want to work.

Do you want a full-time or part-time job? I want a full-time job.
part-time job? part-time

What position are you applying for? ().
Do you have any openings (for busboys?)
().

B

C/D

Vocabulary

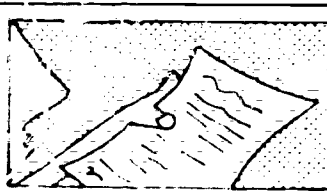

busboy
waiter
waitress
fisherman
cook
maid
janitor
fisherwoman

factory worker
dressmaker (seamstress)
tailor
mechanic
dishwasher
carpenter
farmer
busgirl

Chunk 2 Provide information about education

Situation:

In a formal interview

 		A
What languages do you <u>spea</u> k?	()	
How many years did you go to school?	(I went to school)(for) 3 years. I didn't go to school.	
When did you go to school?	From 19 _ to 19 _.	
How long have you been in <u>America</u> ?	3 months.	B
Did you finis hool?	()	
Did you go ...	()	
What did you , in school?	()	
Have you been in <u>America</u> long?	Yes, I've been here since . No, I've only been here since .	
How long have you been in <u>America</u> ?	I've been here for 3 months. Since <u>September</u> , 19 _.	C
What have you been doing since you came to <u>America</u> ?	I've been working.	D

Vocabulary

America
California
(other states)

working
studying
looking for a job
going to school

months
days
weeks
years

3
(any appropriate number)

speak
read
write

September
(other)

19. Employment (2)

Check 3 Provide information about work experience

Situation

In a formal interview

What did you do in Laos?

How long were you a _____?

Did you work in Laos?

Where did you work?

I was a _____.

(I was a _____)(for) 3 years.

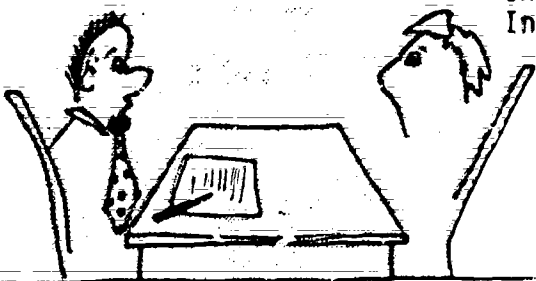
Yes, I did.

No, I didn't.

At home.

On the farm.

In Vientiane.



Have you ever been a dishwasher?

worked as a dishwasher?

worked in a factory?

What kind of work have you done?

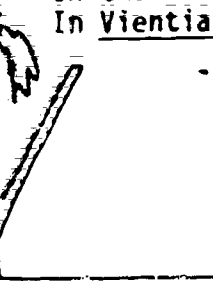
Yes, I have.

No, I haven't.

I've been a _____.

I've never had a job.

I've never worked.



Have you ever had any job training?

What kind of job training have you had?

I studied _____ for 3 years.

I've studied _____.

I haven't had any job training.

Vocabulary

a factory
 a hotel
 a restaurant
 a supermarket
 a store
 an office

years
weeks
months
work
have a job
go to school

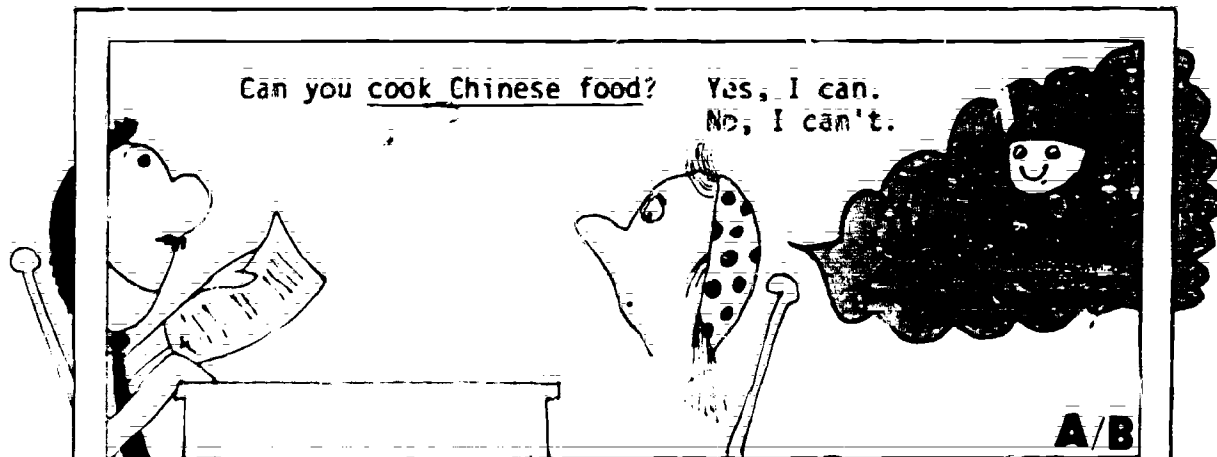
Laos
Cambodia
Vietnam
(other)
Vientiane
(other cities)

3
 (correct number)

Chunk 4 Identify job skills and experience

Situation

In a formal interview



Can you cook Chinese food? Yes, I can.
No, I can't.

Do you have experience (as a busboy)? Yes, I do.
No, I don't have any experience (but ____).

How much experience do you have? I have ____ years experience as a ____.

What skills do you have? I can cook Chinese food.
(____).

Do you know how to ____?
(____).

Do you have the skills for this job?
(____).

A/B

C/D

Vocabulary

cook Chinese food
cook ____ food
clean house
fix ____
drive
make clothes
make ____
speak English
read English
write English

repair ____
cut hair
paint
draw
type
build houses
take care of children
sew
do math

(c/d)

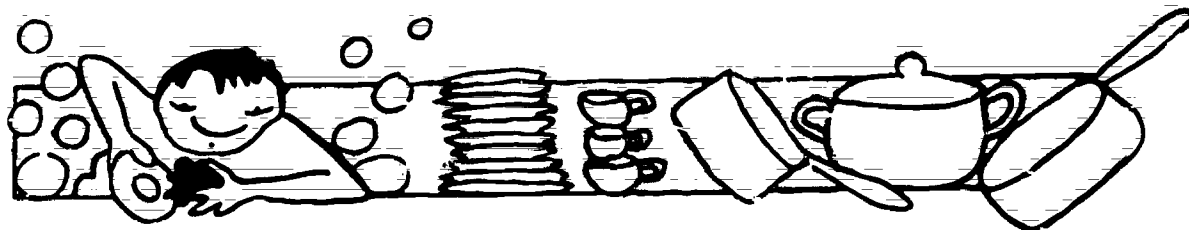
busboy
construction worker
factory worker
truck driver
taxi driver
cashier
gardener
barber
seamstress
carpenter

19 Employment (2)

Culture

In an initial interview, a job counselor helps a person find out which jobs he/she is qualified for or interested in. This interview can take place either at a refugee center or an employment office run by the state. There is no fee for their services. Private employment agencies charge a large fee for this service. The job interview comes later.

- It is important to be able to identify one's skills and speak about them with confidence.
- Educational background can include job training, military training, apprenticeship, etc.
- New arrivals in the U.S. are likely to be hired for one of the following "entry-level jobs": busboy/girl, dishwasher, waiter/waitress, factory worker, janitor/custodian, farmhand, fisherman, clerical/office worker, gas station attendant, security guard.



Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
A	M F	Review NAME ADDRESS	
B		OCCUPATION LANGUAGE(S) EDUCATION FROM 19__ TO 19__	
Options		Review (months) FROM MAY, 19__ TO JUNE, __	(one's occupation)

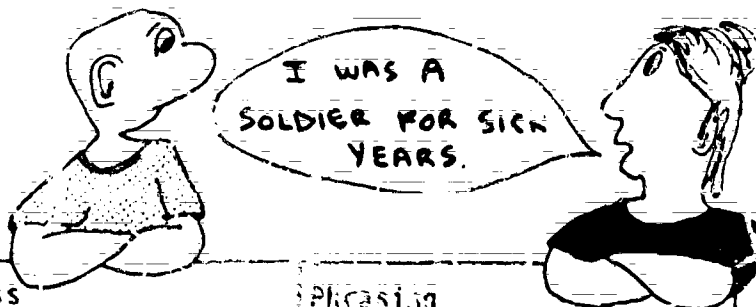
Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
Recognize (and write) the names of the months and their abbreviations.	Follow written instructions, filling out an application form. Ex: USE A PEN, PRINT. C
Classified ads in a newspaper. Job notices on a bulletin board.	A standard application form (with request for assistance if necessary). D

Grammar

Model	Can	you	sew?	I	
Ability		she	cook?	Yes,	she can.
CAN		he	see?	No,	I she he can't.

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Pitching
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

Day 2


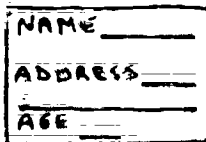
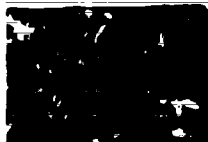
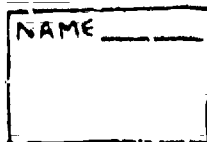
Day 3

19 Employment (2)

Notes

1. Picture Cube. Put six pictures of occupations on the six sides of a cube. A student throws the cube, looks at the picture facing up and says, "I want to be a _____."
2. Job Definition. Prepare brief statements defining job responsibilities, e.g. this person takes money in a store (cashier). Divide the class into two teams. Read the job descriptions; each team gets a point when they correctly identify the job.
3. Concentration. Play the game with sets of cards that match skills with the names of occupations.



4. Evaluation. Have students list the three kinds of jobs they would most like to have. Have students present their lists to the rest of the class. Vary this by putting this information on a chart for easy reference and question-answer practice.
5. Simulation. Play the role of an administrator interviewing applicants for a job. Have students play the roles of applicants. During the interviews, ask the rest of the students to observe the exchange. Afterwards, ask them to list strong and weak points of the interviewee's presentations. Include an assessment of verbal and non-verbal language.
6. Literacy: Forms. Students fill out a form that includes all form language they have learned thus far. To vary this, prepare several forms with each one adding a new element.
Ex:

7. Double Circle. Move the chairs to form two circles--one inside the other. Students in the outer circle sit facing those in the inner circle. Ask a question. The students in the outer circle all ask their partners the same question. After they answer, the students in the outer circle move one chair to the right. Ask another question. Continue until you have asked 10 questions.

Planning

19 Employment (2)

Planning

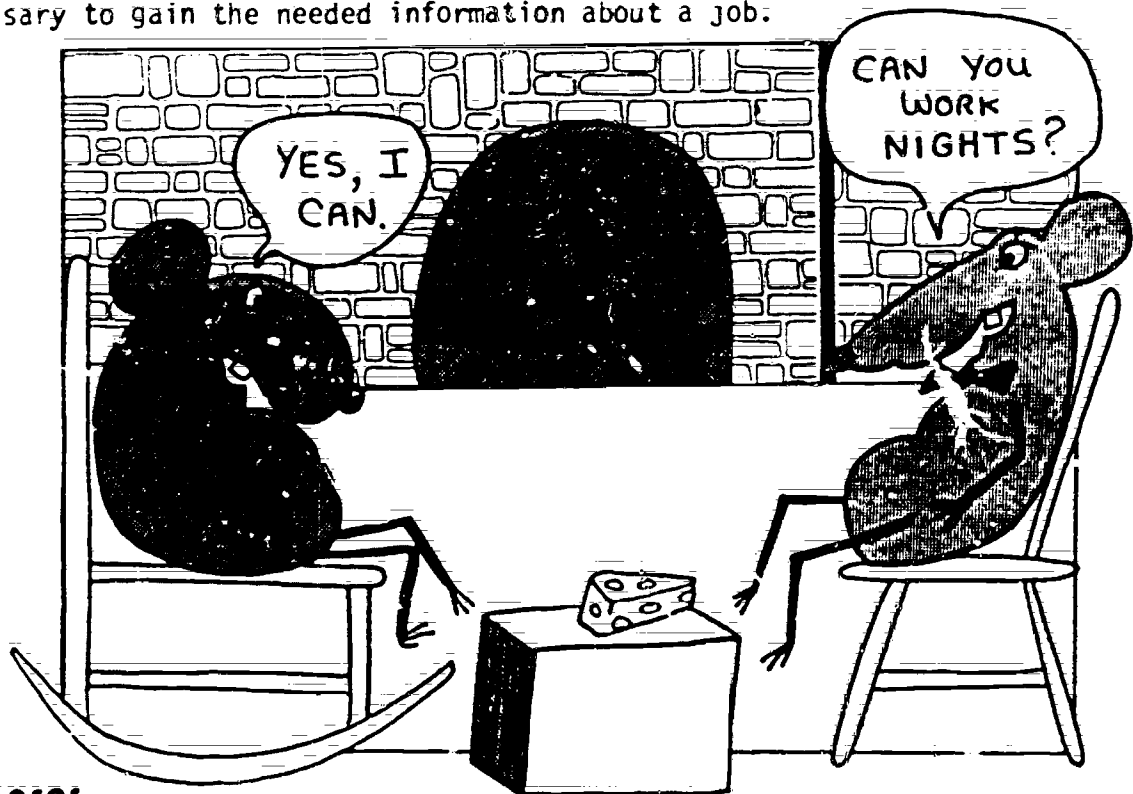
"Plastic shoe recycling worker", "Ladder Polisher", "Fogman", "Making watches bend" and "Building cleaning ladies" are examples of jobs or skills that are not clearly stated. Help your students to correctly state and define their occupations.



Unit 20

Employment (3)

Once a job has been discussed and offered, it is important to ask about hours, shifts and scheduling. This unit gives students the language necessary to gain the needed information about a job.



Purposes

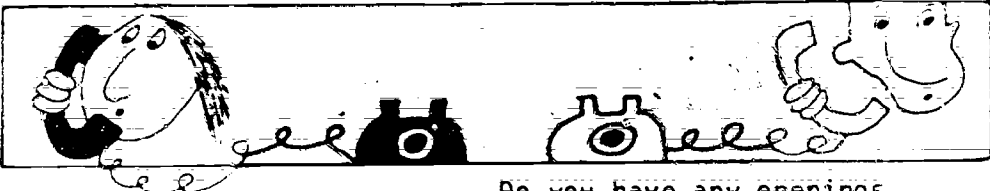
- A** To ask questions about a job opportunity.
To respond to specific questions about a work schedule.
- B** To set up appointments for a job interview.
To ask and respond to questions about work availability, hours and dates.
- C** To compare different kinds of jobs.
To prepare for a job interview.
- D** To make a follow-up call about a job application.
To respond to an employer's decision about a job.
To request a change in hours or position.
To state intention to resign and give reasons.
To request a letter of reference.
To find out about benefits.
To begin and end an interview appropriately.

20 Employment (3)

Chunk 1 Make an appointment for an interview

Situation

On the telephone

	
Yes, we do. I'm sorry. We don't.	Do you have any openings for _____?
B	
Can you come today at _____?	I'd like to have an interview. Yes, I'll be there. Can I apply for a job?
Can you come in tomorrow at _____?	Yes, thank you.
C	
I'm sorry. We can't hire you. (_____).	I'm calling about the job I applied for? Do you have any other openings?
D	

Vocabulary

tomorrow
Monday
Tuesday
etc.
today

Chunk 2 Respond to questions about work schedule

Situation

In a job interview

Can you work nights?

(You work) Monday through Friday.

(You work) Sundays.

(You work) nights.

(You work) 9 to 5.

Yes, I can.


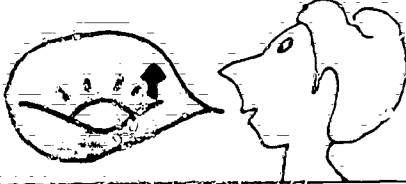
No, I can't.

(I can work ____).

When do I work?

(_____).

What hours do I work?



A

When can you start working?

Can you start _____?

Come in at _____.

(I can start working) now.

Yes. What time?

At 9:00 on Monday.

(_____).

Now.

(_____).

What time do I start?

When can I start?

B
C/D

Vocabulary

now
right away
tomorrow

at the end of the
Friday the third
May 3rd
immediately

_____]
(c/d)

nights
days
weekends
Saturdays
mornings
afternoons
evenings

hours
days

start
get off
finish

9 to 5
12 to 8
__ to __

20 Employment (3)

Chunk 3 Ask questions about and compare jobs

Situation

In a job interview

We pay \$ ____ an hour.

How much do you pay?

\$ ____ an hour.

(You get paid)
every two weeks.

How much do I get paid?

How often do I get paid?
When

(____):

(____):

This job is ____ than that one.

This job ____ than that one.

Which job is better for you? (____).

Do I have to wear a uniform?

What should I wear?

Which job is better?

Which job takes more experience?

A

B

C D

Vocabulary

every two weeks
once a month
twice a month
at the end of the month
every week

an hour
a week
a month

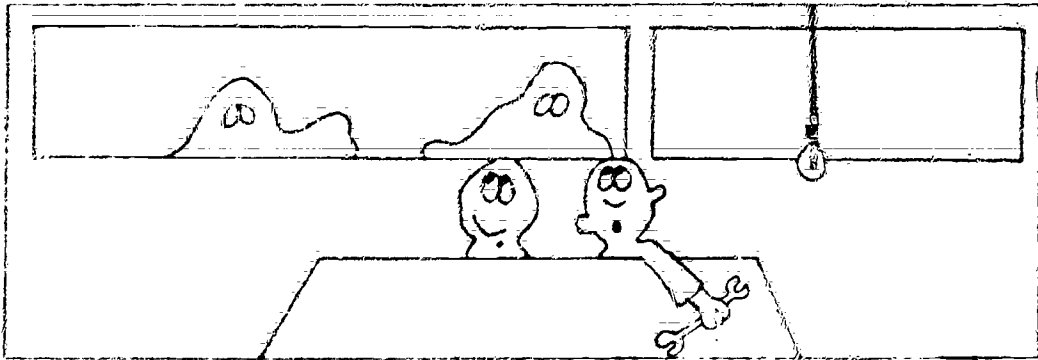
takes more experience
requires more experience
has better hours
has better pay

better
harder
easier
more difficult
more interesting

Chunk 4 Ask and respond to questions about working hours and shifts

Situation

In the workplace
On the telephone



().

().

Can you work overtime tonight?

().

Why?

().

I'd like to change to the day shift.

Can I have Saturday off?

I'm afraid I can't because ().

I'd like to change jobs.

I have a new job.
I will leave in two weeks.

Because ().

Can I have a letter of reference?

C

D

Vocabulary

tonight
today
this evening
this afternoon
Sunday
this weekend

Saturday
(anyday)
a week
some time
this weekend

day
night
swing
graveyard

20 Employment (3)

Culture

There are many ways to find a job: going directly to a work site, answering an ad, posting an ad, making contacts through friends, going from door-to-door, checking bulletin boards in public places and volunteering. The least threatening method is answering an ad in a newspaper, but it is also one of the least effective ways. Many jobs advertised in the newspapers are already filled and are advertised only for legal purposes.

Interviews are usually arranged over the phone. In some cases, the interview will be arranged with an employer's secretary or receptionist. The interviewer will consider many things besides what the person says. Attention may be paid to how you: 1) shake hands; 2) sit; 3) dress; 4) maintain eye contact. In addition, the interviewer will judge your confidence and interest.

Some suggestions:

- Bring your social security card to the interview.
- A resume is sometimes required and usually helpful to an interviewer.
- Don't bring a friend to the interview.
- Shake hands at the beginning and end of the interview.
- Don't be afraid to ask questions during the interview.
- Make sure what the next step is, e.g. wait for a call, call back, come back later.
- Call back after the interview to say thank you and to express continued interest in the job.

Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
A Review (time)		(days of the week)	
B		WEEK MONTH	
Options	M F	(Write name and indicate sex and title, previous occupations and dates of employment on an application)	(days of the week)

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
	Fill out a W-4 form (with assistance): D

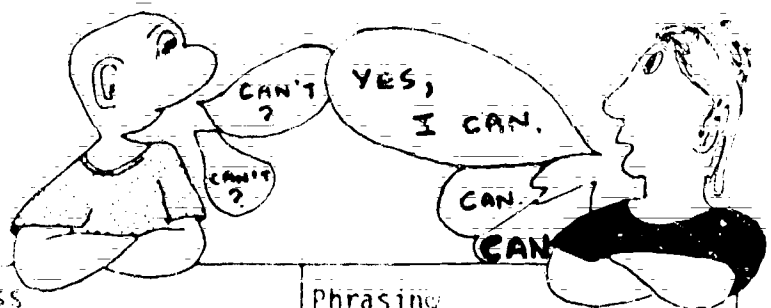
Grammar

Simple Past _____

Affirmative/Negative

I	studied.	I	
You	walked.	You	didn't _____.
She	waited.	He	
I	went _____.	She	
You	ate _____.		
He	bought _____.		

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1
Day 2
Day 3

20 Employment (3)

Notes

1. Picture Cues. Prepare pictures with symbols of lengths of time (days, weekends, mornings, etc.). Use these pictures as cues for the question "Can you work nights?"

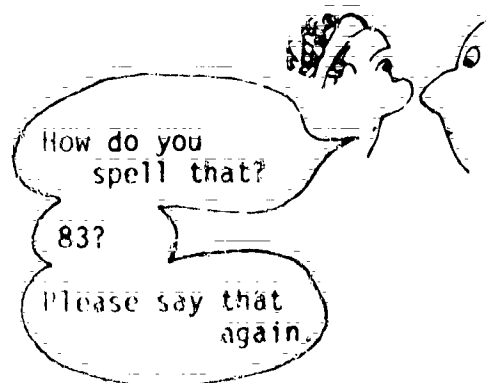


2. Schedule Matching. Give each student a set of seven paper slips and a paper with seven squares, each labelled with the days of the week. Make statements about a work schedule. Students cover the corresponding days with the slips of paper, e.g. "You work Sundays" or "You work Monday to Saturday." As a follow-up have students work in pairs. One student arranges the slips on the weekdays, the other says the work schedule.



3. Telephone Appointment. Put a partition between two students or have them sit back-to-back to simulate a telephone conversation. Students have matching sets of index cards--one with names of the days of the week, the other with times of day. One student sets up the interview and chooses two cards. The other student has to choose the same cards. Compare at the end of the conversation.
4. Simulation. Continue the simulation from Unit 19. This time the interviewer either offers the applicant a job or turns the applicant down. Again, have the rest of the students observe and comment on the interviewee's performance.
5. Literacy: Forms. Students work in pairs. One student gives information about himself/herself orally and the other fills out a form. Students will need to ask questions to clarify statements. Ex:

NAME
ADDRESS
AGE

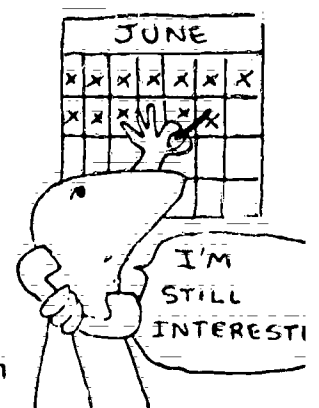


Planning

20 Employment (3)

Planning

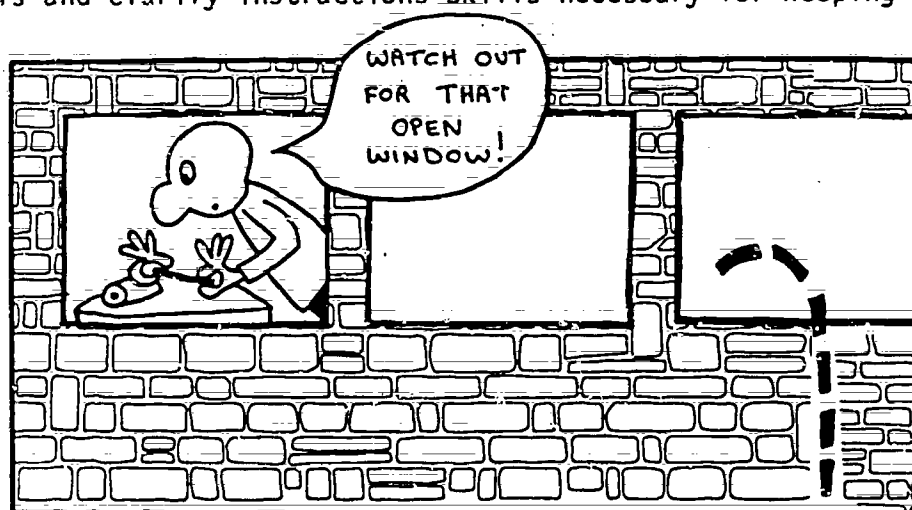
Stress the importance of following an interview with a phone call or visit to express continued interest in the job.



Unit 21

Job Skills

People with limited English skills have enough problems just getting a job without the additional worry of trying to keep one. In this unit, students learn how to give the boss excuses, deal with safety, identify common tools and clarify instructions skills necessary for keeping a job.



Purposes

A

- To respond to questions about work progress and completion.
- To make appropriate excuses for absence and tardiness.
- To ask questions about job-related functions.
- To respond to commands about safety and job functions.
- To ask for clarification about instructions.
- To identify common job tools and instruments.

B

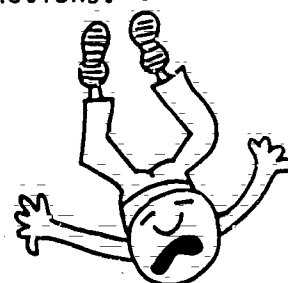
- To follow simple two-step oral instructions.
- To ask for permission to be excused from work.
- To ask for help.
- To ask for feedback from a supervisor.
- To report work progress and completion of task.

C

- To ask or tell where a co-worker is.
- To give and follow instructions in a work situation.
- To report problems encountered in completing a task.
- To state the degree of completeness of a task.
- To find locations in a workplace.
- To respond to feedback from a supervisor.
- To identify what part of instructions are not understood.

D

- To ask for clarification with a complete question.

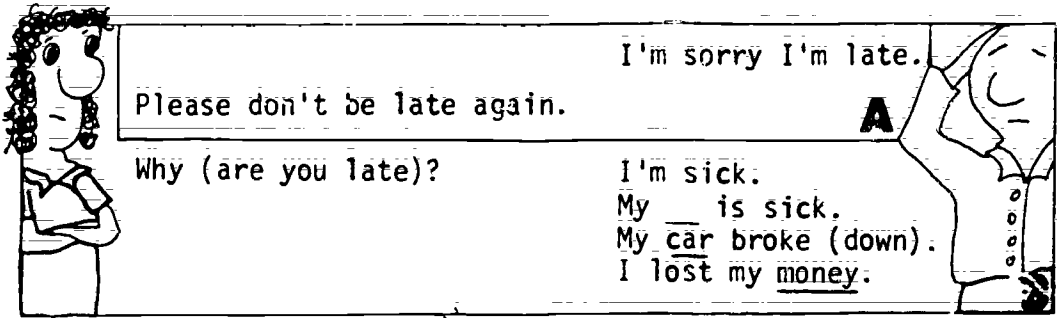


21 Job Skills

Chunk 1 Make excuses for absence and tardiness

Situation

In the workplace



I'm sorry I'm late.

Please don't be late again. **A**

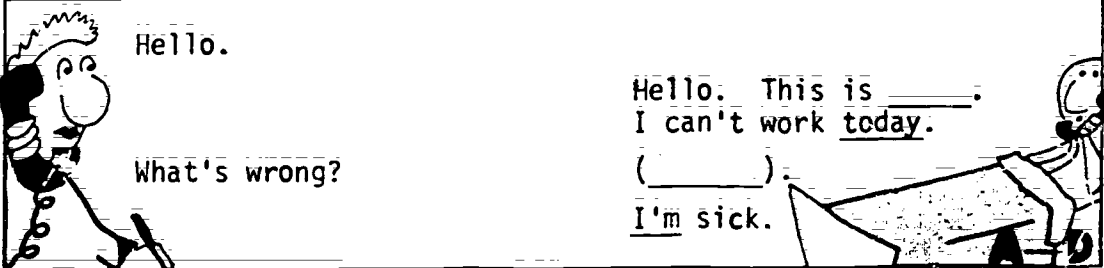
Why (are you late)?

I'm sick.
My is sick.
My car broke (down).
I lost my money.

I'm sick.
Can I go home?

Yes, you can. **C/D**

On the telephone



Hello.

What's wrong?

Hello. This is .
I can't work today.
().
I'm sick. **A-D**

Vocabulary

today
tomorrow
on Friday
on

I'm
my wife is
my husband is
my child is

car
bus


money
keys

Chunk 2 Respond to commands and instructions

Situation

In the workplace

Look out.
Watch out.
Don't touch that.
Don't come in here,
Shut the window/door.
Turn it off/on.



().
Excuse me?
What (did you say)?

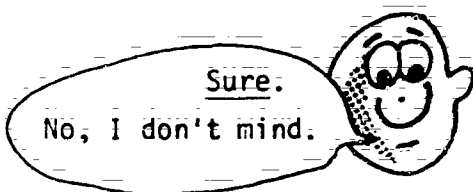
Please take this _____ to the office.
Ms. Jones.
outside.

No, I'm busy.
Ask him.

Where?
Can you help me, please?
Who?

B

Please ask John to _____.



Ask me if you need help.
Tell me when you are finished.
Let me know when you're finished.

OK.
John, please _____.
would you please ...?
could you please ...?
do you mind ... ing?

OK.
Where is the office?
Ms. Jones?

C/D

Vocabulary

the office
the supervisor's office
the manager's office
the boss's office
the payroll office (c/d)
the time clock
the personnel office
room _____

the locker room
the cafeteria
the lunch room
the store room

ask
tell

Ms.
Mr.
Mrs.
Miss

sure
all right
I can't right now.
I'd rather not.

him
her
Georgia

outside

over there


21 Job Skills

Chunk 3 Clarify instructions and identify tools and instruments

Situation

In the workplace





How do you do this?

What should I do?

What do you want me to do?

(The) what?

OK. / The water?

Is this right?

I'm finished.

What do I do now?

A

_____.

Bring me the water.

The _____.

Pick up the _____ and bring it here.

Yes, it is.

No, it isn't.

I'll show you.

B

Please _____.

Please bring me a _____.

Do you know how to _____?

Can you do this alone?

Could you explain that again?

Sorry, I don't think I understand.

What do you mean?

Could you explain how to do this?

Please show me how to _____.

I think I need some help.

I can't do this by myself.

I don't think I can do it alone.

Can you give me a hand?

Do you have a minute?

What do I do after _____? **C/D**

Vocabulary

do this
open this
lock this
lock the _____
do it
operate it (c/d)
operate this _____

water
knife
oil
broom
paint
soap
tools
 (name of a tool)

me
him
her
it
them
show
help

Chunk 4 State degree of completeness of a task

Situation

In the workplace



	Are you finished? Take a break.	Yes. No. Not yet.	
Can you work <u>tomorrow</u> at 10? <u>Tomorrow</u> at 10.		When? Yes, I can. No, I'm sorry. I'm busy.	
How long do you think it'll take you to do this?		It will take about _____.	
What have you done so far? How far are you?		So far I've _____.	
Which step are you on? (_____).		I'm on the _____ step. Are you <u>angry</u> at me?	
(_____).		I'm sorry if I made you angry. I'll try to <u>work faster</u> next time. I'll try not to make so many mistakes.	
Are you finished yet? How much more time do you (think you'll) need?		Please don't be angry. I didn't understand. I need about _____ more (I'll need) minutes.	

Vocabulary

tomorrow
today
on Friday
on _____

work faster
do it right
do it better
be more accurate

angry
mad

21 Job Skills

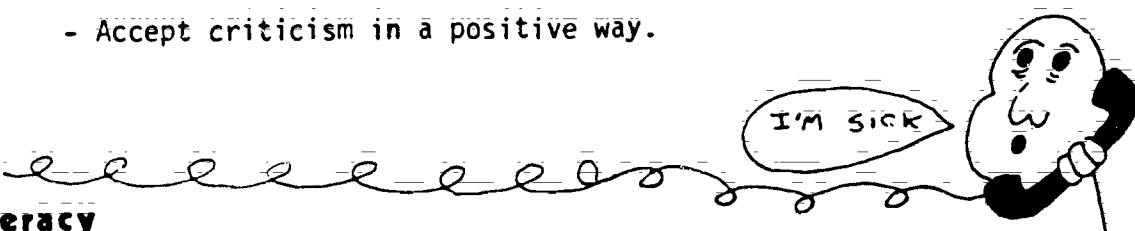
Culture

Most Americans have little knowledge of who refugees are or why they are in the U.S. They sometimes think refugees take jobs away from Americans. They may also resent some of the special benefits refugees have received. In addition, certain behavior can be annoying (spitting, standing on toilets, pushing out of line, etc.).

There are a number of things that make workplace relationships easier.

- Always call if you know you'll be late, sick or absent. Also, don't just leave a job. Give at least two weeks notice.
- Ask for clarification when directions are given. "Speak back" instructions to check for understanding.
- Say yes only when you really mean it. Answer "Do you understand?" truthfully.
- Communicate with your own immediate supervisor in case of problems.
- Indicate when help is needed or the task is unclear.
- Come to work and leave on time. Do overtime if asked.
- Spend time with American co-workers at meals or breaks.
- Accept criticism in a positive way.

Literacy



READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
A		DANGER <u>Review</u> OFF ON	
<u>Review</u> (room numbers) 1c B 16a		OFFICE	
(math signs) + = x ÷ (a time card) Options		KEEP OUT CAUTION POISON PUSH PULL TURN	IN OUT

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
Signs posted at a worksite advertising positions available.	Perform mathematical problems in English. D

Grammar

Direct/Indirect Objects

ME/HIM/HER/IT

Give

me

him

her

the book.

the pen.

Give it to

me.

him.

her.

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

Day 2

Day 3

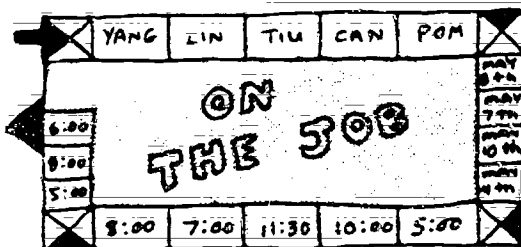
21 Job Skills

Notes

1. Whatsit. Put several objects around the classroom. The students know the names of some of the objects, but not all. Ask the students to give you the objects they know. Then request the other objects. Use students lack of comprehension to introduce expressions for requesting clarification (e.g. "The what?" or "What did you say?").
2. Operation. Bring in paper, pencils, scissors and tape. Ask students to make a paper box. Show them a completed box as a model. As students work individually, go round and give them directions (e.g. "Do it like this" or "Watch out!") and ask questions. After they've finished ask them to list the steps and then provide the instructions.
3. Role Play. Go through the Operation again as a role play between employee and supervisor. Give the workers specific situations to enact (e.g. asking for help, making a mistake). Also give the supervisor specific tasks (e.g. checking employees' work, asking employees to work faster). Vary this by introducing an angry or demanding supervisor who speaks loudly and harshly.
4. Spiel. Use visual cues on the blackboard to help students prepare and deliver short "talks" on their job situations. Sample cues:



5. Literacy: Time Card. Prepare game boards and time card worksheets for each group of students. Use the names of your students on the game board.



(Game Board)

NAME	_____
DATE	_____
TIME IN	_____
TIME OUT	_____

(Time Card)

Give each group dice and markers. Taking turns, students throw the dice and move their markers along each line filling in their time card as they go. Collect the time cards and put them a box. Ask students to find their "own" time card-- not the one they filled out. As a follow-up, ask questions about when they came to work and when they left.

Planning

21 Job Skills

Planning

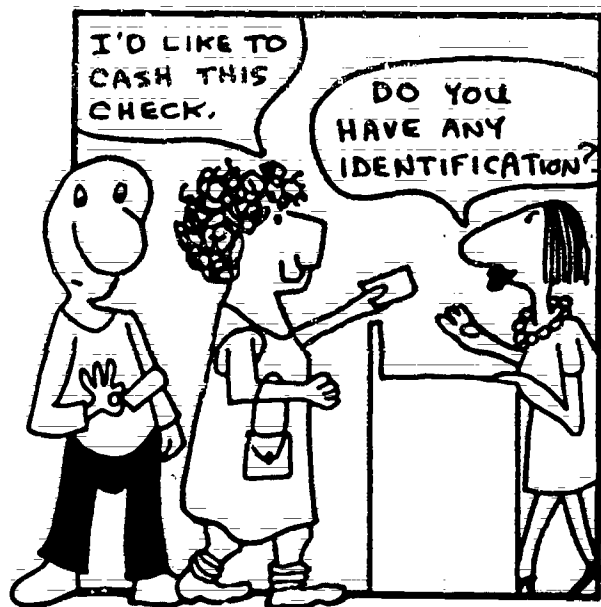


Stress the importance of accepting criticism in a positive way.

Unit 22

Banking

Money orders, travellers' checks and saving or checking accounts can provide people with safe alternatives to carrying or keeping large amounts of cash. In this unit, students learn the minimal language needed for using the basic services a bank has to offer.



Purposes

A

- To ask to cash a check or money order.
- To provide proper identification (ID).
- To ask for change.
- To provide exact change.
- To follow instructions for cashing a check.

B

- To purchase a money order.
- To ask for assistance in filling out a money order.
- To get information or clarification by using basic question words.

C

- To ask for a check or money order.

D

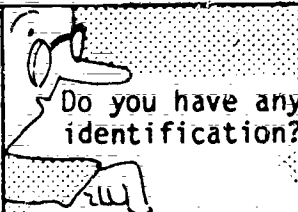
- To purchase an international money order.
- To open a savings or checkings account with assistance.
- To ask questions about banking services (interest, charges).
- To handle problems (a lost passbook, errors, etc.).

22 Banking

Chunk 1 Ask about checks, travellers' checks and money orders

Situation

In the bank



Do you have any identification?

Please sign here.
On the back.

I'd like to cash this check.
I want ____.

Yes, I do.
Here.

Where?

How much?

Please sign (your name) here.
On the back.

Yes/No.

I want a money order
for \$ ____.

\$ ____.

Can you help me (fill it out)?

Where (do I sign)?

Where?

Here?

Is this right?

Do you have an ID?

(____).

Please endorse it.

I'd like to send a check
to Thailand.

I'd like some travellers'
checks.

Yes. Here it is.

Yes. Here's my ID.

What are the charges, please?

I'd like to cash this check.

Vocabulary

Thailand
Laos
Vietnam
Cambodia
(other)

some travellers' checks
an international money
order

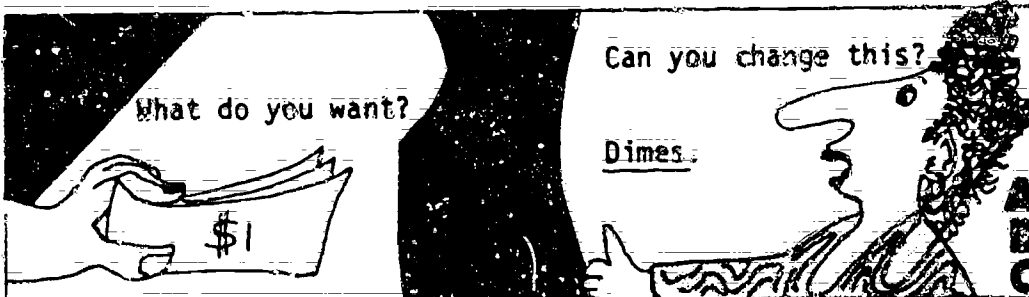
ID
license
drivers' license

right
correct

Chunk 2 Get change and ask questions about banking services and hours

Situation

In the bank



What do you want?

Can you change this?

Dimes.

Yes, it is.

Sorry.

Checking or savings?

Do you have your account book?

()

()

(At) ____ o'clock.

Excuse me.

Is this right?

I'd like to open an account, please.

Checking.

I want to withdraw \$ ____.

Sorry. I lost it.

Yes, here it is.

No, I don't.

What is the interest?
(on my account)

Are you open on Saturdays?

What time do you open?
close?

Vocabulary

on Saturdays
on Sundays
on weekends
evenings

withdraw
deposit

dimes
quarters
dollars
nickels

checking
savings

half dollars
pennies

(b) right
correct
enough

22 Banking

Culture

Most Americans have a bank account: savings and/or checking. They use these accounts instead of keeping their money at home because 1) at home it might be stolen; 2) most bills are paid through the mail by check/money order; 3) a cancelled check is an automatic receipt of payment; 4) accounts pay interest. Anyone can open an account, but sometimes a minimum deposit or balance is required. There is no fee for opening an account. Each account has an identification number.

- You don't need to have an account to purchase a money order or traveller's cheques.
- Even if you have an account, you may need to show an I.D. to cash a check.
- Deposits and withdrawals are made by filling out forms which are submitted to a teller.
- A third-party check is a check made out to one person but signed over to another. You must write "pay to the order of _____" plus your endorsement (signature) on the back of the check.
- Two people can share one account. This is called a joint account.
- The bank usually charges a small fee (50¢ - \$1) for issuing a money order.

Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
Review (one's ID number) A (store hours)			Review (one's ID number) Review (one's name)
B		BANK	
(amounts in an account book) Review (time) Options		OPEN AM CLOSED PM Review (days of the week)	

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
	Fill out a money order. C
A Savings account statement.	Make a withdrawal or deposit by filling out the appropriate slips. Make out a check. D

Grammar

Requests

WANT/WOULD LIKE

I want

I would like

some change.

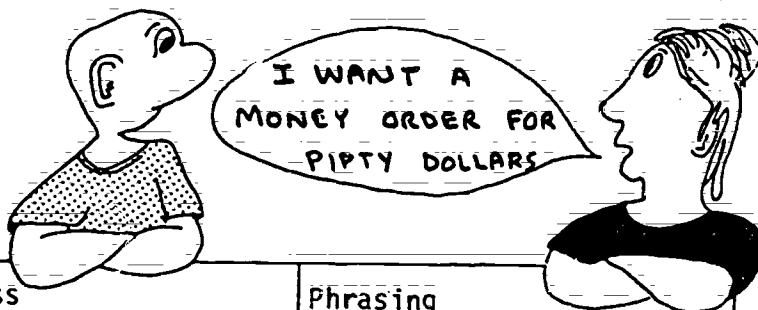
a pen.

a money order.

two tickets.

three stamps.

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

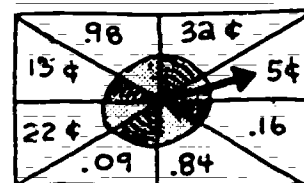
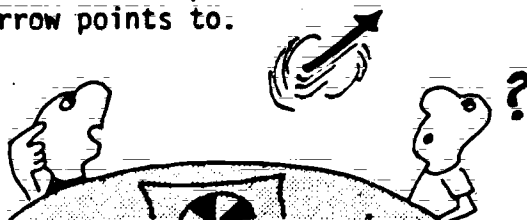
Day 2

Day 3

22 Banking

Notes

1. Card Cues. Prepare two sets of 15 cards each one with amounts of money (\$20, \$37.50, etc.) and the other with names of transactions (withdraw, deposit, money order, check, etc.). Students draw a card from each pile and make a request for that transaction, e.g. "I want to deposit \$20."
2. Picture Sequence. Prepare a series of drawings or pictures that show the steps in cashing a check. Students put the pictures in the appropriate sequence and describe the steps, e.g. "First, I show the check to the teller. Then, I show my ID." Prepare similar sequences for other banking transactions.
3. Spinner. Prepare a spinner card with various amounts of money under a dollar. Bring in U.S. coins or pictures of them. Students spin--and must take the amount of money that the arrow points to.



4. Simulation. Set up the classroom to resemble a bank, with one large counter and a few desks and tables. Have several students play the role of bank tellers. The others are customers. Give task cards to the customers, e.g.:

WITHDRAW \$400	DEPOSIT \$250	OPEN AN ACCOUNT	CLOSE YOUR ACCOUNT
-------------------	------------------	-----------------------	--------------------------

Each student gets "money" and a "bank book" (a folded piece of graph paper). Have students change roles when the transactions are completed. Point out cultural aspects, such as forming lines.

5. Hold-up. To add an unexpected element and humor, have an outsider rush into the room, demand money from a teller and run out. Have the students describe what happened and give their reactions.
6. Literacy: Money Order. Each student completes a money order by adding his/her name and address and the name of the person (a family member) who will receive it.

DATE _____	
	TO: _____
	NAME _____
	ADDRESS _____

Planning

22 Banking

Planning

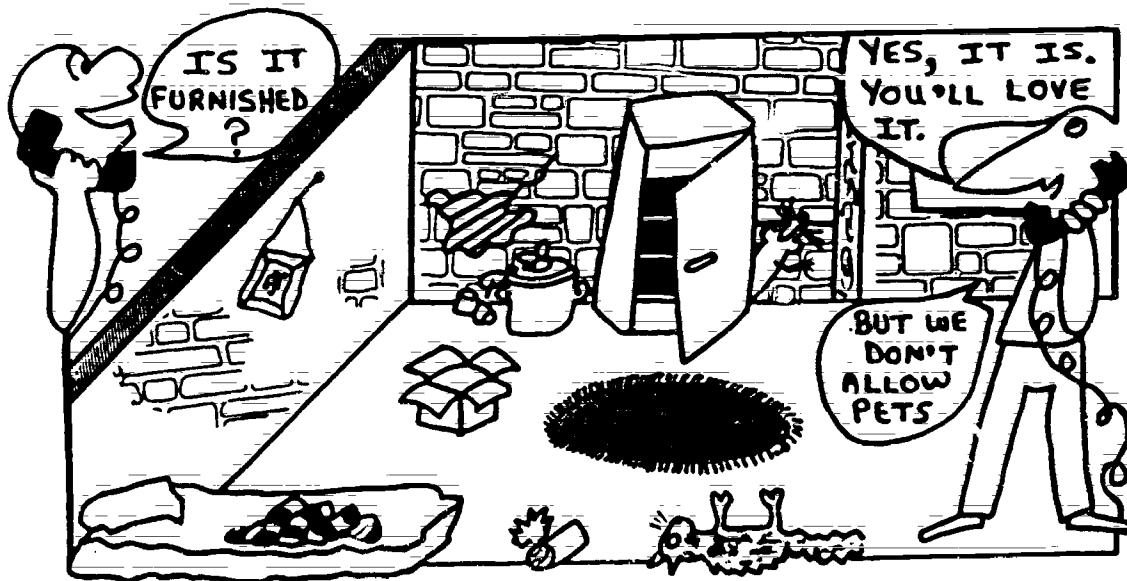


Help your students understand why they shouldn't keep large amounts of cash at home.

Unit 23

Housing (3)

One of the first tasks a person must deal with on arrival is finding a place to live. Usually, someone will help but there is no guarantee this will happen. Even if it does, a person may move several times in a short space of time. This unit gives students the language necessary for expressing needs about housing. In addition, students learn some helpful landlord/tenant exchanges.



Purposes

- A**
 - To state one's housing needs.
 - To set up an appointment to inspect housing.
 - To ask questions about available housing.
 - To identify common household furnishings and facilities.
 - To make complaints over the phone.
- B**
 - To ask about the location of housing.
 - To request repair work.
 - To indicate broken or non-working household facilities.
- C**
 - To compare different kinds of housing.
 - To arrange a time to make household repairs.
- D**
 - To ask for the description of a rental agreement.
 - To make arrangement to move in and out.
 - To follow instructions on use of housing.
 - To respond appropriately to complaints.
 - To explain the exact nature of a problem and the cause.

23 Housing (3)

Chunk 1 State housing needs

Situation

At a realtor's office
On the telephone with a landlord or real estate agent

Do you want a house or an apartment?
Are you looking for a house or an apartment?
How many bedrooms do you want?
I have a _____ bedroom apartment.
On _____ Street.

An apartment.
I'm looking for an apartment.
Where is it?

Do you want a house or an apartment?
_____.
Do you want a studio apartment? _____.
About _____ miles.
_____ blocks.

How many bedrooms does it have?
How far is the apartment from a supermarket?
Is it near a supermarket?
_____.

A B C D

Vocabulary

a supermarket
the school
here

a laundromat
a shopping center (c/d)
a bus stop

apartment
house


bedrooms
rooms
bathrooms

Chunk 2 Ask questions about housing

Situation

At a realtor's office


On the telephone with a landlord or real estate agent



\$ _____ a month.

Yes, there is.
No, there isn't.

Yes, tomorrow at _____.



How much is the rent?

Is there furniture?

Can I see it?

Is it furnished or unfurnished?

(_____).

It includes _____.

You have to pay for ____.

(_____).

\$ _____.

(_____).

Does the rent include utilities?

Do I have to pay for the utilities?

Is there a lease?

How long is the lease?

How much is the deposit?

I'd like to see it.

When can I see it?

(_____).

(_____).

We don't allow pets.

When is it available?

Does it have a garage?

(_____).

Vocabulary

utilities
electricity
gas
heat
water

tomorrow
today
Friday
(other days)

furniture
a bed
a refrigerator
a stove

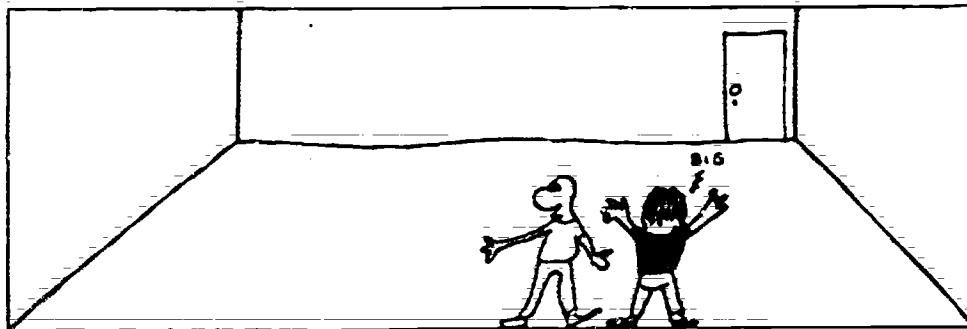
garage
basement
yard
backyard

23 Housing (3)

Chunk 3 Compare housing

Situation

In a realtor's office
On the telephone with a landlord or real estate agent
On a visit to a house or an apartment



Do you want the apartment? No. It's too big.

B

Do you want to rent it? It isn't big enough.
The rent is too much.

Is it OK?

Which apartment do you want? I want the one that costs \$ _____.

(_____).

Which one is the cheapest?
most expensive?

Which one is the best (for you)? (_____).

C/D

Vocabulary

the apartment
the house
the studio
it

one (c/d)
J

costs \$ _____.
has _____ bedrooms.
is near the _____.
is the cheapest.

much
high

big
small
expensive
dirty

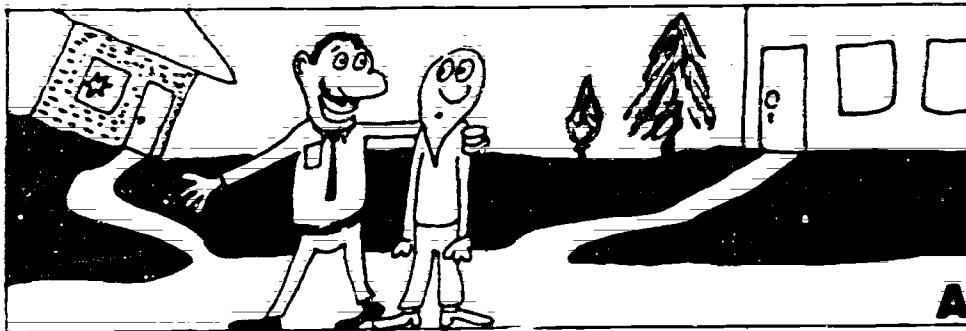
OK
all right

cheapest
biggest
smallest
nicest
nearest
nearest to _____

Chunk 4 Arrange for moving into housing

Situation

In a realtor's office
On the telephone to a landlord or real estate agent
On a visit to a house or an apartment



().

On the 1st of the month.

().

Can I move in now?
When can I move in?

When do I pay the rent?

What's the landlord's name?

The lease expires in
January.

Call .

The rent is due on the 1st.

When does the lease expire?

Who do I call if I have
problems?

When is the rent due?

I'd like to move out in January.
on Jan. 31.

Vocabulary

January
(any month)

name
address
telephone number

the landlord's
the landlady's
your

the manager's (d)

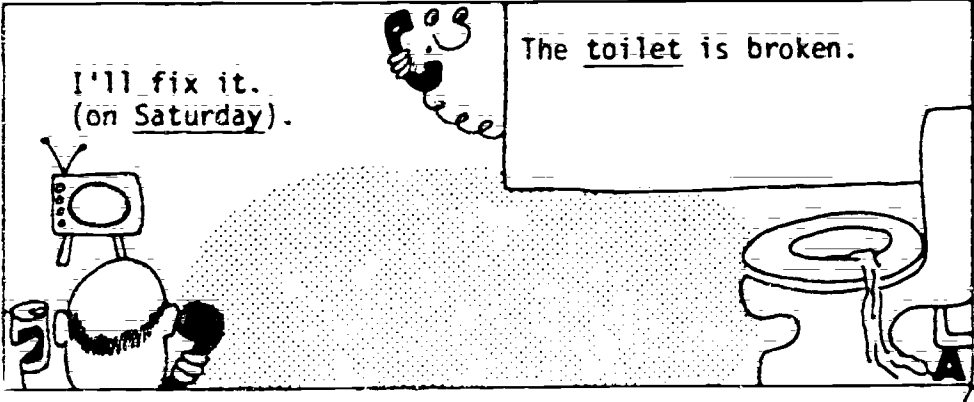
1st
10th
15th
30th
31st

23 Housing (3)

Chunk 5 Arrange for repairs and handle complaints

Situation

On the telephone to the landlord



I'll fix it.
(on Saturday).

The toilet is broken.

Mr. _____ speaking.
One minute.
This is _____.

May I speak to the landlord?
This is _____.
My toilet doesn't work.
The gas is leaking.
I lost my key.

May I speak to _____?
Can you turn down the music?
(_____).

When can you fix it?

Vocabulary

toilet
light
window
door

shower
lock
stove
refrigerator

gas
sink
shower

Mr.
Miss
Mrs.
Ms.

Saturday
(any day)

lord
lady

One minute

Hold on
Just a minute
I'll call him
her

turn down the music
chain your dog
put out the garbage
on Thursday
(other situations)

Culture

Usually, a refugee's first dwelling will be arranged by the sponsor. If a refugee moves, that assistance may not be offered again.

There are several ways of looking for a new place to live: 1) ads in the newspaper; 2) notices on public bulletin boards; 3) for rent signs; 4) through a real estate agent; 5) through friends. It is also possible to place an ad in the newspaper stating what you want. Reading newspaper ads is probably the most common way.

- Real estate agents usually charge a fee for finding you a place.
- Low-income or government housing is available, but sometimes difficult to get because of long waiting lists.
- A deposit is often required (sometimes equal to the first month's rent) to protect the landlord from non-payment of rent and/or damages.
- Rent is often paid by check and sent through the mail to the landlord.
- Some landlords require a lease, a legally binding agreement, for a given period of time (e.g. 6 months, 1 year). It's important to understand the lease agreement before signing it.

Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
A Review (money)		Review (days of the week)	
B (ordinal numbers) e.g. FIRST		FOR RENT STREET ST.	
Options		Review (months of the year) \$ ____ / MONTH MANAGER NO PETS NO CHILDREN FURNISHED UNFURNISHED AVE.	

23 Housing (3)

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
Classified ads and notices for housing.	C D

Grammar

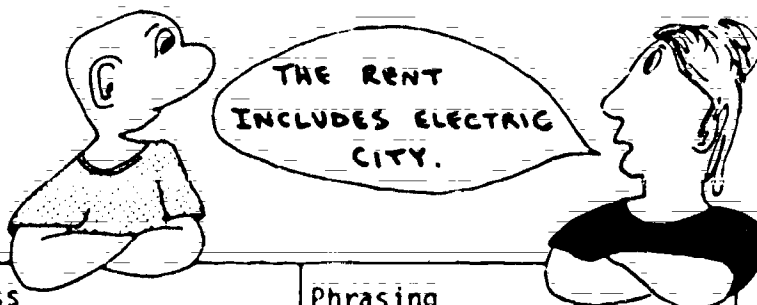
Simple Future

I
He
She
We
They

will

take it.
come here.
go there on Friday.
eat supper at 6:00.
_____.

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

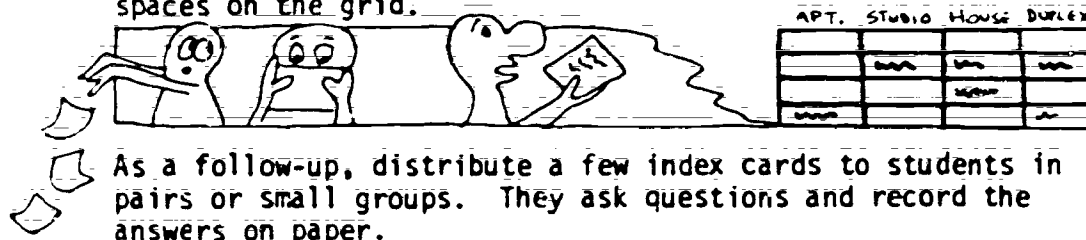
Day 1

Day 2

Day 3

Notes

1. Housing Grid. On the blackboard, put a grid with housing categories and blank spaces. On a separate set of index cards, write information about different kinds of housing. Give an index card to a student, who answers questions from the rest of the students. The class fills in the empty spaces on the grid.



2. Dialogue Grid. Tape a series of index cards illustrating lines of a dialogue on poster board to cue students as they practice the dialogue.

?	?	???	Bedrooms?	?
?	APT.	6	3	near school

As a follow-up, remove certain cards and have students create their own lines for the blank spaces.

3. Picture Cubes. Put pictures of household problems on the six sides of one cube (e.g. burned out light bulb, broken toilet, leaking shower, etc.). On the other cube, put possible solution (call the landlord, go to the hardware store, fix it yourself, etc.). Have the students throw both cubes, and say the problem and the solution that are facing up. Students decide if the solution is appropriate.

4. Want-Ads Chart. Prepare sample advertisements for different kinds of housing. Have students ask/answer questions about the information on the chart.

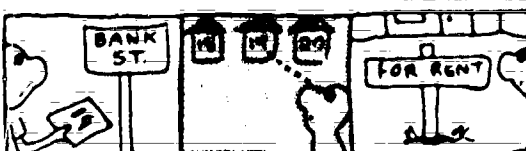
APARTMENT	365-4211	\$320/mo.	no lease
STUDIO	785-4343	\$195/mo.	6 month lease
HOUSE	341-6655	\$590/mo.	1 year lease



As a follow-up, put a piece of masking tape next to two ads and write comparatives on the blackboard (bigger, cheaper, more expensive, nicer, better, etc.). Have students work in pairs to ask and answer questions of comparison about the ads.

5. Literacy: Picture Story. Make a picture story using the sight words you have taught.

Ex:

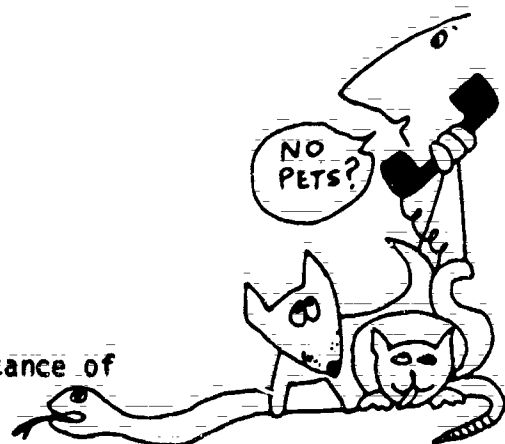


Students can take turns telling the story. As an option, ask students to circle words in the story as you call them.

23 Housing (3)

Planning

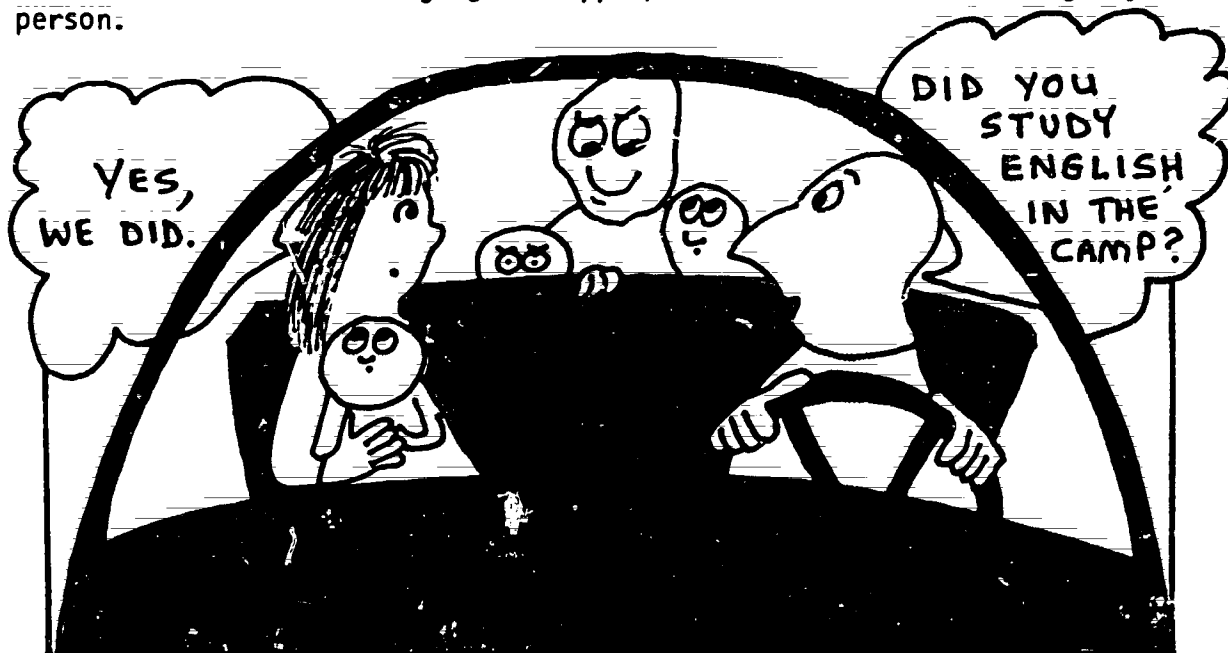
Help your students understand the importance of following the terms of a lease.



Unit 24

Sponsor

The first person a refugee is likely to meet on arrival is the sponsor: the person designated to meet the refugee and offer assistance during the initial resettlement period. This unit provides students with language appropriate for use with the sponsor during the period immediately after arrival. Some of the language is appropriate for use when meeting any person.



Purposes

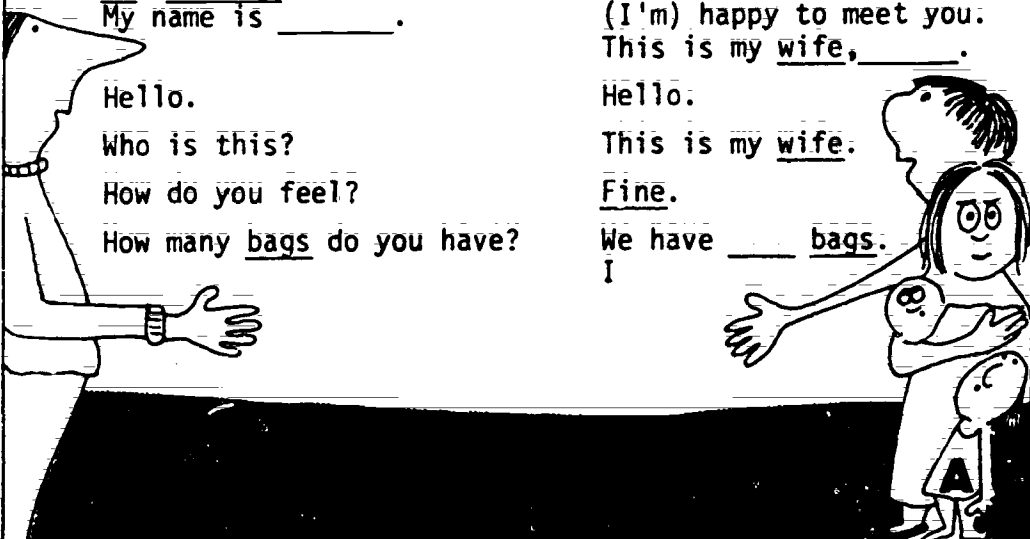
- A**
 - To make family introductions.
 - To indicate one's needs and preference for food and drink.
 - To describe one's luggage and belongings.
 - To describe one's feelings.
- B**
 - To describe the departure from one's homeland.
 - To describe conditions in the refugee camp.
 - To identify means of transport used to leave one's homeland.
 - To give the name of sponsor, teacher and other familiar people.
 - To state the length of one's stay and English study in camp.
- C/D**
 - To describe one's own country.
 - To describe one's experience in a refugee camp (including pre-arrival education and training).
 - To follow the instructions given by refugee agencies.
 - To ask for clarification using partial repetition.
 - To ask someone to spell something.
 - To ask for the meaning or pronunciation of a word.

24 Sponsor

Chunk 1 Make introductions and answer questions about one's baggage

Situation

At the airport



Mr. _____? I'm your sponsor.
My name is _____.

(I'm) happy to meet you.
This is my wife, _____.

Hello.
Hello.

Who is this?
This is my wife.

How do you feel?
Fine.

How many bags do you have?
We have _____ bags.

I _____

How do you feel now?
I feel fine.

B/C/D

Vocabulary

fine
tired
happy
sick
hungry
thirsty

unhappy

OK

afraid

worried

about _____

(b/c/d)

bags
boxes

wife
husband
son
daughter



mother
father

Mr.
Mrs.
Ms.
Miss

Chunk 2 Indicate food and drink preferences and describe experiences

Situation

In the sponsor's car or home

	Did you study English in the camp? Are you hungry? What would you like to drink?	Yes. Yes/No. Coffee.	
How did you get from Laos to ____? How did you leave Laos? How long did it take?		I walked. ____ days. ____ weeks.	
How long were you in the camp? Thailand? did you study English?		About ____ months. ____ years.	
What did you do in the camp?		I studied English.	
What's your country like? Is your country beautiful?		(____) Yes, my country is really beautiful.	
What's the population of your country?		(____).	
What did you grow in your country?		(____).	
Was it difficult to live in the camp?		(____).	
What do you think about ____?		(____).	

Vocabulary

walked
 took a boat
 swim

really
 so
 very

drink
 eat

Laos
 Cambodia
 Vietnam
 (other)

coffee
 tea
 water
 anything

hungry
 thirsty
 tired

studied English
 worked as a ____.
 played ____.
 taught ____.
 was a ____.

24 Sponsor

Chunk 3 Follow instructions

Situation

In the office of a refugee agency



Go to room 505.

Ask for Mr. _____.

Go to the Registration Office.

Take him to the _____.

Take your ID and other papers.

Ask for (the)?

Go to the ...?

Would you say that again
(please)?

How do you pronounce that?

(_____).

Vocabulary

Mr.
Mrs.
Ms.
Miss

Registration Office
Senior Citizen's Office
Refugee Aid Center
_____ office

pronounce
say
spell

Culture

The first person a refugee is likely to meet in the U.S. is the sponsor. In some cases a sponsor is a family member, friend or individual, but often refugees are sponsored by local voluntary agencies or church groups. In such cases a staff member meets the refugee at the airport.

Refugees often have unrealistic expectations of what the sponsor will do. In addition to meeting a refugee, a sponsor will: 1) accompany the refugee to the housing prepared for them; 2) sometimes provide minimal furnishings and household items; 3) orient refugees to their new community and community services; 4) help get a social security card; 5) enroll children in school; 6) be available in case of emergency. The sponsor may in fact do more but is not compelled to.

- The sponsor does not usually give the refugee a job, money, a car or other material help.
- It is common to undergo depression or culture shock after arrival.



Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
A		<u>R e v i e w</u>	
B		<u>R e v i e w</u>	
Options			

24 Sponsor

Reading and Writing

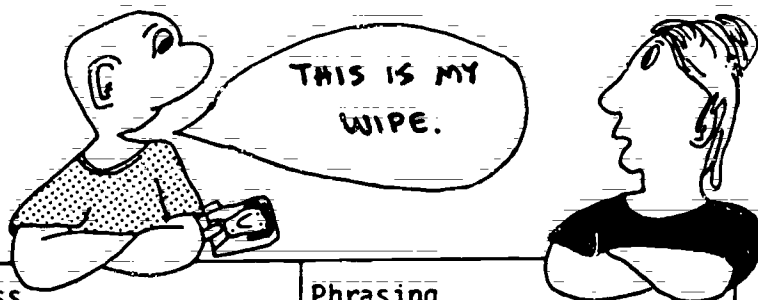
READING	WRITING
<u>Review.</u>	<u>Review.</u> C/D

Grammar

Tag Questions

You	have	a pencil,	don't you?
	don't have		do you?
He	is	Chinese,	isn't he?
	isn't		is he?

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

Day 2

Day 3

Notes

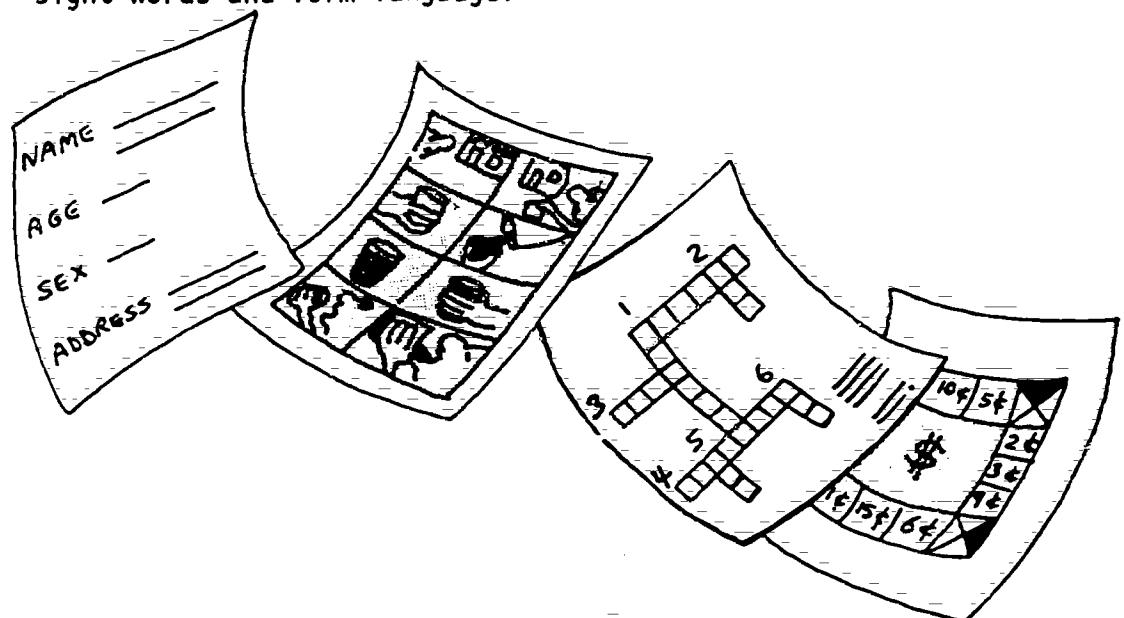
1. Depiction. Have students draw three pictures depicting: 1) their life in their country; 2) their life in the refugee camp; 3) their life (as they envision it) in the U.S. Students prepare a short spiel where they talk about the three pictures. An option is to have students exchange pictures and interpret another person's drawings for the rest of the class.
2. Constructalog. Put a few key words on the blackboard and ask students to work in pairs to make an imaginary dialogue between them and their sponsor. Have students present their dialogues to the rest of the class. At the end of each presentation, ask students to comment on whether the dialogues are appropriate or realistic.
3. Concentration. Play the game with sets of questions and matching answers.

HOW MANY
BAGS
DO YOU
HAVE?

WE HAVE
3 BAGS.

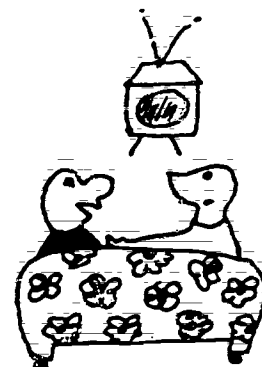


4. Rod Images. For advanced classes, have the students use Cuisenaire rods to construct a symbolic representation of their imagined encounter with their sponsor. Have students explain their construction to the rest of the class. Allow students to express themselves without interrupting or correcting them.
5. Literacy: Review. Use picture stories, crossword puzzles, board games and application forms to review previously learned sight words and form language.



Planning

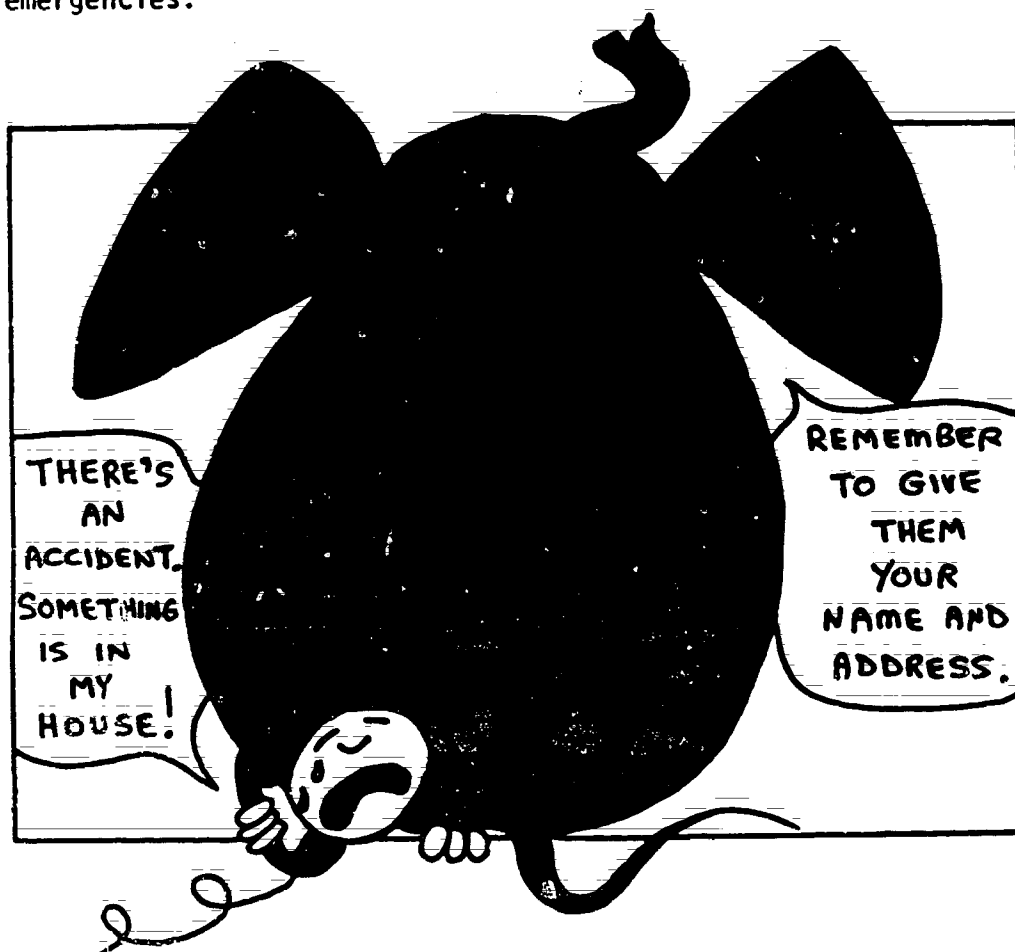
Some refugees are able to establish friendships with their sponsors. It's up to the individuals to decide whether the relationships continue beyond the initial resettlement period.



Unit 25

Emergencies

Everyone needs to have confidence that an emergency situation can be handled well. This is even more important for the person with limited English. This unit gives students the language to deal with four kinds of emergencies.



Purposes

A/B

- To describe emergency needs and situations.
- To give personal information to emergency services.
- To ask for emergency or medical help.
- To narrate an emergency situation and information.
- To identify appropriate emergency services.

C/D

- To describe a person's appearance.
- To ask about the legality of an activity.
- To give clarification in response to basic question words.

25 Emergencies

Chunk 1 State emergency situations and ask for help

Situation

On the telephone

Calling the emergency telephone number (911)

Emergencies.

What's your name and address? ().

Emergencies.

Can I help you?

What's your phone number? ().

Hello. Emergency.

Don't hang up!

We'll help you.

Emergency number.

May I help you?

Just a moment please.

Fire!

Police!

Ambulance!

().

I need an ambulance.

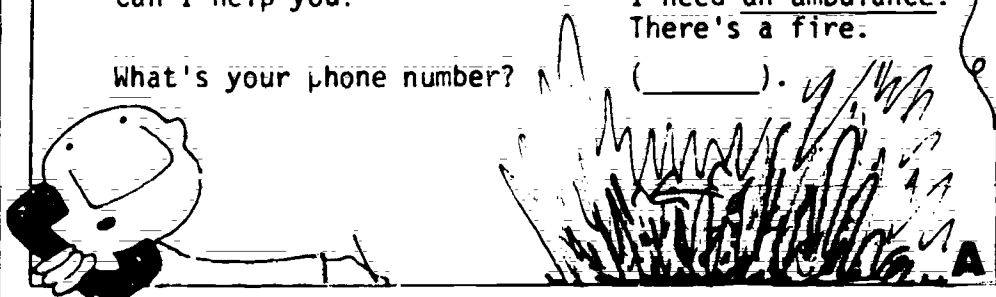
There's a fire.

().

My son drank poison.

I need an ambulance.

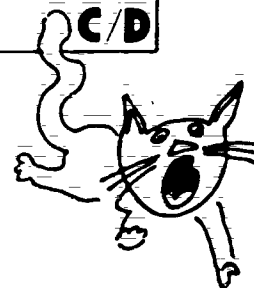
There's a fire at .



A

B

C/D



Vocabulary

son
daughter
wife
husband
child

drank poison
fainted
broke his
broke her
cut

an ambulance
a doctor
the police
help

Chunk 2 Request an ambulance

Situation

On the telephone to the hospital

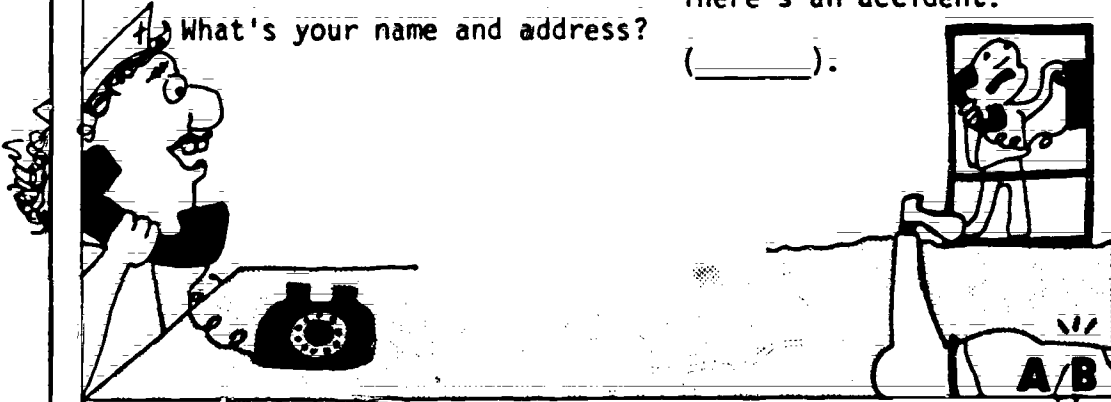
Hospital.

What's the matter?

What's your name and address?

I need an ambulance at _____ St.

Someone is sick.
There's an accident.
(_____).



_____ Hospital.

What's the matter?

What's your name, address and phone number?

I need an ambulance.

There's an accident.
Someone broke his _____.
had a heart attack.

(_____).

C/D

Vocabulary

the matter
wrong

sick
hurt

his
her

St.
Ave.






the problem (b/c/d)

25 Emergencies

Chunk 3 Report a problem to the police

Situation

On the telephone

<p>Police Department.</p> <p>What's the <u>matter</u>?</p>  	<p>Please come to ____.</p> <p>(There's) <u>an accident</u>.</p> <p>...</p> <p>Someone is in my house.</p>    <p style="text-align: right;">A</p>
<p>Police Department.</p> <p>Where are you (now)?</p> <p>We'll be right there.</p>	<p>Please help me.</p> <p>Someone <u>robbed me</u>.</p> <p>I'm at ____.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">B</p>
<p>Police Department.</p> <p>What's the <u>matter</u>?</p> <p>What did <u>he</u> look like?</p> <p>Yes, it's legal.</p> <p>No, it's illegal.</p>	<p>Please send a policeman to ____.</p> <p>Someone <u>robbed me</u>.</p> <p><u>He</u> was <u>tall</u>.</p> <p>Is it legal to ____?</p> <p style="text-align: right;">C/D</p>

Vocabulary

tall
short
fat
thin
young
old
white
black
Asian
Oriental

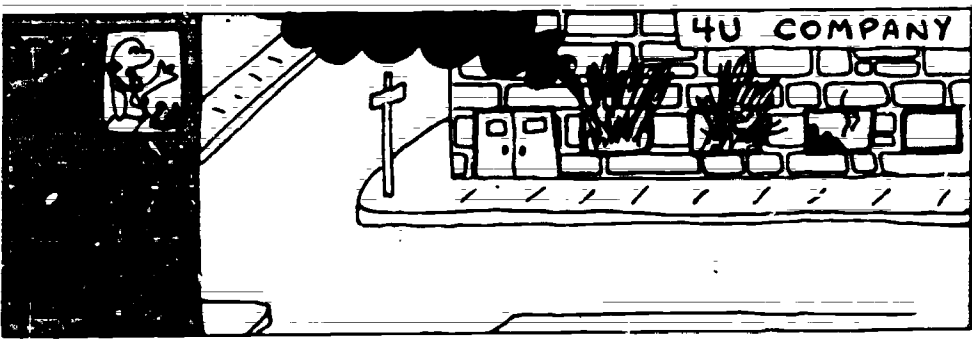
the matter
wrong
the problem (b/c/d)
an accident
a fight
a robbery
he
she

robbed me.
stole my ____.
attacked me.
attacked my wife.
attacked my ____.
is breaking in.]
is following me. (c/d)
is at the door.]

Chunk 4 Report a fire

Situation

On the telephone to the fire department

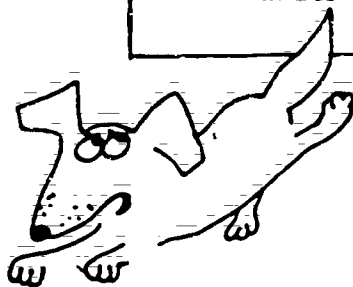


<p>Fire Department.</p> <p>What's your name and address?</p>	<p>There's a fire (at ____).</p> <p>(____).</p>
--	---

B

<p>Fire Department.</p> <p>What's your name, address and phone number?</p> <p>What?</p>	<p>There's a fire (at ____).</p> <p>(____).</p> <p>(____).</p>
---	--

C/D

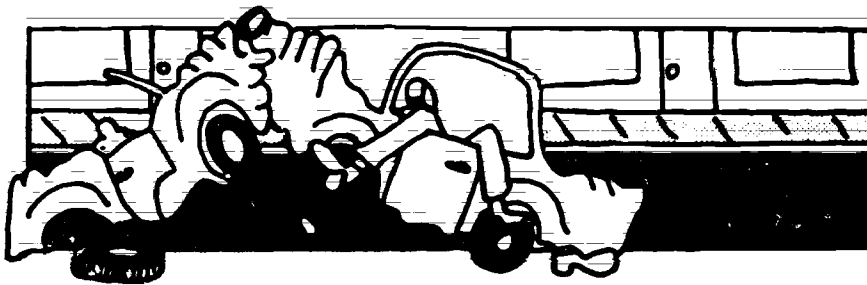


25 Emergencies

Culture

In case of an emergency, it is important to act quickly. Emergency numbers should be kept by the phone at home (AMBULANCE, POLICE, FIRE, POISON CENTER). The numbers can usually be found on the front page of the telephone book. If the telephone book is unavailable, you can always dial "0" for operator or 911. When calling to report an emergency always identify yourself, state your problem, give the location of the emergency and give your telephone number.

- The operator can usually be reached without pay from a pay phone.
- Ask strangers for help in an emergency. Some people don't want to get involved, however, so it may be necessary to ask several people.



Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
A 911 (telephone numbers) e.g. 802-257-7751		AMBULANCE POLICE	(one's telephone number)
B		FIRE Review STREET ST.	
(ordinal numbers) 1st 2nd Options:		EMERGENCY POISON POLICE DEPARTMENT FIRE DEPARTMENT	

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
Use a telephone directory to find the telephone numbers for the Police Department, Fire Department, Poison Center and Ambulance Service.	A brief message given over the telephone -- including name, address and telephone number. C/D

Grammar

Numbers

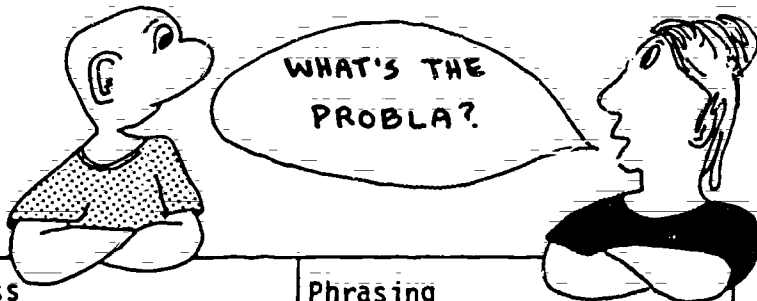
Cardinal/Ordinal

Room six is on the sixth floor.

Three families live on the third floor.

I'm at 15 B St. on the second floor.

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

Day 2

Day 3

25 Emergencies

Notes

1. Emergency Calls. Simulate several emergency calls on the telephone for the exchanges. One student gets an index card with a name, an address, a telephone number and an emergency. The other student records all this information. After the call they compare information.
2. Treatment Categories. Give groups of students several index cards illustrating medical and emergency situations. Students sort the cards into three categories: 1) Emergencies; 2) Treatment at Home; 3) Go to the Doctor. Have the students compare and discuss their results.
3. Concentration. Have students make matching pairs of telephone numbers and play the game.

631-9388

631-9388

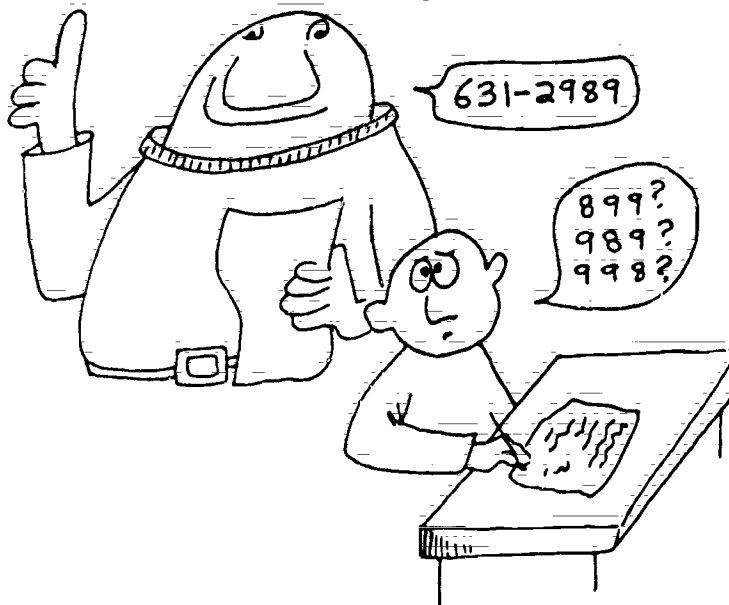


4. Cultural Exploration. Have students describe how emergency situations are dealt with in their countries, and in the U.S. Ask them to discuss similarities and differences. Include the importance of the telephone in the U.S.
5. Literacy: Telephone Numbers. Prepare a worksheet with telephone numbers preceded by area codes. Each telephone number is incomplete. Ex:

6 _ 4 - 3 _ _ 7

- | | |
|---|-----------------------|
| ① | - 09 - 32 - 32 - 2 |
| ② | 8 - 4 - _ - 1 - 323 - |
| ③ | _ - _ - 621 - 89 - 9 |
| ④ | 901 - _ - _ - 545 - |

Dictate the complete telephone number. Students listen and then write in the missing numbers.



Planning

25 Emergencies

Planning

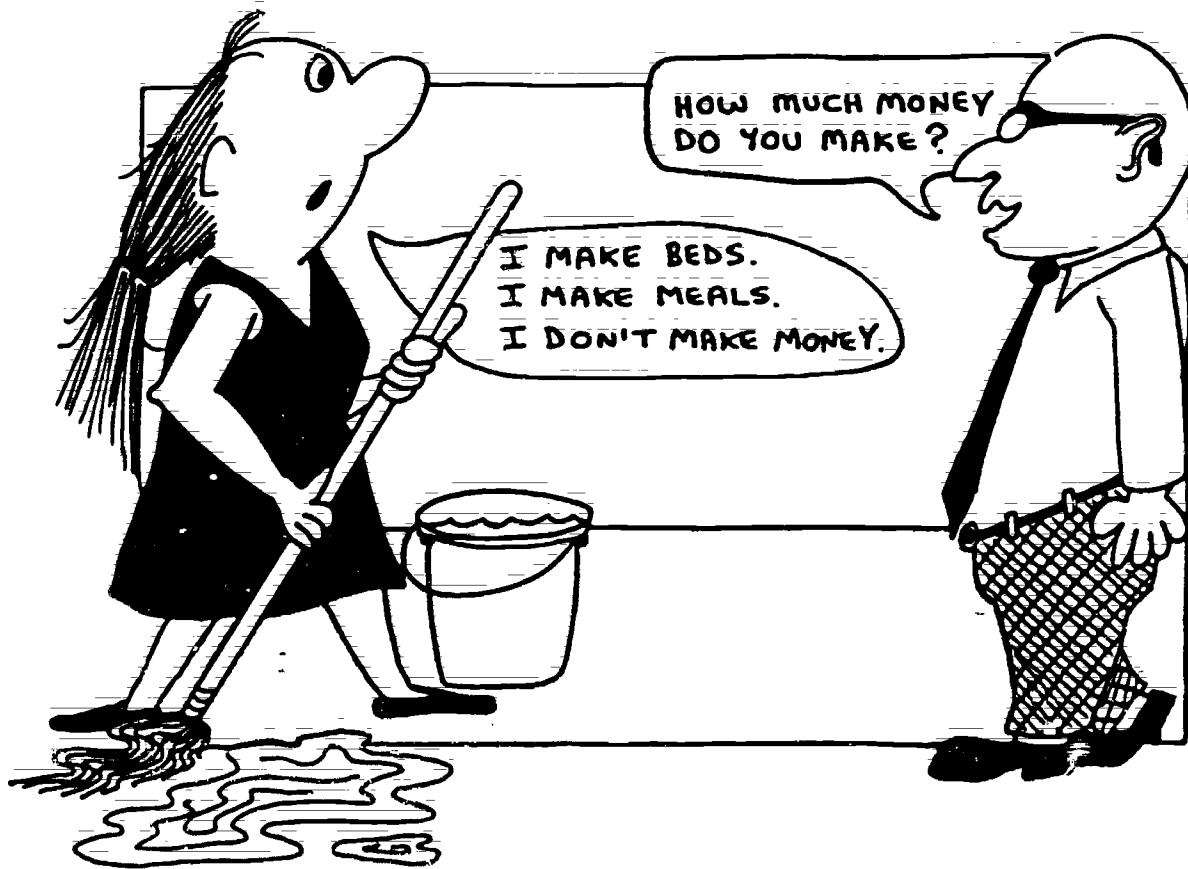


Have your students practice spelling their names and addresses on the phone.

Unit 26

Finance

Making a budget is often necessary to keep track of monthly income and expenses. Even if a formal budget is not made, knowing how much is spent and how much is saved can be helpful to the heads of the household. This unit gives students the language necessary to describe their financial status and future plans.



Purposes

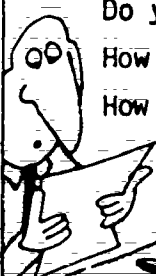

- A** To describe one's current employment situation.
To describe a household budget.
To describe savings, expenditures and income.
- B** To make financial projections.
- C/D** To describe one's income before and after taxes.
To calculate the interest when buying on credit.

26 Finance

Chunk 1 State one's job and income

Situation

In a formal interview
In a bank applying for a loan
In an insurance agent's office

	Do you have a job?	Yes, I'm a _____.
	How much do you make <u>a month</u> ?	I make \$ _____.
	How much do you make?	(I make) \$ _____ a month.
		\$ _____.
		
		A
	How much do you make?	I make \$ _____ a month.
	What's your salary a month?	My salary is \$ _____.
		B
	How much do you make <u>a month</u> <u>before</u> taxes?	(_____).
	What's your income?	(_____).
		C/D

Vocabulary

a month
a week
a day
an hour

before
after

Chunk 2 Describe savings and expenses

Situation

In a formal interview
In a bank applying for a loan
In an insurance agent's office

How much do you spend on electricity?

How much do you spend a month?

Do you pay rent?

What do you spend a month?

Can you afford clothes?

I spend \$ _____ on electricity.

(_____).

\$ _____.

I spend \$ _____.

Yes, I pay \$ _____ a month.

No, I don't pay for it.

I spend \$ _____.

Yes, I can.

No, I can't afford it.

them.

A

How much do you spend on electricity? (_____).

Can you afford to spend _____? No, I don't have enough money.

Yes, I have enough.

How much do you spend a month? (_____).

save a month?

C/D

Vocabulary

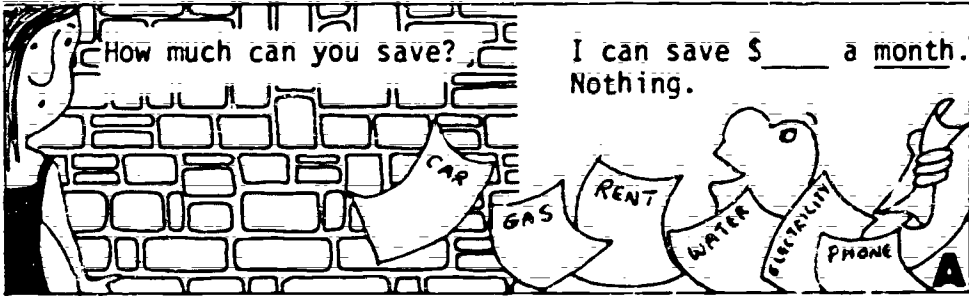
<u>clothes</u>	<u>rent</u>	<u>electricity</u>	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="margin-right: 10px;"> long distance calls the bus entertainment gas </div> } (c/d) </div>
a car	the phone bills	rent	
a house	the doctor bills	the telephone	
furniture	for electricity	food	
a T.V.	for _____.	clothes	
		water	
<u>month</u>	<u>spend</u>		
<u>week</u>	<u>buy</u>		
<u>day</u>			

26 Finance

Chunk 3 Describe savings and future plans

Situation

In a bank applying for a loan

	
How much can you save?	I can save \$ ____ a month. Nothing.
How much do you have left?	I have \$ ____ left.
What would you like to buy?	I'd like to buy a house. B
How much is left?	\$ ____ is left.
What are you saving money for?	(____). C/D

Vocabulary

a house
a car
a T.V.
clothes
furniture

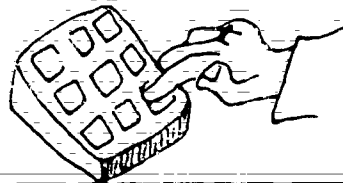
month
week
year

Culture

Paying bills, recording income and expenses is part of American life. This is important for payment of state and federal income tax, but it is also helpful in financial planning. Preparing a household budget is one way to plan on a daily and monthly basis.

One complication is credit cards. It can be easy to spend more money than you actually have. Checks offer another complication. When you write a check but there isn't enough money in the account to cover it, the bank charges you a fee and does not pay money for the check.

- Penalties for non-payment of certain bills can be severe:
 - Non-payment of rent (Result: possible eviction).
 - Non-payment of electricity or water (Result: could be turned off).
 - Non-payment of telephone (Result: it could be removed).
 - Non-payment of card charges (Result: fines and/or cancellation).
- State and federal income tax forms must be filed every year in April. On the forms you list income and (sometimes) expenses.
- Making a large purchase, such as a house or car may require a loan from the bank. Interest will be charged on the money borrowed.
- People with houses and cars must calculate insurance fees when calculating their budgets.



Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
A Review (money)			
B		MONTH WEEK DAY HOUR YEAR	
Options		\$ ____ /MO. \$ ____ /HR. \$ ____ /WK.	

26 Finance

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
The total amount due on monthly bills.	Money orders to pay monthly rent and bills. C
Identify errors on household bills.	Checks to pay monthly rent and bills. Calculate the interest when buying on credit. D

Grammar

Expletive

THERE IS/THERE ARE

There is

There are

a pencil

an eraser

two pencils

three pens

on the table.

Pronunciation



HOW MUCH DO
MAKE BEFORE TAXES
?



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

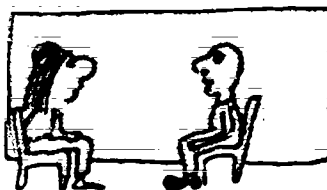
Day 1

Day 2

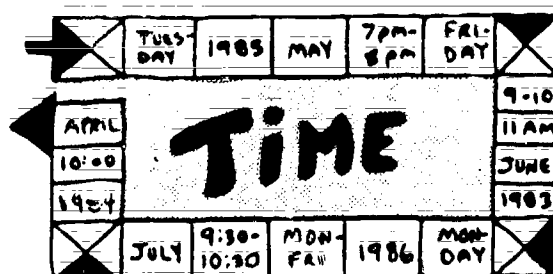
Day 3

Notes

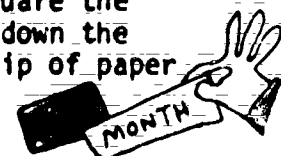
1. Interview Cards. Prepare a set of index cards with information about income and monthly expenses. Students use these cards as cues for responses in an interview simulation. Begin by interviewing students with the rest of the class as observers. Then have the students work in small groups--playing the roles of interviewer and interviewee.



2. Monthly Budget. Divide students into groups. Give each group a budget sheet with the following elements: clothing, electricity, savings, rent, water, food, gas, telephone, transportation (use pictures or symbols if necessary). Give each group a "monthly income" (e.g. \$500). The students decide how to apportion money for the month. Have them put their budgets on large pieces of paper. Post these and have the students compare and discuss them. To vary this exercise, fix the expenses for items (e.g. rent \$250, telephone \$27.50).
3. Paychecks. Give students sample jobs with hourly pay and ask them to subtract taxes (at 20%) to get the income after taxes. For example:
Mike works as a dishwasher. He makes \$4.00 an hour and works full time (40 hrs./week).
How much is his weekly paycheck? His monthly paycheck?
Before taxes? After taxes (subtract 20%)?
Have students work in pairs to solve the problems.
4. Cultural Exploration. Have students describe how they managed their income and expenses in their countries. Have them compare this with what they will need to go in the U.S. Have them explain differences.
5. Literacy: Time Board. Prepare a game board and several slips of paper with the words week, day, hour, month and year.

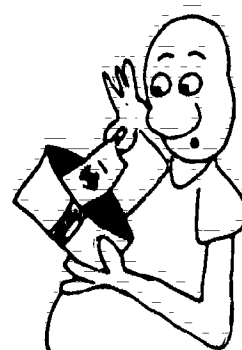


Put students into groups and give each group dice. Students throw the dice and advance along the line to the square indicated by the dice. After reading the square the student puts down the appropriate slip of paper on it. Ex:



The other students in the group can challenge an incorrect match. The winner is the first to reach "APRIL."

Planning

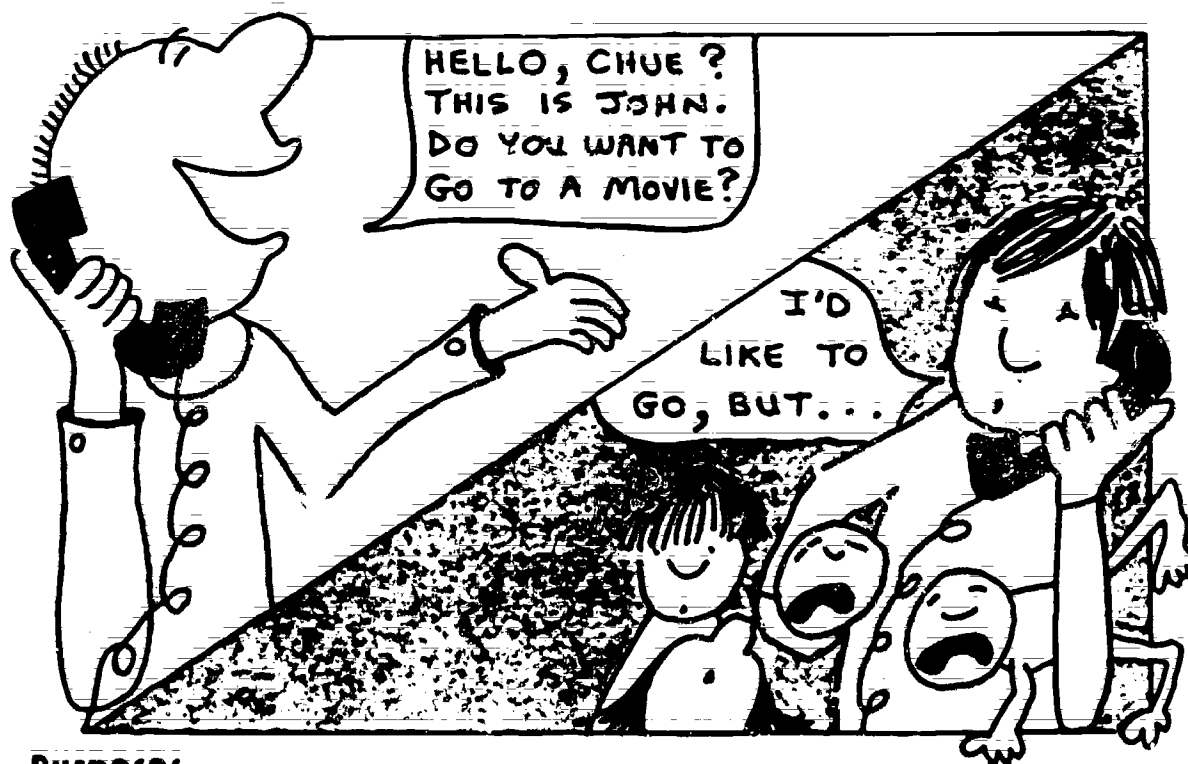


Stress the importance of living within one's income.

Unit 27

Social Life

New arrivals often withdraw to the security of their own homes, families and friends. Adjusting to a new culture can be an overwhelming experience. It is not uncommon to feel isolated and lonely. This unit gives students social language to facilitate some bridge-building with Americans.



Purposes

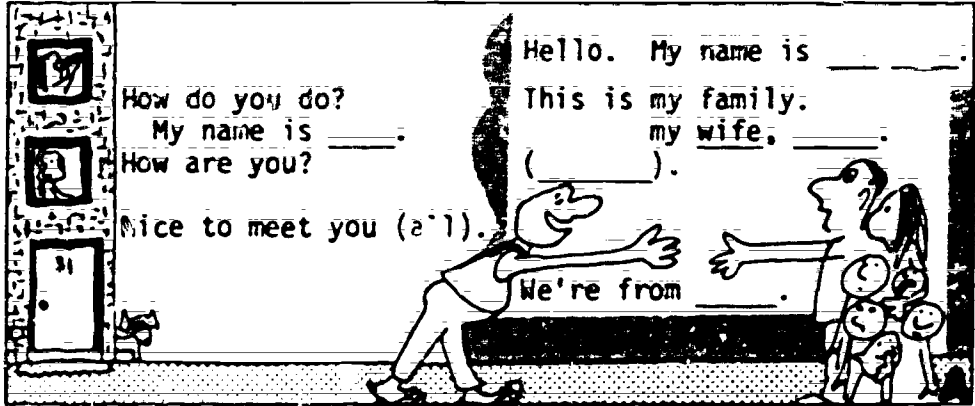
- A**
 - To introduce oneself and one's family.
 - To identify oneself and ask for someone on the phone.
 - To respond to the request to hold (on the telephone).
 - To ask permission to do something.
- B**
 - To make and respond to invitations.
 - To make polite requests and observations in a social context.
- C/D**
 - To describe one's feelings about cultural conflicts.
 - To describe polite and impolite actions.
 - To describe one's own customs.
 - To thank someone using appropriate language.
 - To give and receive compliments.
 - To accept, decline or show uncertainty about invitations.
 - To ask about appropriateness of actions according to customs.

27 Social Life

Chunk 1 Make introductions

Situation

A social occasion in someone's home
in an office



Hello. My name is _____.
This is my family:
my wife, _____.
(_____).

How do you do?
My name is _____.
How are you?
Nice to meet you (a'l).

We're from _____.

Hello. Nice to see again.
How's your wife?
(_____), thank you.

Nice to see you, too.
Very good. And yours?

I'm so happy I met you.
I'm so happy we got to
know each other.

B/C

D

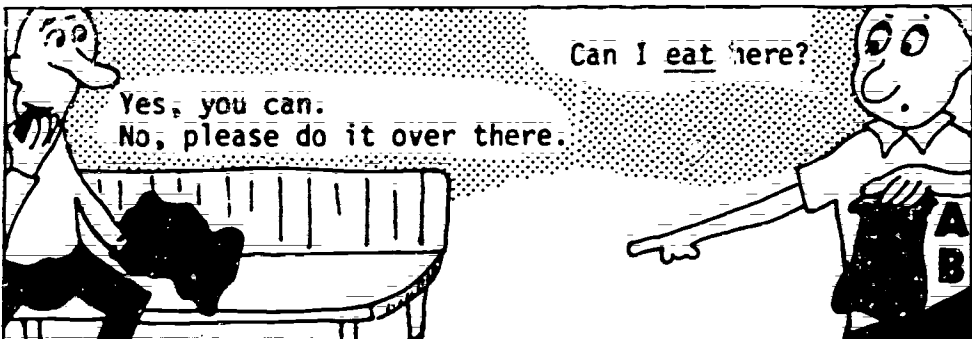
Vocabulary

wife
husband
son
daughter
mother
father
family (b/c/d)
etc.

Chunk 2 Make polite requests and observations

Situation

Almost any occasion



Can I eat here?

Yes, you can.
No, please do it over there.

No, it's not.
It's polite to _____.
It's impolite to spit.

Is it polite to spit?

How do you _____?

It's our custom to _____.
It's not our custom to _____.
We usually (don't) _____.
Traditionally, we _____.

How would you feel if you
found \$500?

I would feel lucky.
I wouldn't care.
I wouldn't worry about it.
It wouldn't be a problem.
It wouldn't matter.
It wouldn't make a difference.
I don't know.

Vocabulary

lucky
unlucky
angry
mad
worried
surprised
interested
confused

depressed
embarrassed
disappointed
strange (d)
offended

spit
smoke
etc.

impolite
not polite
not OK
not all right

polite
OK
all right

eat
sleep
feed my baby
change my baby

you found \$500
(other situations)

27 Social Life

Chunk 3 Make and respond to invitations

Situation

On the telephone to a friend

<p>Hello, _____?</p> <p>Hi. This is _____.</p> <p>Do you want to go to a <u>movie</u>? Yes, thank you.</p> <p>come to my house?</p> <p>Please bring your <u>wife</u>.</p> <p>What are you doing <u>tonight</u>?</p> <p>I don't know. Please hold.</p>	<p>Yes, this is _____.</p> <p>Thanks.</p> <p>See you (soon).</p> <p>(_____).</p> <p>(_____).</p> <p>Hello. Is _____ there?</p>
---	--

Can you _____ tonight?

I can probably go, but _____.
 I probably can't go, but _____.
 I might be able to go, but _____.
 I might not go, because _____.
 Maybe I can go, but _____.

C/D

Vocabulary

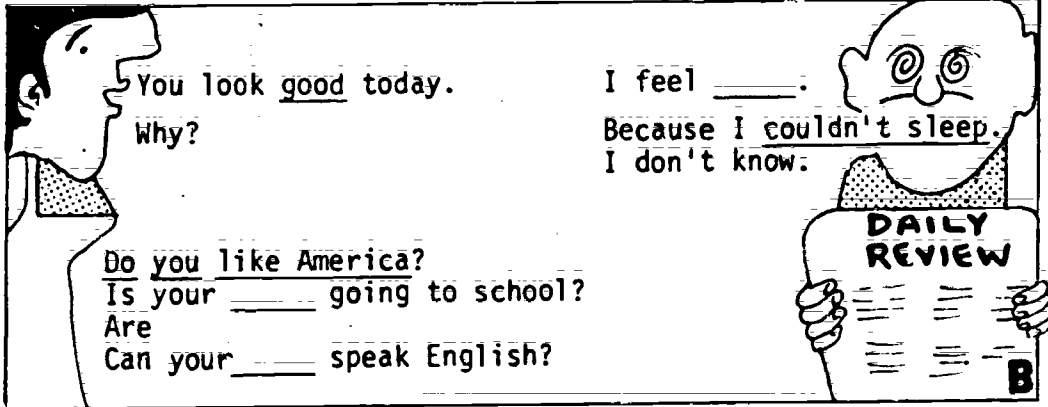
wife
husband
son
daughter
mother
father
family

tonight
tomorrow
on Saturday
on _____
at 8:00
at _____

movie
restaurant
party
disco
barbecue (c/d)
_____ party
 (type)

Situation

Any social occasion



Vocabulary

couldn't sleep.
worried about ____.
miss ____.
always think about
have ____.
don't have ____.

good
nice
pretty
happy
sad
sick
tired

lending
taking
giving

you
your wife
your _____

like America?
want to stay here?
have a job?

<u>driver</u>	<u>drive</u>
<u>cook</u>	<u>cook</u>
<u>swimmer</u>	<u>swim</u>

Do
Does

27 Social Life

Culture

Generally speaking, Americans are informal people. Relationships between co-workers, classmates and neighbors vary from place to place, but for the most part formality is avoided. Still, there are "rules" and expectations.

- Except with very close friends, a social invitation is usually made days or weeks in advance.
- Invitations by phone are usually sufficient except for holiday parties, weddings and special social functions. Written invitations should include the time, place, date, your name and sometimes a note on appropriate dress or special requests.
- It is common to ask others to BYOB (bring your own bottle of alcohol) or to bring a dish of food to a party.
- It is important not to be too late. If an invitation is for 7:00, arrive between 7:00 and 7:15.
- When a man makes an invitation to a woman (a movie, party, dinner), that does not necessarily mean she wants the relationship to go further.
- A woman may extend an invitation to a man.



Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
A Review (time)		Review (days of the week)	
B	R e v i e w		
Options		NO SMOKING NO TRESPASSING DO NOT ENTER KEEP OUT KEEP OFF	

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
A bilingual dictionary to find the meaning of a word (asking for help using it if necessary)	A short note or personal letter (asking for help to correct if necessary). C/D

Grammar

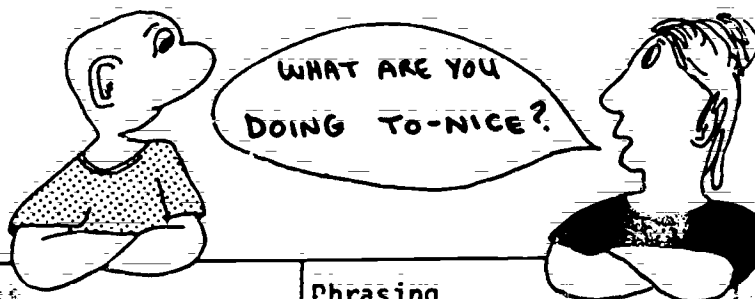
Frequency Adverbs

He

never
sometimes
often
usually
always

eats breakfast at home.

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

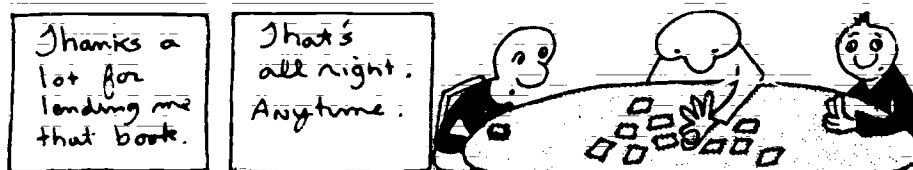
Day 2

Day 3

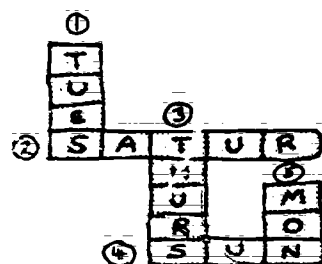
27 Social Life

Notes

1. Concentration. Students make matches between compliments and responses.



2. Characters. Have students use pictures or photographs of persons and make up identities for these "characters." Have them role play encounters between their characters.
3. Complimentary Actions. Have students pantomime different activities (sewing, writing, typing, etc.). The others guess the activity and then compliment the person, who thanks them. Vary this by having students make contrary statements (e.g. "You sew very badly.").
4. Cocktail Party. Prepare identities on index cards. Give students the cards and ask them to assume these identities. Tell them they're at a party and to get to know each other.
5. Language Exploration. Have students brainstorm possible expressions for giving and receiving compliments. Compare and discuss these for appropriateness.
6. Cultural Exploration. Have students describe situations where they would give compliments in their countries. Have them compare these with situations in the U.S.
7. Literacy: Crossword. Prepare a crossword puzzle to review days of the week. Ex:



1. Monday, ? day, Wednesday
2. Friday, ? day, Sunday
3. Wednesday, ? day, Friday
4. Saturday, ? day, Monday
5. Sunday, ? day, Tuesday

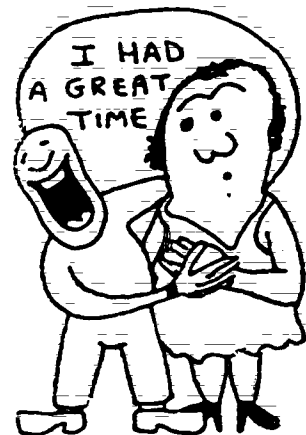
Students work individually reading the clues and completing the puzzle.

Planning

27 Social Life

Planning

Stress the importance of giving and receiving compliments.



Unit 28

Community/Restaurant

Those people who rarely enter a restaurant will, on occasions, buy food in a fast food establishment or use a vending machine. This especially is true of people who work and need to be able to grab a quick bite to eat during a short lunch break. This unit gives students the language necessary to order and pay for food. In addition, students also learn language exchanges that could prove valuable in the community or in the workplace.



Purposes

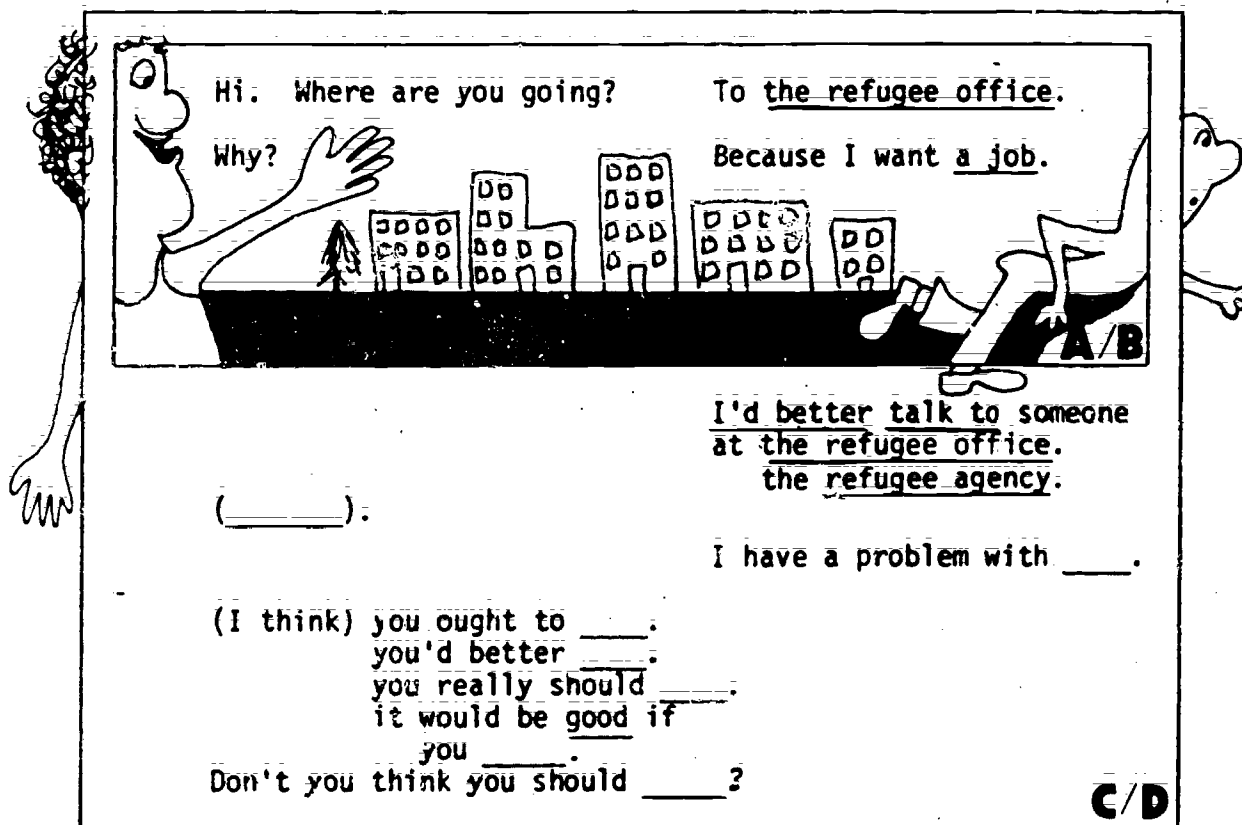
- A**
 - To order and buy fast food items.
 - To describe one's daily activities.
 - To identify community services.
- B**
 - To ask for help using a vending machine.
 - To follow on-the-job instructions.
 - To ask for on-the-job help.
 - To introduce oneself to a co-worker.
- C**
 - To indicate the need for help resolving problems.
 - To state the appropriate agency or service for solving problems.
 - To give advice.
 - To ask about and identify co-workers.
 - To engage in small talk (interests, background, plans).
 - To order food in a restaurant.
- D**
 - To read names of coins on coin-operated machines.
 - To report and explain problems using a vending machine.

28 Community/Restaurant

Chunk 1 Name appropriate community service for help in solving problems

Situation

At home or in school
On the street
In the workplace



Hi. Where are you going? To the refugee office.

Why? Because I want a job.

I'd better talk to someone at the refugee office.
the refugee agency.

().

I have a problem with .

(I think) you ought to .
you'd better .
you really should .
it would be good if .
you .

Don't you think you should ?

C/D

Vocabulary

the refugee office
the employment office
the office
school
church

refugee agency
state employment agency
senior citizens center (c/d)
adult school
church group

talk to
see
call
go to

a job.
to study.
to see .

I'd better
I ought to

good
better
best

Chunk 2 Purchase food from a vending machine and a fast-food restaurant

Situation

In a restaurant or cafeteria
In a school, office or the workplace



Yes?
Anything else?
That's \$ ____.

I want a hamburger (s).
No, thanks.

Can you help me?
What's the matter?
How do you work this?
This doesn't work.
Push the button.
Turn it to the right.
left.
Thanks.
You're welcome.

I'd like a hamburger (s).
(____).

A
B
C/D

Vocabulary

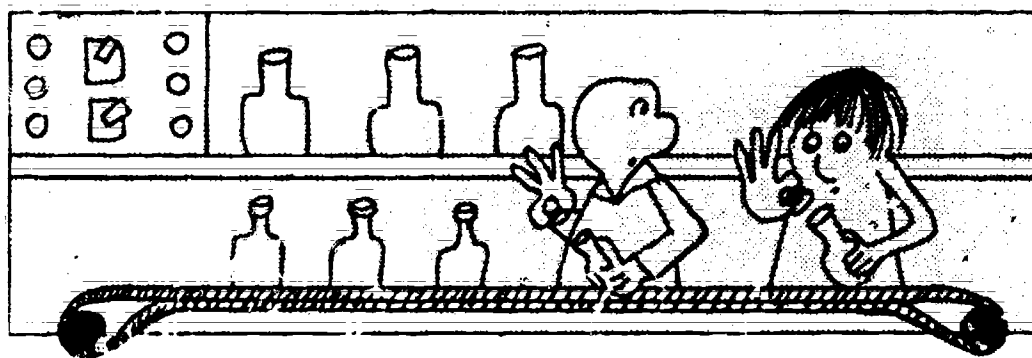
hamburger	cheeseburger	a
fish sandwich(es)	ham and cheese sandwich	one
french fries	small coke / coffee	two
salad	medium coke / coffee	three
coke	large coke / coffee (d)	some (d)
tea	cup of ____	
coffee	vanilla shake	
	chocolate shake	
	strawberry milkshake	

28 Community/Restaurant

Chunk 3 Respond to questions from co-workers

Situation

In the workplace



Are you new? Yes. My name is _____.

Are you Chinese? Yes, I am.
No, I'm _____.
No, I'm from _____.

How long have you wor'ed here? For _____ days.
Since Tuesday.

Happy to meet you. Happy to meet you too.
My name is _____.

B/C

Do you have a family? (_____).

What are your hobbies? I like to _____.

What are you doing on the weekend? (_____).

(_____). Who's that man with the red shirt and beard?

D

Vocabulary

Chinese

Japanese

Vietnamese

(other)

man

woman

guy

days

months

weeks

nights

beard

(other)

red

(other)

Tuesday

(any day)

(any month)

last week

month

Culture

Many Americans are ignorant of the variety of nationalities in Asia, Africa and Latin America. Hmong, Khmer, Lao, or Vietnamese are often surprised when someone asks, "Are you Chinese?" or says, "Give it to the Chinese guy over there." Americans often cite their ethnic background (Italian-American, Chicano, Portuguese-American, etc.) when referring to themselves. Refugees can also take pride in their backgrounds.

Americans often eat in fast food restaurants or from vending machines. The food is already prepared and can be ordered and eaten quickly. In a fast food restaurant, ordering is done at a counter often after standing in line. With a vending machine, "ordering" is done by inserting a coin and pushing a button. In a regular restaurant, food is ordered while seated at a table.

- It's customary to leave a tip in a regular restaurant of about 15%. There is no tipping in fast food restaurants.
- Many Americans resent people smoking near them when they are eating.
- If money is lost in vending machines, it can often be returned by finding the person in charge.



Literacy

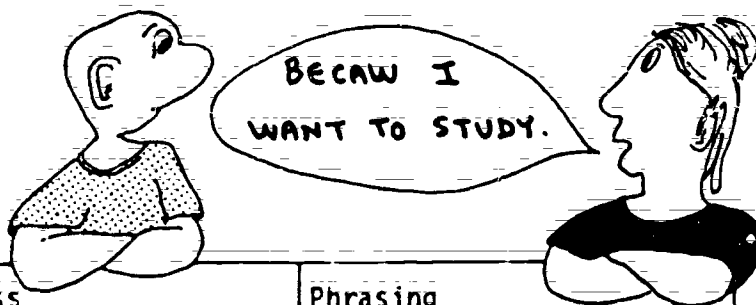
READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
A Review (money)		SCHOOL	
B		OFFICE OUT OF ORDER	
Options		COFFEE TEA PUSH PULL (names of coins)	

28 Community/Restaurant

Grammar

Modal	I	must	go.
Obligation		have to	work.
MUST/HAVE TO			wait.

Pronunciation

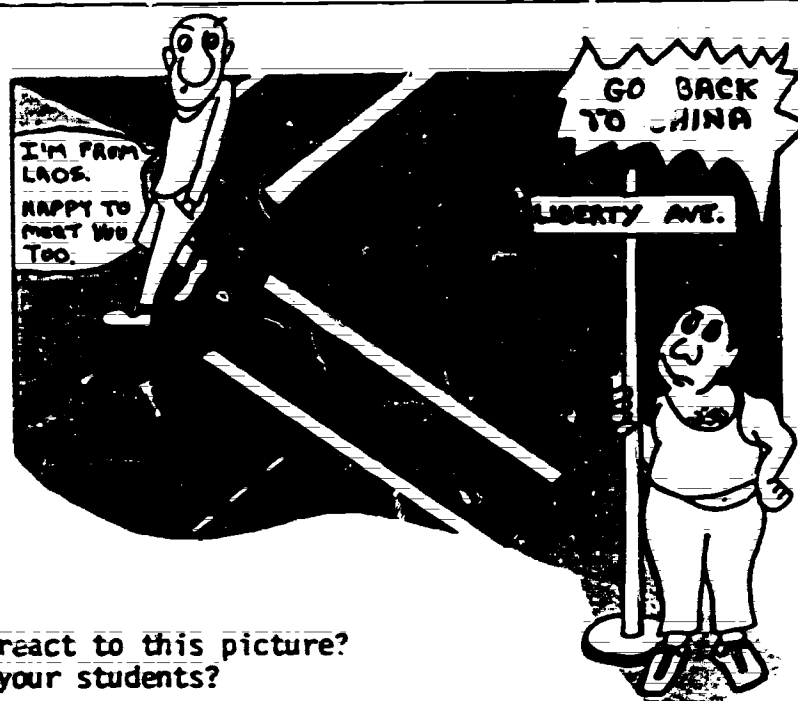


Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

Day 2

Day 3



How do you react to this picture?
What about your students?

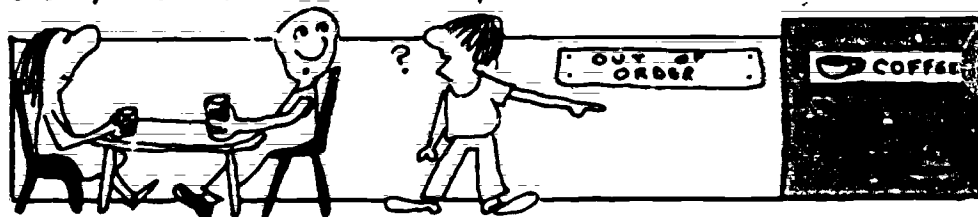
Notes

1. **Advisor.** On index cards, prepare a series of situations describing a person with a problem or conflict. Put the students in small groups and give each group a card. The group decides what advice to give the person, using the appropriate expressions.

Samples: Your friend's wife stay home all day and is not learning English.
I think she ought to _____.

As a follow-up, have students make up situation cards for the advice of the others.

2. **Vending Machine.** On a large piece of poster board, draw the front of a vending machine with the coin slots and controls. Have the students mime the procedures for operating the machine (when the machine works, it dispenses a piece of chalk). Students ask for help when the machine does not work.



3. **Getting Help.** Write the names of community service agencies on the blackboard. Elicit from the students the purpose of each agency. Then read aloud a series of difficulties and have the students decide which agency to go to.

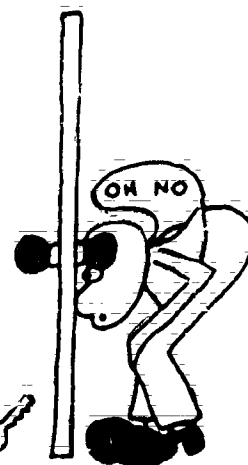
Samples: You can't find a place to live.
Your grandmother is alone all day.


4. **Cultural Exploration:** Look at the illustration opposite. Role play a similar negative encounter with an American. Have students observe the situation, suggest reasons why that particular American might be hostile and discuss appropriate responses.
5. **Literacy: What's Missing?** Write rows of words on a worksheet. Leave out part of some letters. Give the worksheets to the students and have them fill in the missing parts.
Ex:

oul	out	cut	ou-
senool	schocl	schcoi	
ofrice	office	office	
order	oroer	oidei	

28 Community/Restaurant

Planning

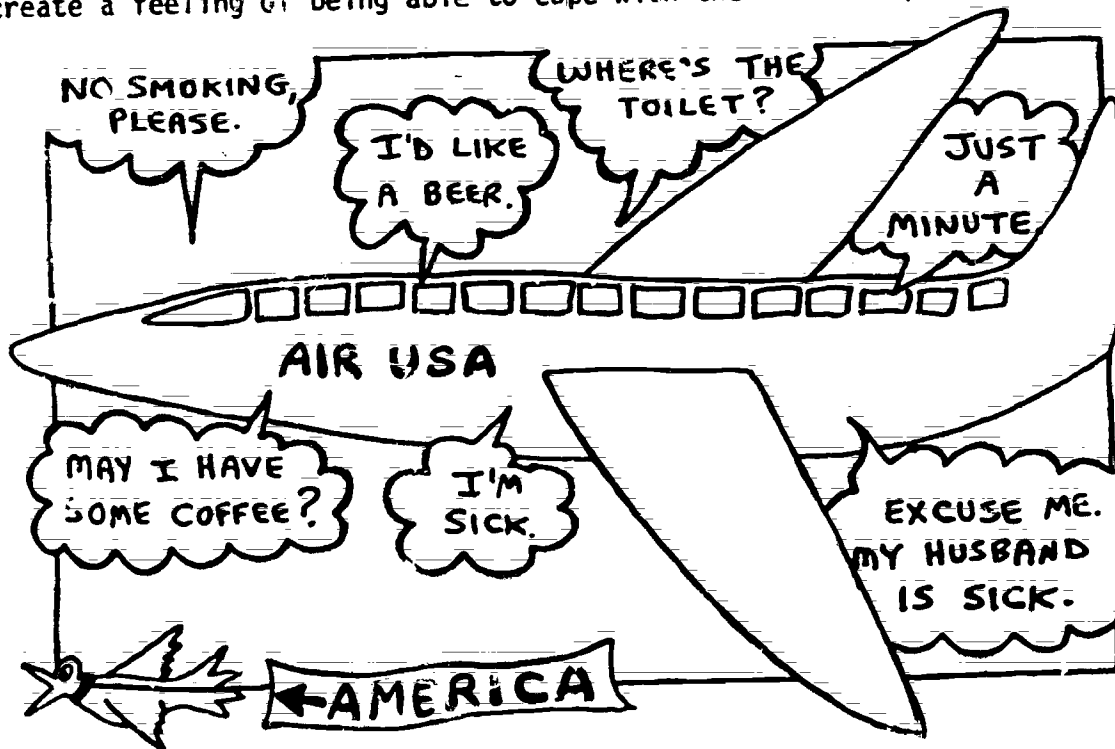


Help your students understand the importance of taking the initiative in trying to solve their own problems. 

Unit 29

Departure

Stepping on the plane for the journey is a person's first real contact with the new culture. There are instructions to be followed, requests to be made and in some cases, help is required. The person may feel many emotions at the time of departure - worry, confusion, sadness, joy. This unit gives students exposure to likely airplane situations so as to create a feeling of being able to cope with the first step of the journey.



Purposes

- A**
 - To respond to instructions given in airplanes.
 - To indicate one's food and drink preferences.
 - To ask for information about airplane facilities.
 - To ask for help for oneself, family members or others.
- B**
 - To respond to and ask questions about one's own and others' times of departure and arrival.
- C/D**
 - To describe flight information.
 - To describe one's feelings about learning.
 - To understand flight announcements.
 - To make requests during a flight.

29 Departure

Chunk 1 Ask and answer questions prior to travel.

Situation

In the departure hall of an airport preparing to board a flight



What time do we leave?

(_____).

Please have your papers ready.

What are you taking (to America)? I'm taking my _____.

Are you taking your _____? Yes/No.

B

Are you taking your _____ with you? (_____).

What did you forget?

I forgot my _____.

I didn't forget anything.

How do you feel about learning? I feel happy.

What time is your flight? (_____).

What time does your flight leave?

this flight leave?

arrive?

What gate does flight # _____
leave from?

It leaves from gate _____.

Your flight is delayed.

When will it leave?

At _____.

C/D

Vocabulary

happy
worried
confused
afraid
excited
glad
lucky

your
some
a
papers
identification
ID's


(to America)
with you
leave
arrive

we
you

Chunk 2 Follow instructions and make requests for help, food or drink

Situation

On the airplane



Fasten your seatbelts.
No smoking.
Sit down please.
Return to your seats.

Over there.
In the front.

What would you like to
drink?
(_____):

Sure. Just a minute.

Where's the toilet?

Excuse me.
I'm sick.

I'd like coffee.

Excuse me.
May I have some coffee
a blanket?
something
to eat?

A

Please put your seat up.
We're going to land.

Please put up your trays.

Excuse me.
Can you help me?
My husband is sick.
I'm _____.

B

How long does this flight
take?

(_____):

C

Vocabulary

my husband
my wife
my son
my daughter
my friend

this woman
this boy
this girl
this man

blanket
pillow
diaper

coffee
tea
water
coke
milk

I'm
He's
She's

up
down

front
back
middle

2 Departure

Culture

At the airport, it's common for people to double check their departure information:

What time is the flight?

What gate?

What did I forget?

People do this even when they know the departure is proceeding smoothly. It's a good idea to periodically recheck the departure information for last minute changes in flight times, boarding times or cancellations.

Flight attendants may be male or female. They serve meals and also try and satisfy legitimate requests of the travellers. Non-alcoholic and alcoholic beverages are served, but there's often a charge for alcohol. Magazines, newspapers, games and playing cards are often available on request. During long flights, there is usually a movie and you may pay for the use of the headset to listen to it.

- Flight attendants are not doctors. They will see to your comfort on the flight but they don't dispense drugs.
- Obey the no smoking sign and NEVER smoke in the toilets. This is extremely dangerous.

Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
A (flight number) e.g. NW 207 own flight number own gate number own seat number (gate number) e.g. 26 (seat number) e.g. 4J		FASTEN YOUR SEATBELT NO SMOKING TOILET	
B Review (time)		OCCUPIED VACANT	
Options		LOCK OPEN THROW PAPER HERE GATE SEAT NUMBER FLIGHT NUMBER GATE NUMBER	

Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
Arrival/departure information board in an airport.	C/D

Grammar

Comparative/Superlative
Adjectives

You are

taller
shorter
older

than

me.
him.
her.

You are

the tallest.
the oldest.
the shortest.

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

Day 2

Day 3

29 Departure

Notes

1. Memory Chain. The first student says, "I'm going to America and I'm taking my notebook." The second student repeats the whole statement and adds another item. Repeat the procedure until all students have added an item.
2. Flight Schedule. Prepare a schedule with destinations, flight numbers, departure times and gate numbers.

FLIGHT:	TO:	TIME:	GATE:
ST 14	SALINAS	2:00	15
VW 311	OAKLAND	2:08	23
BC 109	KINGSTON	2:30	6
PU 23	BRATTLEBORO	2:35	30
IM 36	PROVIDENCE	3:10	2

Have students identify the elements and ask and answer questions about the information.

3. Simulation. Arrange the classroom furniture to resemble the passenger cabin in an airplane. Play the role of flight attendant in the beginning. Prepare boarding passes and number the chairs in the classroom. As a variation, give students "task" cards, which direct them to do certain actions (e.g. sit in the wrong seat, get sick, ask for coffee).
4. Tickets. Prepare sample plane tickets. Give one student a ticket and have the rest of the class ask questions to get the information on the ticket. Put the students in pairs, each student with a ticket. They ask and answer questions and pass their tickets to the next group and repeat the procedure.
5. Find the Problem. Make a picture on large poster board showing the inside of a plane. Keep it simple. An option is to draw a series of pictures on separate cards. Show one person doing each of the following:



- Smoking
- Standing in the aisle
- Sitting in a reclining position
- Sitting without a seat belt
- Urge's to get into a toilet because it's occupied

Have the students find the problems. Vary this by putting the drawings on individual student worksheets. Students circle the drawings indicating problems.

Planning

Departure

Packing

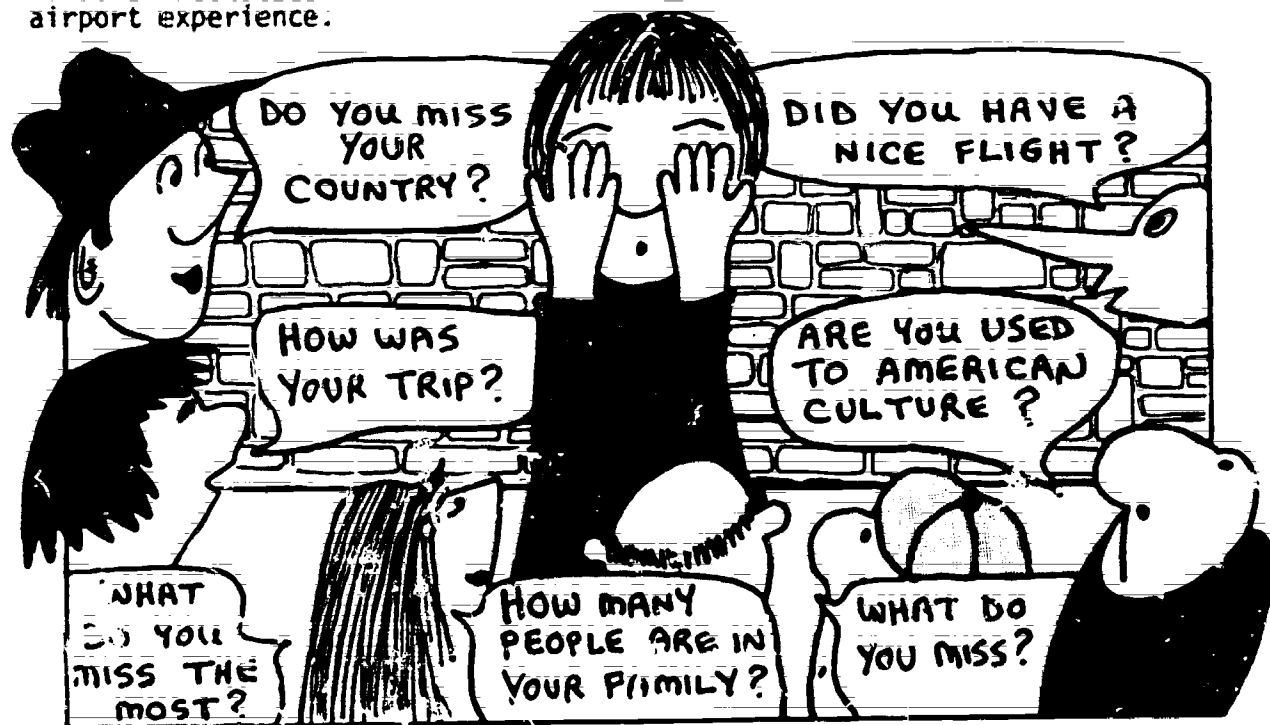


Remind students that flight attendants are there to help but they are not doctors and don't dispense medicine.

Unit 30

Arrival

On arrival at the airport, everyone goes through immigration, baggage claim and customs formalities. At each stage there are directions to be followed and questions to be answered. And sometimes there is a need to ask for help. This unit gives students the language necessary for the airport experience.



Purposes

A

- To ask for help when lost.
- To follow instructions given in airports.
- To answer personal information questions.

B

- To ask for help in finding belongings and family members.
- To describe one's family group.
- To narrate a need for help or assistance.

C, D

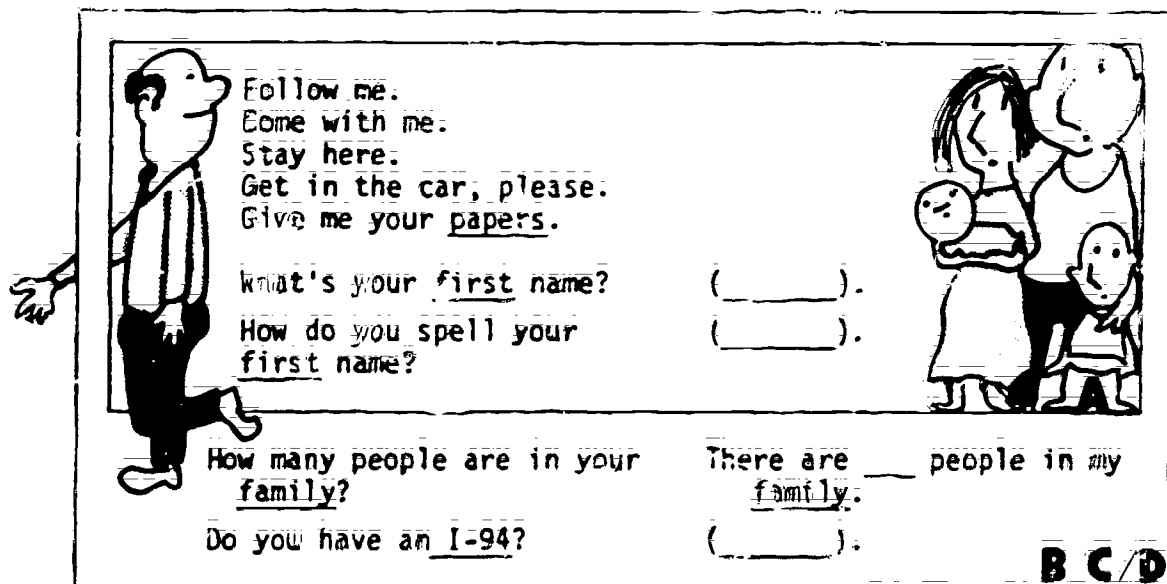
- To describe a flight.
- To describe one's feelings on arrival.
- To describe one's needs on arrival.
- To compare one's own customs with American customs.

30 Arrival

Chunk 1 Follow instructions and answer questions

Situation

At an immigration control counter in the airport
after arrival.



Follow me.
Come with me.
Stay here.
Get in the car, please.
Give me your papers.

What's your first name? ().
How do you spell your first name? ().

How many people are in your family? There are ____ people in my family.
Do you have an I-94? ().

B C D

Vocabulary

I-94
Alien Registration Card
Form

family
group

first
Last
middle

papers
form
identification

Chunk 2 Get help locating baggage, papers, facilities, family or sponsor

Situation

In the baggage claim area of the airport

Is this your suitcase?

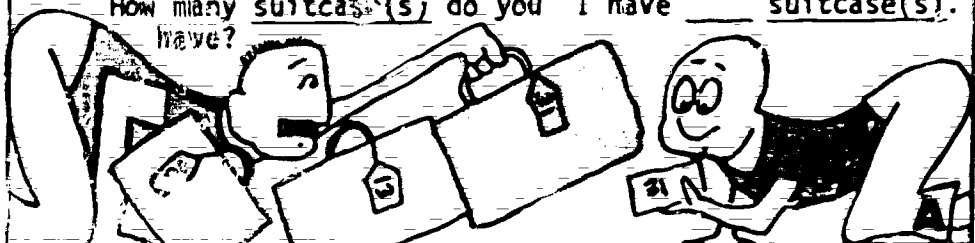
Which suitcase is yours?

How many suitcase(s) do you have?

Yes, this is my ____.

This is mine.

I have ____ suitcase(s).



Don't worry.
I'll help you.

I'll show you.

I can't find my suitcase(s).
papers.

Where can I find the bathroom?

B

Do you need help with anything? (____):

C/D

Vocabulary

I'll show you
up there/down there
over there
upstairs
downstairs

the bathroom
something to eat
drink

a telephone
the restaurant

mine/yours
hers
his

suitcase
bag
box

papers
child
sponsor
(other relations)

30 Arrival

Chunk 3 State name, destination and problem and respond to questions about flight and feelings

Situation

In the airport
On a city street
In a bus or train station



Excuse me.
I don't speak English
very well.
My name is _____.
I'm going to _____.
Can you help me?

Excuse me.
I'm lost.
My name is _____.
Here are my papers.
I speak a little English.
Can you help me?

(_____).

Did you have a nice flight? (_____).

How was your trip? (_____).

Do you miss your country? (_____).

What do you miss the most? (_____).

Are you used to American culture?
customs?

Welcome to America.

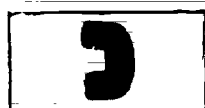
Welcome to The U.S.

Thank you.

C/D

Culture

On arrival at an airport after an overseas flight, Americans usually follow signs and occasional oral instructions ("That door, please," "To your left, please."). Signs direct passengers to immigration or passport control, the baggage claim area and baggage inspection (customs). Signs further direct passengers to toilets, coffee shops, telephones, taxis, information, etc. Many signs are actually symbols so that non-native English speakers can understand them. For example, telephones might be:



and information could be:

- Missing or damaged luggage should be reported before leaving the baggage claim area.
- In some airports, bags cannot be taken out of the claim area unless the baggage claim ticket is produced and it matches the one on the bag.
- Hazardous substances, "strange" herbs and medicines, fruits and vegetables, seeds, and certain banned goods may be removed from luggage by customs officials. Illegal items such as drugs or weapons will result in arrest.

Literacy

READING			WRITING
Numbers/Time	Letters	Sight Words/Signs	
(baggage tags)	Review (spell one's)	Review TOILET	
A		(airport symbols for) MEN WOMEN INFORMATION FOOD, DRINK TELEPHONE LOST BAGGAGE	
B		BUS (STOP) TAXI EXIT	
Options			





Reading and Writing

READING	WRITING
Procedural signs. Ex: BAGGAGE CLAIM, GATE, TICKETS.	C/D

Grammar

Possessive Pronouns

That is

That's

mine.

yours.

his.

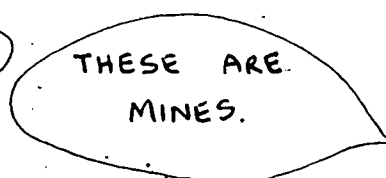
hers.

ours.

yours.

theirs.

Pronunciation



Vowels	Stress	Phrasing
Consonants	Rhythm	Intonation

Day 1

Day 2

Day 3

Notes

1. Action Sequence. Give the students commands to carry out actions. Vary this by having the students give each other directives. Ask them to give the directives in different ways -- using different expressions and also non-verbal cues. Afterwards, ask the students to discuss the different ways of giving commands.

2. Open-Ended Story. Present the following situations as stories:

- the refugee arrives but there's no sponsor waiting.
- the refugee telephones the sponsor.
- the refugee can't find his/her bag at the airport.
- the refugee is lost.

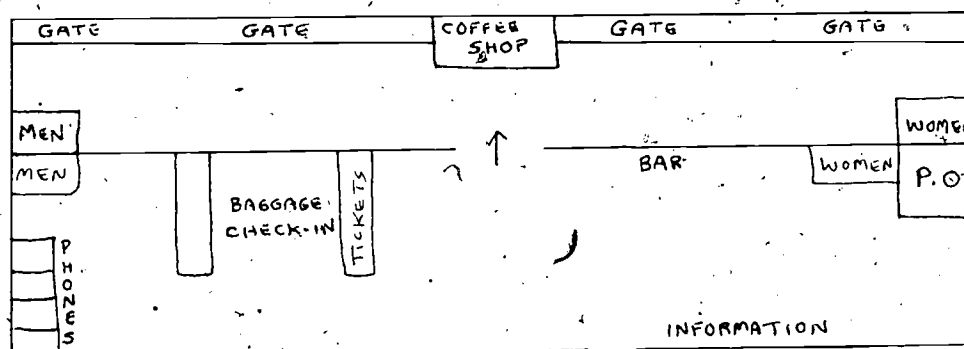
In each case, act out the situation and ask the students to provide possible solutions. Vary this by having the students act out the problem and the solutions. Give advanced students the open-ended stories in writing.

3. Literacy: Baggage Claim. Distribute paper bags to each student and ask them to put one or two personal possessions in it. Have them check their bags at the "airport counter." Staple a baggage claim number to the bag and give the student a card with same number. Afterwards, students find their bags by matching baggage claim numbers. Vary this by "losing" a student's bag.

4. Literacy: Airport Terminal. On poster board, make a floor plan of the arrival or departure hall of an airport. The sections of the hall are labelled with symbols, e.g.:



Students match symbol cards or word cards to the appropriate spots on the floor plan. Vary this by giving students a series of tasks to carry out, e.g. "Go to the men's room. Go to the ticket counter and then go through customs."



Planning

WELCOME TO THE UNITED STATES.



Learning and Teaching

All teachers must make choices. Your choices about teaching can affect your students' learning.

Why do you do the things that you do in the classroom? Why do you choose to do one thing instead of another? What are your reasons, your criteria? The purpose of this section of the handbook is to challenge you to look closely at what you do in the classroom--and to define or affirm why you do it.

This section is based on the following principles:

- You are responsible for the kind of teacher you choose to become.
- The kind of teacher you become is a result of choices that you make.
- The more conscious and clear the criteria for your choices are, the more purposeful and effective your teaching can become.

It is about developing criteria, defining reasons for your choices. The closer your reasons are to truths about learning, the more effective your teaching can be. You have to find these truths, these principles of learning, for yourself. As all teachers must do.

Accordingly, one person's examination of learning and teaching is presented in the following pages. You are not asked to accept or agree with this point of view. You are rather invited to use it to arrive at your own set of criteria. To help you with this, there are questions in the text which challenge you to state what is true for you.

Scholars and experts disagree on what learning is and how people learn. No one has yet come up with a universally accepted theory of learning. There is no definitive answer. Like all teachers, you must find your own answers. It is your job to sift through the work that you and others have done. With a critical eye, you then have to determine and yield to what is true.

Learning and Teaching

WHAT IS LEARNING?

Learning is a common, everyday occurrence. It goes on around you all the time. People you know, people you don't know--you yourself--are actively involved in some kind of learning. If, in fact, you are learning all the time, what can you say about it? What is learning?

Think about your own experiences and study. Consider these principles of learning:

- Learning is acquiring knowledge.
- Learning is a process of trial and error.
- Learning is the same process for everyone.
- Learning requires a teacher.
- Learning is memorization.

Which of these principles is true for you?
Why?

Riding a bicycle is a common everyday occurrence, something that nearly everyone has learned to do. Think back on your own experience of learning to ride a bicycle. Compare this with the description of learning that follows to define principles of learning that are true for you.

ELEMENTS OF LEARNING

The first step is to define the subject matter, in this case, learning. The simple equation below shows you the elements of learning that you need to consider.



You

+



bicycle



+

time

=



riding a bicycle

Written differently, this equation consists of four key elements:

PERSON

+

SUBJECT MATTER

+

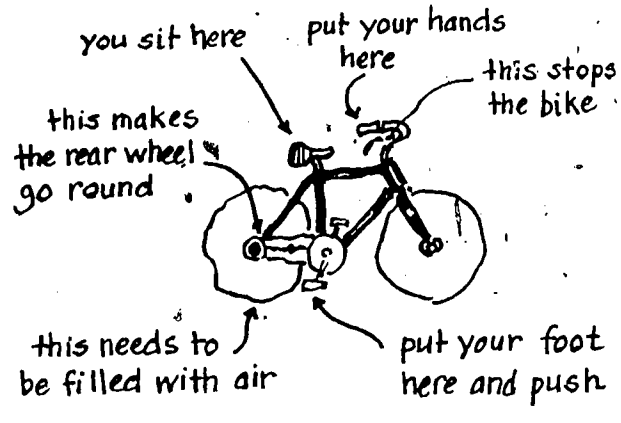
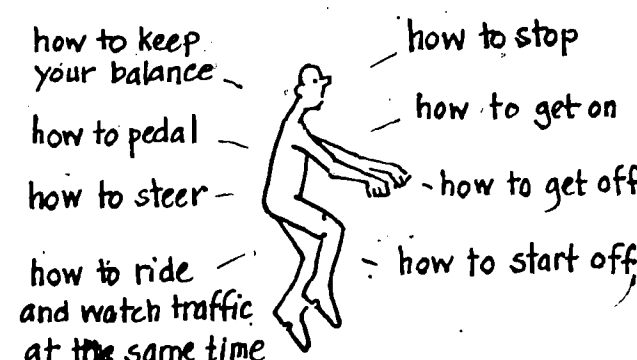
PROCESS

=

RESULT

Learning and Teaching

SUBJECT MATTER: What are you learning?

A	<p>KNOWLEDGE</p> <p>"knowing about"</p> <p>facts</p> <p>information</p>	
B	<p>SKILLS</p> <p>"knowing how"</p> <p>abilities</p> <p>performance</p>	

RESULT: How do you know you have learned?

You answer by your riding--what you know and what you can do. This is demonstrated by your not falling down, your successful starting, stopping, turning, your controlling of the bicycle in different situations.

You do not have to actively think about riding the bicycle. This has become automatic, like a habit. For this reason, you are able to get on your bicycle, set off for a destination, travel the distance and successfully arrive--with your mind on something else! Yet during this time, you made many important decisions: when to slow down, when to go faster, to stop, to turn.

You decided when you had learned enough. You decided not to become a professional racer or a trick cyclist with the circus.

What you know.

What you can do.

It's automatic.

It's a habit.

You don't think about it.

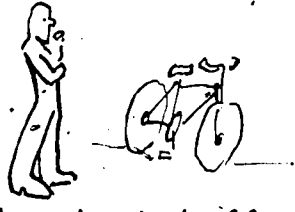
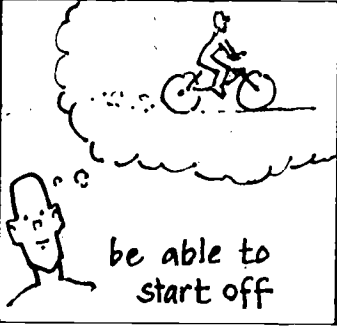
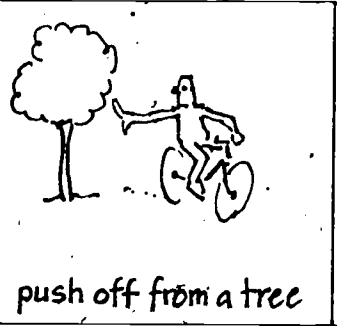

You can do it in different situations.

You decide.

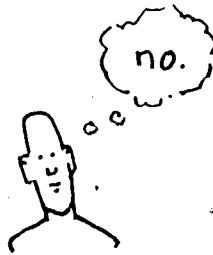
Does this make sense to you?
Why? Why not?

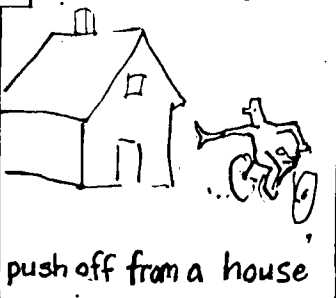
Learning and Teaching

THE PROCESS: How do you learn?

<p>1. SET THE TASK</p> <p>Decide what you need - to be able to do - to know.</p> <p>Break the subject matter down into "parts"</p>	 <p>how to start off</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - how the brakes work - how the pedals work - how to get on - how to start off - how to turn
<p>2. SET OBJECTIVES</p> <p>Decide what you hope to achieve</p>	 <p>be able to start off</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - know about how the pedals and brakes work - know how to get on start off stop
<p>3. USE TECHNIQUES</p> <p>Find ways to help you learn</p>	 <p>push off from a tree</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - ask someone - read a handbook - imitate someone - imagine yourself doing it correctly
<p>4. MAKE MISTAKES</p> <p>Not intentionally</p> <p>You can't really avoid them.</p>	 <p>fall</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - fall - not pay attention - go too fast - be over-confident - think too much about your efforts

Learning and Teaching

<p>5. EVALUATE</p> <p>Did you meet</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> -the demands of the subject matter? -your own demands of mastery/excellence? 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - do you know about the brakes and the pedals? - are you able to get on? start off? turn?
--	---	--

<p>6. DECIDE WHAT TO DO NEXT</p>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - do it again - change techniques - change the task - go on to a new task
----------------------------------	---	--

SIGNALS

As you engage in the subject matter, there are certain signs that you are in the process of learning:

Confusion	Frustration
Satisfaction	Guessing
Practicing	Repeating
Asking Questions	Stopping to Think
Forgetting	Waiting

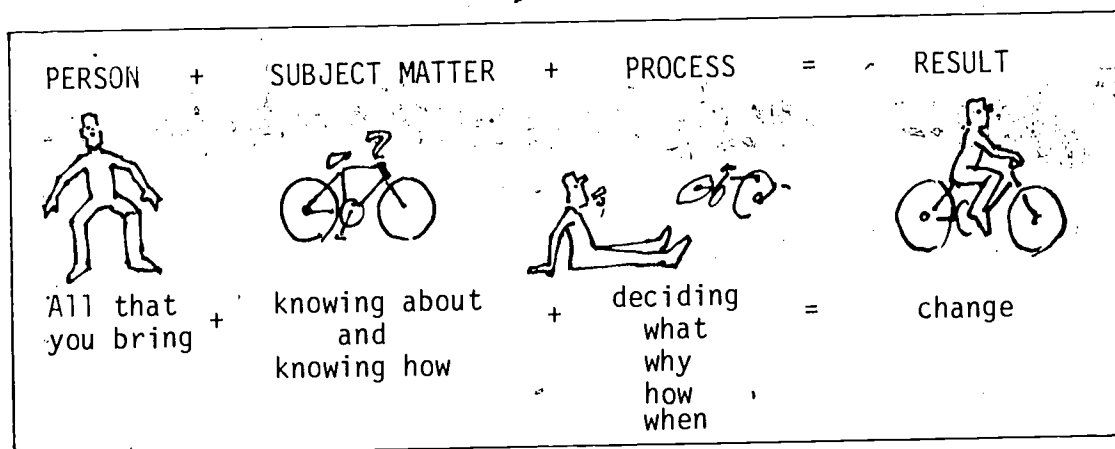
And, depending on who you are--anger, joy, boredom, embarrassment, pride, determination, precision, carelessness, humor, and so on...

Think about your own experiences and study.
How does your process of learning compare with the one above?

Learning and Teaching

SUMMARY

Consider again the elements of learning:



From this description of learning, you can isolate many principles of learning. Here are a few:

Each person is responsible for his/her learning.

Each person learns in a different way.

Learning consists of purposeful decision-making.

Are these principles true for you?
Why? Why not?

Read the preceding pages on learning again. Some things are missing.

What is missing?
Is it important?
Why? Why not?

Make a list of the principles of learning that are true for you.

Learning and Teaching

Understanding your own learning is the first step in making your teaching more conscious and purposeful. The next step is to study other people to find out how they learn. The more you understand about how others learn, the closer you are to universal principles of learning. These can lead you to establish your principles of teaching.

WHAT IS TEACHING?

In theory, the relationship between teaching and learning ought to be very close, like two sides of the same coin. Where there is teaching, there ought to be learning. In practice, however, this is not always so. What is the relationship between teaching and learning? Consider this contrast:

Teaching and Learning

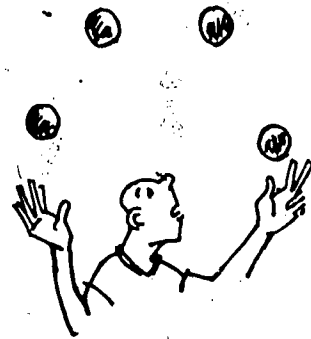
On your own,	In class,
you broke down the subject matter.....	the teacher breaks it down.
you decided the order of the parts.....	the teacher decides the sequence of material.
you decided when to stop....	the teacher decides.
you decided what you hoped to achieve.....	the teacher sets the objectives.
you decided which techniques to use.....	the teacher indicates which strategies you use.
you corrected your own mistakes..	the teacher does the correcting.
you decided if you had learned..	the teacher evaluates your learning.
you decided if you had reached your standard of excellence...	the teacher sets the standards for mastery.
you decided what to do next...	the teacher decides.
you engaged in learning with all of your person.....	the teacher decides which aspects of your person will be allowed in class.

Do you agree with this contrast?
Why? Why not?

Learning and Teaching

THE TEACHER'S JOB

There are many things that you have to do as a teacher. Likewise, there are many things that students have to do. It is important to distinguish between your job and the students' job. Their job is to learn; your job is to teach. For you, this means knowing the subject matter, knowing about learning, knowing how to teach and knowing how to get along with people.



Here are some of your job responsibilities:

SUBJECT MATTER

1. Break it down into parts.
2. Sequence the material.

PROCESS

1. Set the learning task for students.
2. Set the objectives.
3. Choose techniques.
4. Assess learning.

PERSON/ PEOPLE

1. Set the tone for class.
2. Establish a relationship with the students.

PLACE

1. Arrange the classroom.

What other jobs does a teacher have?
Are these important?
Why? Why not?

It is important to know what you have to do as a teacher. However, it is often the way you choose to do these jobs that makes a difference for your students.

DEVELOPING CRITERIA

The way you choose to do your jobs as a teacher depends on many factors--how much knowledge and expertise you have about learning, teaching, the subject matter and getting along with people. It also depends on your ability to know when you have done a good job. To know this, you need criteria, reasons. Your criteria help you to choose.

To isolate some of your criteria, ask yourself these questions:

Do you allow students to choose what they want to learn?

Do you invite the students to get to know each other in class?

Do you ask the students for their opinion of the effectiveness of your teaching?

Choose one question. Answer it truthfully.

Why did you answer this way?

How is your answer related to principles of learning?

Are these principles facts or opinions?

On the following pages, four jobs of teachers are presented. There are choices for you to make about these jobs. The purpose of presenting these choices is to offer you an opportunity to define or affirm the reasons behind your choices--your criteria.

Learning and Teaching

PEOPLE

Teacher and students in the classroom--people together for a common purpose, that's all. If you think of yourself as the teacher and of them as students, it's easy to lose sight of the fact that you are all people. The way people get along with each other--and with you--can have a great impact on their learning. How much do you know about people, about the people in your classroom?



WHO ARE YOU TEACHING?

An Individual

with	a mind	ideas, opinions, beliefs
	a heart	hopes, dreams
	a body	fears
	a history	ways of doing things
	an image of self	ways of looking at things
	a language	talents, skills
	a culture	shortcomings
who has already learned many things		

A Group

of individuals	ways of viewing and relating to other people according to	how old they are
with		whether they are a man or woman
		their "place" in society
		where they are
		why they are together
		how others relate to them

BEING TOGETHER

Both you and the students are doing your jobs in the classroom. What is the experience like?

competitive?	←————→	cooperative?
enjoyable/fun?	←————→	serious/disciplined?
impersonal/cold?	←————→	friendly/warm?
informal/relaxed?	←————→	formal/strict?

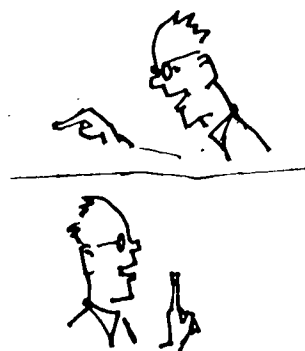
What kind of atmosphere is best for learning? Why?

Consider these situations:

1. Lek is in the middle of a question/answer exercise. Students are asking each other what they like to eat. Lek points to indicate which students ask and which students answer. As usual, she calls on students who don't have much difficulty--the faster students. She smiles and encourages these students. When a slower student does ask or answer, Lek becomes impatient and gets a frustrated expression on her face. Sometimes, she laughs at their mistakes.

What can you say about Lek's relationship with her students?
Do you agree with this?
Why? Why not?

2. Al is teaching pronunciation. The students are working on making questions with the proper sentence stress and intonation. Al is working with all the students, but he spent a lot of time with two. With one, he adopted an insistent, demanding manner--forcing the student to do better, to make the question sound right. The student worked hard and well. With the other student, Al assumed a gentler, more patient manner. His voice was calmer; he waited more. This student also worked hard and well.



What do you notice about Al's relationship with these students?
Does this make sense to you?
Why? Why not?

3. Eed believes that students learn best when there is a cooperative relationship in class. Students work together, correct each other's mistakes rather than always depending on the teacher. She asks students to work on tasks in small groups and in pairs, to talk to each other, relying more on themselves. However, many of her students come from a culture where the teacher is the sole authority in the classroom, the source of all information. Some of the men resent working with women in small groups. Other students just don't like each other.

What would you advise Eed to do?
Why?

Compare your answers to these situations with other teachers.

I wish my students learned faster.
They're so slow...

Why don't you just accept them the way they are ?!



Learning and Teaching

SETTING OBJECTIVES

An objective is a statement of purpose. It is an answer to the question "What do you hope to achieve?"

Your objectives, whether you can describe them or not, are reflected in what you do--and do not do--in the classroom. The proverb "Actions speak louder than words" is certainly true for teaching.

The clearer and more conscious you make your objectives, the more control you can have over your teaching.



If you don't know where you're going... how will you know when you get there?!

Kinds of Objectives

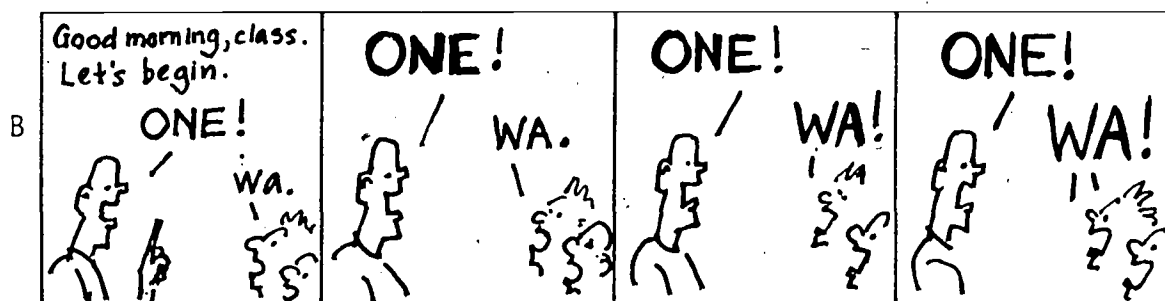
For the Student

	Focus	Examples
<u>PERFORMANCE</u> What can the student DO?	Skills Knowledge	- read aloud the letters of the alphabet. - write her name - answer the question "What's your name?" - -
<u>DEVELOPMENT</u> What can the student BECOME?	Attitudes Awareness	- self-confident - open to people from other cultures - aware of her learning process - -

For the Teacher

<u>CONTENT</u> What is the student to learn?	Subject Matter	- language as a means of communication - vocabulary and expressions for the workplace - simple material before complex - -
<u>PROCESS</u> How is the student to learn?	Classroom Experience	- to allow students to find out for themselves - to foster a relaxed atmosphere. - to allow students to comment on lessons. - -

Study the scenarios below:



What kinds of objectives can you see?

Read these statements of objectives:

1. To follow instructions to make a cup of coffee.
2. To talk uninterrupted for 3 minutes, describing one's family.
3. To describe which techniques that the teacher used helped one learn and which didn't help.

What principles of learning or teaching underlie these objectives?

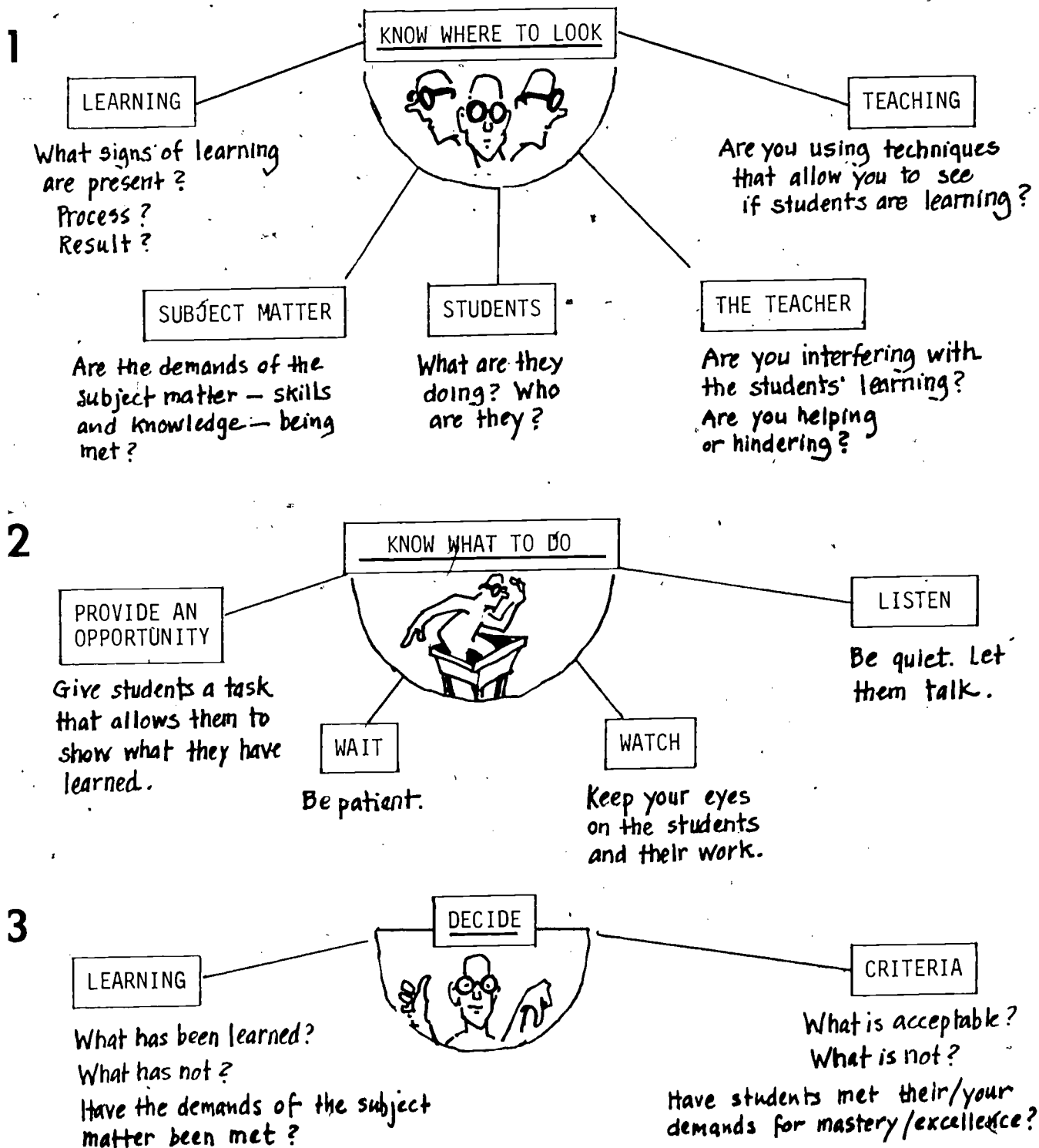
Do these principles make sense to you?

Why? Why not?

Learning and Teaching

ASSESSING LEARNING

How can you know if students have learned? To answer this question, you need to look closely at everything--and everyone--in the classroom. For this, you need to do three things:

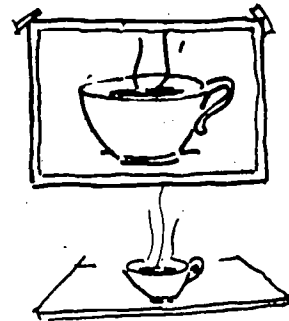


Learning and Teaching

Consider these situations:

1. It is the last 20 minutes of class. Mary, the teacher, is watching while the students, in groups of four, play a game of Concentration. In this game, they have to match words that have the same vowel sound (e.g. "beat" and "sweet"). Each group of four made a set of matching cards, which Mary checked over. The groups exchanged sets of cards. Now, the students are reading the words aloud as they turn the cards over; they are correcting each other's pronunciation. Sometimes, when they can't agree, they call Mary over to ask her. Mary goes from group to group, watching and listening.

2. It's close to the end of the first 15 minutes of class. The students are seated around a table, listening to José, the teacher, explaining how to make a cup of coffee. He has put drawings of each step of the procedure on the blackboard. As he talked, he pointed to the appropriate pictures. He saw that some students were yawning and playing with their pencils. He is now going through the steps again; this time he is using real ingredients to actually make a cup of coffee. The students are watching and listening as Jose talks.



3. There are just a few minutes left in class. Orawan, the teacher, is watching two students in a role play. One student is playing the role of an employer; the other is an employee, explaining why he is late. Both students volunteered for the roles. Orawan is making mental notes of the students' errors. One student is making a lot of mistakes, but this is the first time she's ever volunteered and is trying hard. The other students are watching; some are looking out the window. There is only enough time for two students to do the role play.

Read each situation again. Answer these questions:

When did learning occur?
How did it occur?
How can you be sure?

Learning and Teaching

LESSON PLANNING

With the lesson plan, you are a step away from the classroom and the students, a step away from actually teaching. Even though your plan is at best an "educated guess" about what will happen in class, it does reflect your views on the subject matter and how you think people learn best. Since you are dealing with people, it is always difficult to predict exactly how students will respond. How can you plan?



Ask yourself these questions:

1. WHAT AM I GOING TO TEACH? ——— Subject Matter
 - Skills ?
 - Knowledge ?
2. WHO AM I TEACHING? ——— People
 - Individuals ?
 - Group ?
3. WHAT DO I HOPE TO ACHIEVE? ——— Objectives
 - Performance ?
 - Development ?
4. HOW AM I GOING TO TEACH? ——— Techniques
 - Learning Strategies ?
 - Learning Experience ?
5. HOW AM I GOING TO KNOW IF STUDENTS HAVE LEARNED? ——— Assessing learning
 - Process ?
 - Result ?

Learning and Teaching

PARTS OF A LESSON PLAN

	Purposes	Time Spent	Techniques
1	BEGINNING people need to know the meaning of things	least	which get the meaning across
2	MIDDLE people need a chance to practice things	more	which provide practice
3	END people need a chance to apply things	most	which allow the students to choose and you to see

HOW TO PLAN

VISUALIZATION

Dan plans his lessons this way. First, he thinks about what he's going to teach (questions and answers with "to have"). He thinks of realistic, meaningful situations where the use of "to have" is natural, not artificial--like people asking each other for cards in a card game. He then imagines a scene in class with his students doing that very activity. If it seems workable, he plans his lessons "backwards" by thinking of techniques and activities that will prepare students to play cards.

Elda plans her lessons by looking carefully at the language for the lesson. She makes a precise list of the words and structures the students will learn. Then, she writes detailed objectives for the students based on this language. Looking at these objectives, she decides on a progression of activities that students will go through to get to the desired end result.

LOGIC

ACTIVITIES

Jon plans by fitting the subject matter (questions and answers with "to have") into a set of techniques that correspond to the basic steps of a lesson. Jon varies little from these techniques--only to include a game or other "light" activity.

Which planning procedure makes most sense to you?
Why?

Learning and Teaching

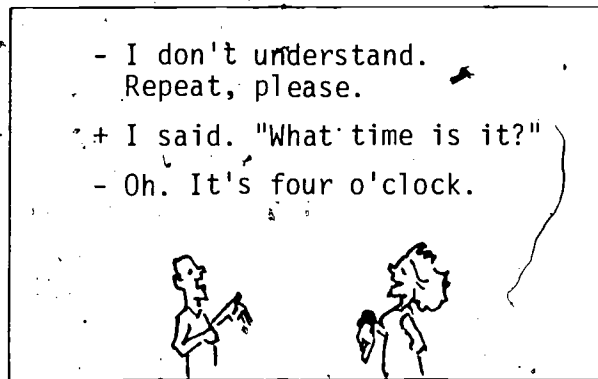
SUMMARY

In the final analysis, it is up to you to decide what learning and teaching are about. There are many sources available for your study: the work of others who have studied these same questions, the students you teach and you--your own experiences and conclusions.

1 You are your best resource.

Make a list of your principles
of learning and teaching.

Language



What are you teaching when you teach language? What kind of subject is it? What is language? How do people use it? What are your answers to these questions?

Like your choices about learning and teaching, the choices you make about language can also have great impact on your students' learning. Do you choose to emphasize grammar over pronunciation? Do you choose to include gestures or other non-verbal aspects of language? Do you choose to have students use language to communicate with each other? The purpose of this section is to ask you to examine your definition of language, from the perspectives of language user and language teacher, to clarify your reasons for teaching what you teach.

Language textbooks make many choices about language for you. But depending on your own view of language, there are still many choices open to you. Language is a vast subject, intimately and intricately linked with people. It reflects virtually all aspects of human life: the way people structure and implement their dealings with each other, the social systems they set up, their customs and values--their culture. Language is also a system in itself, with patterns for sounds, grammar, words and meanings, and in some cases, script. Which is most important? How do you decide? What are your reasons, your criteria?

Again, one person's point of view is presented in the following pages. Again, you are not asked to accept or agree with his view of language. Use it and the questions in the text to define or affirm what is true for you.

Learning another language can be a unique journey into another perception of people and of the world. Studying both language and how you and others learn it can lead to truths which will help you teach it.

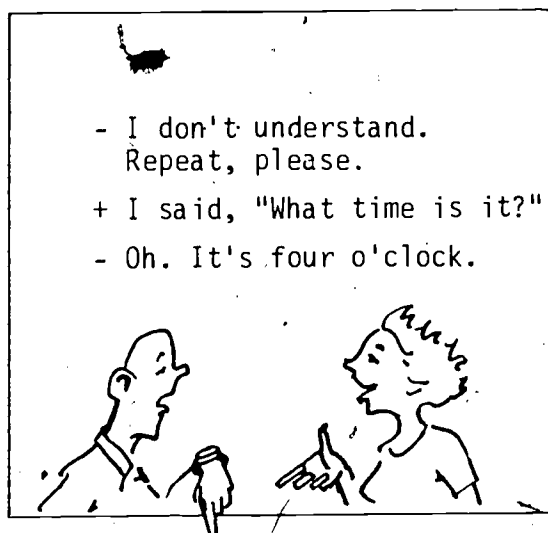
What is your view of language?

Language

LANGUAGE AS SUBJECT

It is possible to study language without looking at how it is really used by native speakers. It is like studying about riding bicycles by taking apart a bicycle and examining the pieces. Even though it is not easy to separate language from the people who use it and from the culture where they use it, such a study can help you understand how language works.

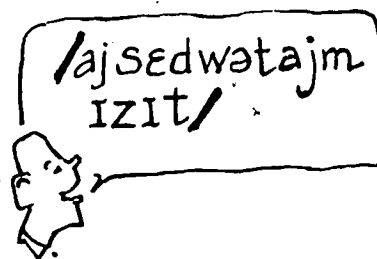
Knowing how to form the sounds, how to make grammatical sentences, how to choose the correct words, how to write correct sentences--all this can be called linguistic competence.



Language as a Subject

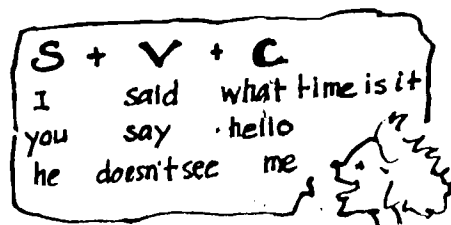
Sounds

Spoken language is a stream of sound. This stream of sound is in fact a stream of many sounds. The sound system of a language can be reduced to a number of specific elements, each a possible teaching focus.



Grammar

Grammar is the set of rules for making words and sentences in the language. These rules are understood by every native speaker of a language. Grammar is based primarily on the meaning of words and the function of words in sentences.



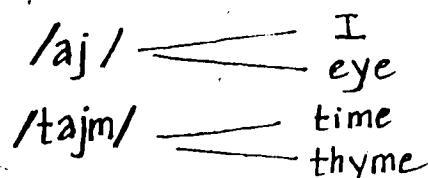
Vocabulary

Vocabulary is words, words and their meanings. A dictionary is a good example of the vocabulary of a language: simply a list of all the words and what they mean.

repeat — to perform again

Script

Script is the reflection of the spoken language in writing. In English, which has an alphabetic writing system, there is a link between sound and symbol. The letters represent certain sounds in the language.



Language

SOUNDS

Consonants Vowels	Where does the voice continue or stop?	I - O U E A D NT ND RST ND
Word Stress	Where does the emphasis fall?	underStand
Rhythm	What beat or pattern does the sound follow?	I don't understand
Intonation	Where does the voice rise or fall?	I don't un der stand
Sentence Stress	Which words or parts of words are emphasized?	I don't underStand.
Phrasing	Where do you pause?	I said//what time//is it?

GRAMMAR

Parts of Speech	What functions do words serve?	NOUNS — I, it, time VERBS — repeat, is, said
Roots Affixes	What can you add to words?	stand — under·stand·abl·y stand-in stands
Word Order	Which words go where?	time it what is
Sentence Patterns	What kinds of words fit the pattern?	SUBJECT + VERB + COMPLEMENT

VOCABULARY

Content Words	Which words describe the topic?	four o'clock
Function Words	Which words hold the sentence together?	It is

SCRIPT

Letter Formation	How do you make the letters?	l 2 1 3 R
Linear Sequence	In which direction do you read and write?	.esaelp ,taepeR .dnatsrednu thod I
Spacing	Where are the blank spaces?	idontunderstandrepeatplease
Punctuation Capitalization	How do you set words apart?	? . , " " I R
Spelling	How do the sounds match the symbols?	/i/ ≡ ee ea i

Language

LANGUAGE IN USE

Language is more than just a subject of study. It is a living, dynamic link among people. People use language. Language is an integral, intricate part of life.

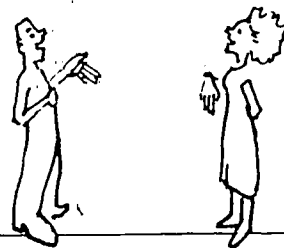
Looking at how people actually use language can help you understand how to teach it. There is, after all, a big difference between knowing about a language and knowing how to use it with native speakers.

Knowing how to use language-- knowing about the people who speak it, knowing about their culture-- this know-how is called communicative competence.

- I don't understand. Repeat, please.

+ I said, "What time is it?"

- Oh. It's four o'clock.

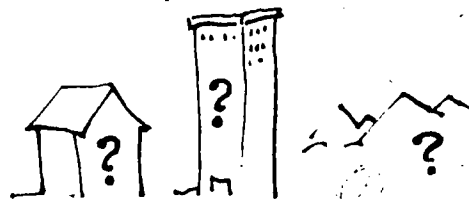


Language in Use

Language in use involves language for communication. Looking at language in this way means looking at communicative exchanges between people.

Situation

Every exchange occurs somewhere. This setting, this place can have an effect on the kind of language that is used. Where are the people? At home? In the park?



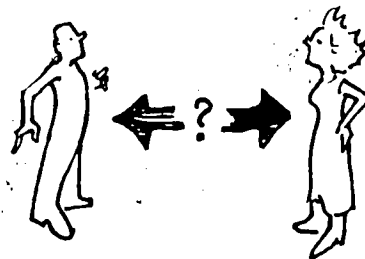
Topic

Also, every exchange involves a topic, a subject of conversation. What are the people talking about? The weather? The stock market?



People

The people involved in the exchange, their ages, their sex, their social relationship, their self-image--all these factors can influence the language and the nature of the exchange.



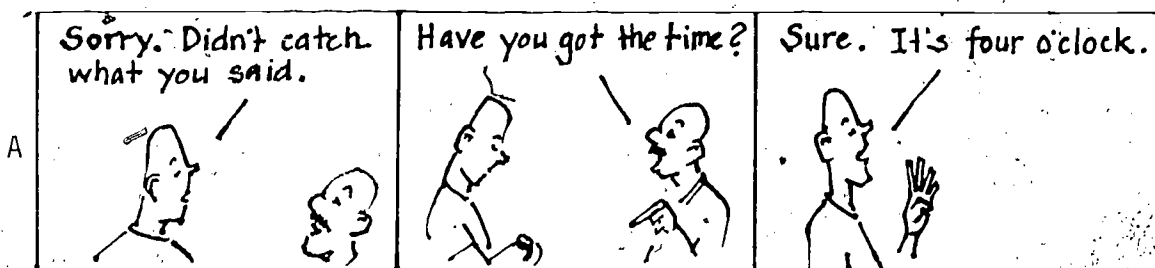
Function

What is the purpose of the exchange between these people? Is it to get information? Is it to express disagreement? Is it to say goodbye? To congratulate?

$$a + b = ?$$

Examine the following three scenarios to see how language in use works:

	Situation	Topic	People	Function
A	Street Corner	time of day	- John - stranger	to request clarification
B	Office	time of day	- John - John's boss	to request clarification
C	Kitchen	time of day	- John - Mary: John's wife	to request clarification



Is there a place for this aspect of language in the classroom?
Why? Why not?





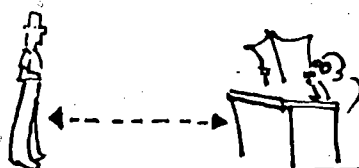
Language

OTHER KINDS OF LANGUAGE

The oral and the written forms of language are just two ways of expressing and understanding meaning. Non-verbal forms also play an important role in the process of communication. They are more difficult to isolate and to study, since we don't usually notice them, until something goes wrong.

- I don't understand. Repeat, please.
- + I said, "What time is it?"
- Oh. It's four o'clock.

Consider these aspects of the scenarios from the previous page:

	GESTURES	With hands? Arms? Shoulders? Head?
	FACIAL EXPRESSIONS	Smiles? Frowns? Winks?
	TOUCHING	Who touches whom? Where? For how long?
	EYE CONTACT	Do people look each other in the eye? Do they look down or away?
	DISTANCE	How far apart or close together do people position themselves?

Do these have a place in the classroom?
Why? Why not?

WHAT IS LANGUAGE FOR?

- For COMMUNICATION You use language to convey meaning, to make yourself understood. Others do the same. When the message gets across, communication has occurred.
- For SELF-
EXPRESSION All that is conveyed is not always understood. You can use language for your own ends and purposes; communication may not be one.
- For THINKING Language provides you with symbols that help you think. With words in your mind, you can do math problems, plan tomorrow's activities, recall an event from your past.
- For DESCRIBING
THE WORLD What you perceive. What you experience. What surrounds you--and the perceptions, experiences and surroundings of others. Language provides symbols that reflect your perception--the perception of people of your culture of the world around you.

CULTURE

To speak a language--to know about the language and to know how to use it appropriately--means many things. It means knowing how to express yourself, how to communicate, how to think in that language. It means knowing about the culture, the world of the people who share that language--their history, their values, their institutions.

All this you can do--as a native speaker of your own language. All this your students can do--as speakers of their mother tongue.

Teaching a second language, then, is offering an opportunity for people to become bilingual, to become bicultural, to learn another perception of the world around us.

Does this make sense to you?
Why? Why not?

Language

SUMMARY

Language has many faces. As a language teacher, there are many decisions you have to consider when you think about what to teach. Are you teaching linguistic competence--a knowledge of what language is about? Are you teaching communicative competence--a knowledge of how to use language? Are you teaching non-verbal aspects of language--gestures, eye contact, facial expressions? Are you teaching culture--customs, behavior and perceptions of native speakers of that language? Are you teaching people to become bilingual/bicultural?

What is your view of language?

Lesson Planning

There are many ways to plan a lesson--as many ways as there are teachers. What is important is that you find a system for planning that helps you with your teaching. For some teachers, this means writing everything down in great detail. For others, it means making a few notes of special activities. Other teachers make their plans right after a class has ended. What is the system that works best for you?

Even though there are many ways to write a lesson plan, all effective lessons contain a minimum of key elements: content, purposes, choice of techniques and a means of assessing students' learning. In planning, you need to take these elements into account in some way. You also need to consider the needs, abilities and personalities of the students. And, you need to consider how much time is available to you to teach the lesson. The clearer and more conscious you are about these elements, the more effective your lessons are likely to be.

In addition to these elements, your plan also reflects the principles you hold about learning, teaching and the subject matter. Your beliefs or opinions about how people learn will affect your choice of objectives, techniques, what and how you assess--even what you choose to teach.

On the next few pages, there is a sample lesson plan for one lesson in the curriculum. This lesson plan is based on the following principles of learning and teaching:

- The student does the learning.
- Learning is enhanced when the students have an active role in class.
- Language is for communication.
- The teacher's job is to provide a structured task which allows the students to work on the subject matter.
- Learning is doing.
- Learning is enhanced when students are having a good time.

This lesson is presented to show you one way to plan consistently with these principles. It is not the only way, nor is it the best way. Use it to help you define your own planning system for this and other lessons in the curriculum.

How would you plan this lesson?

Lesson Planning

Consider Unit 7, Chunk 1:

Chunk 1 Describe one's past and present jobs and skills

Situation

A formal interview

What was your job in <u>Laos</u> ?	I was a <u>farmer</u> .
Can you <u>farm</u> ?	Yes, I can ____.
	No, I can't ____.
What can you do?	I can <u>farm</u> .
How long <u>were</u> <u>you</u> a <u>farmer</u> ?	____ years.
	From 19__ to 19__.

A **B** **C/D**

Vocabulary

farm
cook
sew
wash (clothes)
build (a house)

You/I
he
she

farmer
housewife
soldier
seamstress
(dressmaker)
carpenter

were
was

Laos
Cambodia
Vietnam
(other)

Now consider this situation: You are teaching an A-level class of 10-15 students. There is an interpreter aide. The class period is 1½ hours.

Plan a lesson for this class.

Ask yourself these questions as you write your plan:

- What am I going to teach?
- Who am I teaching?
- What do I hope to achieve?
- How am I going to teach?
- How am I going to know if students have learned?

Lesson Planning

Write your plan in the space below:

Lesson Planning

LESSON PLAN : LEVEL A

Warm-Up

Greet the students. Engage them in small talk.

Vocabulary Generation

Have the interpreter aide find out the names of the students' occupations. Say the names in English. Have the students repeat the words a few times.

Structure Presentation

Present the structure "I was a ____." Contrast it with the present by saying, "Now I am a teacher. I was a ____." Use gestures or visuals to indicate present and past.

Question-Answer

Put visuals of the students' occupations on the blackboard. Point to each visual and ask, "What was your job in Laos?" Elicit/Give the answer, e.g. "I was a farmer." Ask the question again, pointing to a visual to cue students' responses. Continue until all students have participated.

Structure Practice

Have students sit in a semi-circle. Put the occupation visuals face down on the floor. Turn over a visual. If it is your occupation, say "I was a teacher." If it isn't, put it face down again. Continue until you find your occupation. Each student then follows the same procedure.

Numbers Review

Use flashcards to review numbers 1-12, 15, 30 and 45. Say/Elicit the numbers while you show the flashcards to the students.

Tape the flashcards to the blackboard. Say a number. Individually, students go to the blackboard and point to the number you say.

Dictation

Give each student a handout with times of day written with certain numbers missing. Say "number one" and then read a time, e.g. "Three-thirty." Students write what they hear.

1) 9: _	10: _	3: _
2) 6: _	3: _	7: _
3) 8: _	5: _	9: _

Literacy Dominoes

Make sets of "time dominoes." Put the students in groups of four, and give each group a set. Students match the dominoes to form chains.

9:00	8:30	8:30	7:45	7:45	6:00
------	------	------	------	------	------



Word Stress

Have students practice saying the names of occupations that end in "-er" (e.g. "farmer, worker, hunter, painter, tailor"). Indicate that the stress does not fall on the last syllable. Put marks on the blackboard or use hand gestures to cue proper pronunciation.

Vocabulary Presentation

Present action verbs for each occupation. Put the visuals on the blackboard. Mime an action for each occupation. Say/Elicit the name of each action (e.g. "sew"). Have the students repeat the words.

Structure

Point to the visuals again and present the structure: "I can ____." Mime the actions again, and have students give the appropriate response (e.g. "I can sew."). Then, have the students work in small groups to mime and identify the actions.

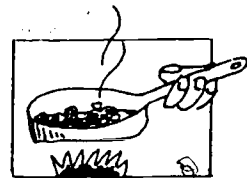
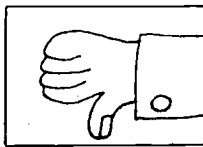
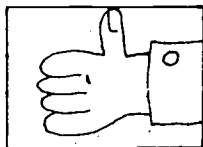
Affirmative-Negative

Hold up the visuals one at a time, and say/elicite the appropriate response (e.g. "I can sew."). Hold up the visuals again and have the students give the responses.

Hold up two occupation visuals. For the first, say (with animation), "I can ____." For the second, say "I can't ____." Have the students repeat. Then hold up two more and have the students give the appropriate response.

Chart Practice

Put the occupation visuals on the blackboard along with cue cards for "yes" and "no." Point to visuals and cue cards, and have students give the responses (e.g. "I can cook. I can't sew.").

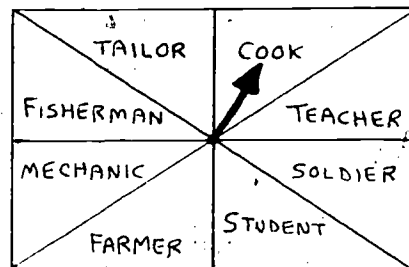


Spinner

Prepare Spinner cards with pictures (or names) of the occupations. Students work in groups of four. They take turns spinning the arrow and giving the appropriate responses.

I was a ____.

I can ____.



Lesson Planning

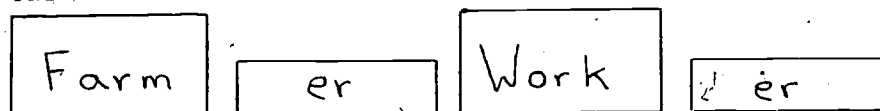
FOLLOW-UP

Depiction. Students draw a picture of themselves at their occupation in their country. They also draw a picture of their present occupation (student) and the job they want in the U.S. Students exchange drawings and interpret the other's drawing for the class.
Ex: "He was a farmer. He is a student now. He wants to be a typist."

Charades. Put the names (or pictures) of several common jobs on index cards. Students form teams. Taking turns, a person from each team takes a card and mimes the occupation to get team members to guess it. Put a brief time limit on this activity (2 minutes).

VARIATIONS

Cue Cards. Instead of gestures or marks on the blackboard, use cue cards on a table to illustrate word stress, like this:



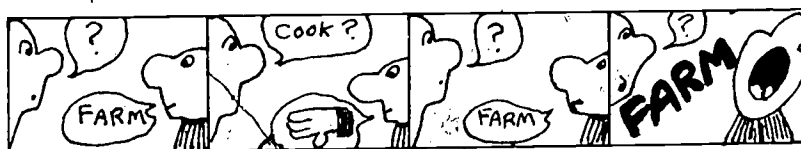
Word Order. Use Cuisenaire rods to represent the words of a sentence and put them on the table to illustrate word order. Vary this by moving the rods around to create different sentences.



Bingo. Instead of Time Dominoes, prepare Bingo cards with times of day written in each square. Say the letter (B, I, N, G or O) and a time (e. g. 5:30). Students put a marker on that square.

B	I	N	G	O
10 am	4 am	6 am	8 am	5 am
7 am	3 am	1 am	2 pm	1 pm
1 pm	9 pm	11 pm	6 pm	3 pm
11 am	10 pm	9 am	12	6 am
2 am	7 pm	5 pm	8 pm	4 pm

Picture Story. Have the students "read" a picture story, like this one:



LESSON PLAN : LEVEL B/C/D

Consider the language in Chunk 1 for B, C and D levels:

What can you do?	I can farm.	B
How long were you a farmer?	_____ years. From 19__ to 19__.	C/D

Pre-Test

Find out how much A-level language the students know. Have the students sit in a circle to ask and answer questions. Start the first exchange by asking the student on your left, "What was your job in ____?" This student answers with "I was a ____," and then asks the student on his/her left. Students continue in a chain. Repeat with the second exchange: "Can you ____?" with responses "Yes, I can" or "No, I can't."

Assessment

If students are not able to produce or understand the exchanges, continue with activities from the A-level lesson plan.

Structure Presentation

If students have mastered A-level language, present the structure "from 19__ to 19__." Write a series of dates on the blackboard. Point to them at random and have the students say the dates (e.g. "1970, 1967, 1980"). Then point to two dates in succession to elicit "from ____ to ____." Continue pointing to dates and have students give the appropriate response.

Spiel

Have students prepare a short talk (1 minute) about their job history. Write "from 19__ to 19__" on the blackboard. Put the occupation visuals on the blackboard as cues. Students each give their spiels to the rest of the class.

Forms

Prepare a handout with a form for students to fill out. They write the information, exchange forms and read the information to the rest of the class.

Name	_____
Address	_____
Occupation	_____

Simulation

Simulate an interview situation, where you play the role a job interviewer and students are job applicants. Use of the students' forms as part of the interview.

FOLLOW-UP

Picture Narrative. Prepare a brief descriptive paragraph to accompany a picture of a person. Hold the picture up and read the narrative a few times to the students. Ask them questions. Have them recite the narrative. As a follow-up, have them write a narrative to accompany a picture of theirs, following a model, e.g.

This is Lin.
He's in Chicago now.
He's a typist.
In Laos, he was a teacher.

Cultural Exploration. Bring a guest to the classroom to be a case worker in a state employment office. Practice interview techniques. Ask students how people get jobs in their countries.

Lesson Planning

VARIATIONS

Open-Ended Task. Instead of the chain exchange, assess students' mastery of A-level language by putting the occupation visuals, dates and the names of students' countries on the blackboard. Have students individually say as much as they can about what they see on the blackboard, or have them create a dialogue.

Grammar. Use a Spinner game to have students practice the structure "How many _____ do you have?" Put numbers 1-10 on a Spinner card and put several objects (pencils, bottlecaps, toothpicks or Cuise-naire rods) in a pile on the table. Taking turns, students spin the arrow and take that number of objects. Other students then ask, "How many _____ do you have?" The student gives the appropriate response.

NOTES

Time. The amount of time you spend on the lessons will vary. It depends on many factors: the ability and motivation of the students, the classroom environment and mood, the enthusiasm of the teacher, the time of day, and so on.

Pronunciation. Keep pronunciation exercises short (5-10 minutes), unless students are responding well.

Pacing. It is important to judge when to move on (or stay with) a particular activity. Both the amount of time and the tempo of an activity (how fast or slow it is) are essential aspects of a plan. Varying the amount of time and including different paces for activities can be an effective planning tool.

Pre-Testing. It can be worthwhile to include an exercise at the beginning of your plan which shows you how much students have mastered or retained from previous lessons. This also helps students judge their own progress.

Afterwards. After class has finished, write down notes for your next lesson plan. Include difficulties that students had with the material, comments on individual students' participation and work--and notes on your own performance.

Read through the sample lesson plans again.

What makes sense to you? What doesn't?

Why? Why not?

How would you plan this lesson differently?

Techniques

How do you teach? What are the exercises, the activities, the procedures that you use in class to make it easier for the students to learn? Every teacher collects a number of techniques which fit his/her personality and which reflect his/her beliefs about learning and about how people learn best. This section contains a selection of basic teaching techniques that many teachers have found useful and effective.

These techniques are presented as a resource list, not as the answers to all your teaching challenges. It is not a comprehensive list; there are many other techniques and activities that you can also use. The techniques do not reflect or "belong to" any particular methodology or teaching approach. The main thing that they have in common is that they emphasize students' participation in class.

The techniques are arranged in categories, which correspond to different jobs in teaching. These categories show that techniques can be used for a particular purpose, e.g. for presentation or for class management. Many techniques, however, can be used for more than one purpose. Demonstration, for example, is listed as a technique for presentation, but it can also be used for correction, assessment--even for giving instructions. The categories are:

1. Presentation
2. Explanation
3. Correction
4. Class Management
5. Structured Practice
6. Activity Operation
7. Communication
8. Communication Games
9. Cultural Exploration
10. Pronunciation
11. Literacy
12. Assessment

The descriptions of the techniques are brief and are intended to give you the basic information about how and why to use them. You will need to adapt them to fit the subject matter and the students you are teaching. You will also have to choose when to use them and how to incorporate them into your lesson plan.

Of course, knowing which techniques you want to use is only part of the answer to the question of how to teach. You need to be able to carry out the techniques--you need to be able to do them. It is not always techniques that make a teacher effective; more often it is the teacher who makes techniques effective.

Techniques

Presentation

1. Objects
2. Pictures
3. Demonstration
4. Definition
5. Situation
6. Translation
7. Images

Explanation

1. Deduction
2. Induction
3. Reflection

Correction

1. Recognition
2. Cues

Class Management

1. Large Group
2. Small Groups
3. Individuals
4. Instructions
5. Interpreter Aides

Structured Practice

1. Repetition
2. Substitution
3. Transformation
4. Question-Answer
5. Charts
6. Spinners
7. Action Sequence
8. Reconstruction

Activity Operations

1. Operation

Communication

1. Dialogues
2. Constructalog
3. Cummings Device
4. Picture Story
5. Spiel
6. Narrative
7. Recitation
8. Characters

Communication Games

1. Twenty Questions
2. Concentration
3. Go-Fish
4. Cubes

Cultural Exploration

1. Role Play
2. Open-Ended Story
3. Valuation
4. Depictions
5. Picture Interpretation
6. Simulation
7. Songs
8. Proverbs

Pronunciation

1. Minimal Pairs
2. Oral Cues
3. Visual Cues
4. Sound Contrast
5. Directed Repetition
6. Minimal Sets

Literacy

1. Copying
2. Dictation
3. Scrambles
4. Hangman
5. Tic Tac Toe
6. Bingo

Assessment

1. Picture Description
2. Open-Ended Task
3. Interview
4. Feedback
5. Matching
6. Cloze
7. Skits
8. Dyads

Techniques: Presentation

The purpose of these techniques is to convey meaning--to help students understand. The focus, what the student needs to understand, can vary. It might be a new sound, a piece of information, a step in an activity or a new word.

OBJECTS

Students associate language with an object.

Procedure

1. Indicate the object to students.
2. Give/Elicit the word for the object.

Follow-Up

Repeat the procedure if students did not understand.

Options

Students hold or touch the object.



PICTURES

Students associate language with a visual image--a picture, a photograph or a drawing.

Procedure

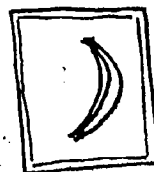
1. Indicate the picture to students.
2. Give/Elicit the word or expression.

Follow-Up

Check students' understanding by asking them to produce the language.

Options

Use pictures to show students what to do--instead of what to say, e.g. a picture of the steps in an activity.



A banana!



Techniques: Presentation

DEMONSTRATION

Students associate meaning with actions.

Procedure

1. Perform the action.
2. Elicit/Give the word or expression.



It's cold.

Follow-Up

To check students' understanding, have them perform the action.

Options

Combine actions with objects or pictures.

DEFINITION

Students associate new meanings from language they already know.

Procedure

1. Say the new word or expression.
2. Give/Elicit the definition.

Hungry.

When I'm hungry,
I want to eat.

Follow-Up

Students give the definition.

Options

Use synonyms and antonyms.

SITUATION

Students get the meaning of a word or expression through the description of a context or situation.

Procedure

1. Describe a situation.
2. Give/Elicit the new word or expression.

Jon is going to the movies. A ticket costs \$2. Jon has \$1.50.

Follow-Up

Students re-tell the situation.

Jon can't see the movies. Why not?

Options

Include pictures, objects or demonstrations.

He doesn't have enough money.

TRANSLATION

Students associate new words or expressions with those of their own language.

Procedure

1. Say the word or expression.
2. Give/Elicit the equivalent in the students' language.

Screwdriver.

Tourne-vis.

Follow-Up

Students translate the word back into the target language.

IMAGES

Students use their imagination to get at meaning by using Cuisenaire rods to represent objects, scenes or people.

Procedure

1. Arrange rods to symbolize a scene.
2. Describe the scene.
3. Give/Elicit the new word or expression.

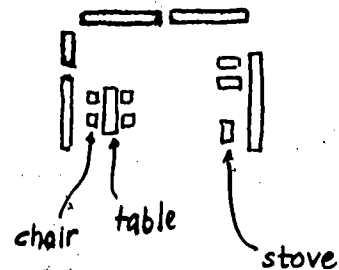
Follow-Up

Students refer to the rods and say the new words or expressions.

Options

Include pictures or written symbols.

The Kitchen.



Techniques: Explanation

The purpose of these techniques is to help students to make sense out of the subject matter--especially to see relationships between parts. Usually, this means understanding the "rules" of subject matter, e.g. how to make words plural or how to make solid connections in soldering.

DEDUCTION

Students are given an explanation--a rule--and apply it to specific examples.

Procedure

1. Present the rule.
2. Give examples to the students.
3. Students apply the rule to the examples.

Add "s" to make
a noun plural.

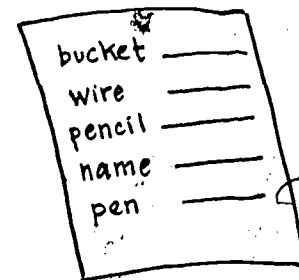
Follow-Up

Students give other examples that follow the rule.

Students give exceptions to the rule.

Options

Give the rule and ask the students to provide examples.



INDUCTION

From a series of examples, students discover the explanation, the rule.

Procedure

1. Give examples to the students.
2. Students find the rule.

Follow-Up

Students give other examples that follow the rule.

Students give exceptions.

1. Give it to John.
Give it to him.
2. Give it to Susan.
Give it to her.

REFLECTION

From a random sample of examples, students find rules and make explanations for themselves.

Procedure

1. Put the subject matter before the students.
2. Ask students to make observations or explanations.
3. Tell students if their explanations are correct or not.

- What is your name?
- Lee. What's yours?
- Jan. Where do you live?
- I live in town.


Follow-Up

Students give other examples to support their explanations.

Options

Allow students to ask questions about the subject matter.

's is a contraction for is.



Techniques: Correction

The purpose of these techniques is to point out errors to students and to provide cues to help students correct them.

RECOGNITION

Students realize that they have made an error.

Procedure

1. Call students' attention to the error.



My name Lee.

Options

Make a note of the error and point it out later.

Tell the student that there is an error.

That's not correct.

Use gestures: shake your head.
wag your finger.

Use facial expressions:
raise your eyebrows.



Pause in silence to allow the student to find the error.

Note

You need to decide which errors to point out to the students and when to do this.

CUES

Students use cues to correct their errors.

Procedure

1. The student makes an error.
2. Point out the error.
3. Give the cue.
4. The student works to correct it.

My name Lee.

Options

Tell the student how to correct the error.

Put is in the sentence.

Demonstrate the correct form.

Use gestures.

Use symbols.



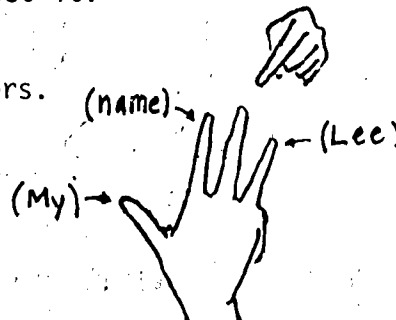
= verb

Use written language.

Indicate another student who has the correct form.

Pause in silence and allow the student to work to correct it.

Use your hands and fingers.



Techniques: Class Management

The purpose of these techniques is to help students work on specific tasks. They accompany other techniques as ways of relating to students and involving them in class.

LARGE GROUP

Students work on tasks together, as a class.

Procedure

1. Set the task.
2. Students participate.

Options

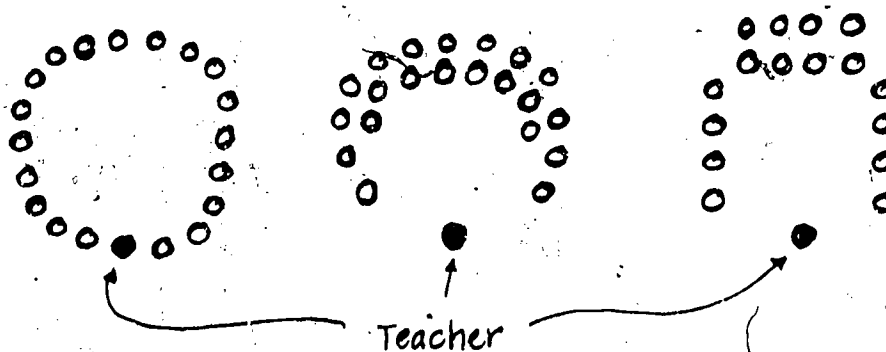
Students respond together.

Half the students respond.

Work with a small group,
with the rest of the students
as observers.

Work with one student, with the
rest of the students as
observers.

Choose a seating arrangement
which allows students to work
together.



SMALL GROUPS

Students work on tasks in groups of three, four or in pairs.

Procedure

1. Set the task.
2. Students participate.

Follow-Up

Students report on their tasks to the large group.

Options

Set a task which asks students to prepare one result.

Look at these pictures and make a dialogue.

Set a task which asks students to share individual results.

Describe your diagrams to each other.

Students work alone before working in small groups.

Choose a seating arrangement which allows students to work together.

Note

Working together in small groups calls for students to cooperate with each other.



Techniques: Class Management

INDIVIDUALS

Students work alone on tasks.

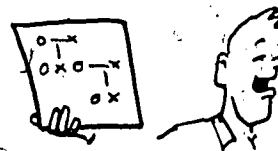
Procedure

1. Set the task.
2. Students work individually.

Draw a diagram of
your family tree.

Follow-Up

Students report on their tasks.



Options

Work with one student, with the rest of the students as observers.

Set different tasks for individual students, based on their needs and abilities.

Set different tasks for individuals, while working with the large group.

Allow individual students to set their own tasks.

INSTRUCTIONS

Students understand what they are supposed to do.

Procedure

1. Tell students what to do.

Listen and repeat.

Follow-Up

Check to see if students understood the instructions.

Options

Demonstrate the instructions.

Use gestures.

Use language which is at the students' level.



Students give a summary of the instructions.

Set time limits for activities.

State a specific result that you expect from the activity.

State the purpose of the activity.

Techniques: Class Management

INTERPRETER AIDES

Teaching assistants translate what you and the students say so that everyone understands.

Procedure

1. You/Students speak.
2. Aide translates.

Options

Speak clearly and slowly.

Use language that the aide can understand.

Pause regularly for the aide to translate.

Repeat what you said, when necessary.

To make sure you have understood, summarize the aide's translations into English.

Before class, inform the aide of the content and objectives of your lesson.

Before class, review the material to be translated with the aide.

Note

Interpreter aides should not let their own opinions affect their translations.

What did you learn today?

Qu'est-ce que vous avez appris aujourd'hui?

Techniques: Structured Practice

The purpose of these techniques is to give students practice in manipulating the subject matter. Students work with a limited number of items, following a structured procedure to improve grammatical accuracy or develop expertise.

REPETITION

Students do something again--performing an action or saying a word or sentence.

Procedure

1. Students perform an action.
2. Students do it again.

Hello.

Hello.

Hello.

Follow-Up

Continue until students have got it right or until they need to stop.

Options

Students direct their own repetition at their own pace.

SUBSTITUTION

Students replace certain words or expression in a sentence pattern.

Procedure

1. Present the model pattern and the cue.
2. Students make the substitution.
3. Continue with other cues.

I am here.
You. You are here.
I.

Follow-Up

Students explain the rule.

Options

Students provide the words to be substituted.

Use pictures as cues.



I am here.



Techniques: Structured Practice

TRANSFORMATION

Students change sentences in a particular way--changing one sentence pattern into another.

Procedure

1. Present the model transformation.
2. Say the sentence.
3. Students change the sentence.

This is a hat.
Is this a hat?
That is a book.



Follow-Up

Students change the transformations back to the original sentences.

Is that a book?



Options

Students give other sentences which follow the model transformation.

QUESTION-ANSWER

Students ask and answer questions. The answers are controlled.

Procedure

1. Present the model question and answer.
2. Ask the question and give the cue.
3. Students answer.

What's that?
It's a book.

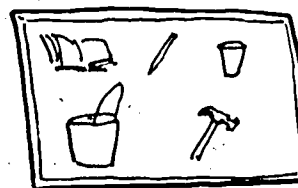
Follow-Up

Students ask the questions.

Options

Use pictures or symbols to cue student answers.

Use symbols to cue different kinds of questions.



Techniques: Structured Practice

CHARTS

Students make statements or ask and answer questions based on information arranged on a wall chart.

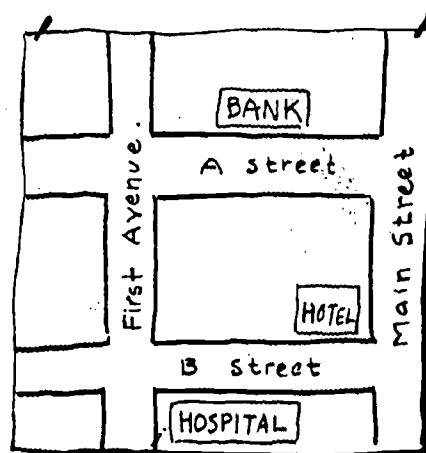
Procedure

1. Present the information on the chart.
2. Students make statements about the chart.
3. Ask questions about the information.
4. Students answer.

Follow-Up

Students ask questions.

Students make as many statements as they can about the chart in 30 seconds.



Options

Put pictures on the chart.

Sample Charts

Cardboard clocks with moveable hands.

Bus schedules.

Street maps.

SPINNERS

Students spin the arrow and give the response that the arrow points to on a spinner card.

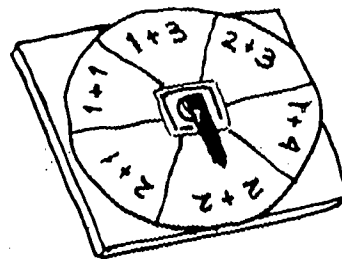
Procedure

1. Students spin the arrow.
2. Students give the response that the arrow points to.

Options

Responses can be oral, written or actions.

Use more than one spinner to vary responses.



Two plus two
is four.

Techniques: Structured Practice

ACTION SEQUENCE

Students perform actions in response to directives or commands.

Procedure

1. Give the directives.



2. Students perform the actions.

Follow-Up

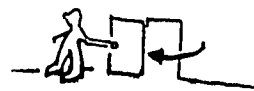
Students give the directives.

Options

Students describe their actions.

Use pictures to cue directives.

Open the door.



RECONSTRUCTION

Students recombine words from a list of sentences to make new sentences.

Procedure

1. On the blackboard, put a series of sentences that students already know.
2. Students make new sentences using only the words on the blackboard.
3. Tell the students if their sentences are correct or not.

Follow-Up

Students write their sentences on the blackboard.

Options

Students make short dialogues from the sentences.

It's on the table.
Give the paper
to me.
I am here.

The table is here.



Techniques: Activity Operations

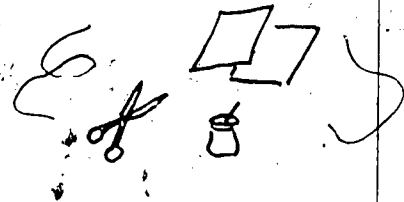
In these techniques, students work with tools and materials to carry out a procedure which usually leads to a specific end result. Some examples are: operating a sewing machine, making coffee or making something out of wood. Students get information (e.g. how a sewing machine works) and learn how to use tools (e.g. a saber saw). They also learn language associated with the activity.

OPERATION

Students carry out an activity, using tools and materials to achieve the end result.

Procedure

1. Present the activity.
2. Distribute the tools and materials.
3. Students carry out the activity.



Follow-Up

Students check their work.

Option 1

Show the students the end result. Ask them to achieve the same result, using the tools and materials.



Make a paper hat.

Do not tell them how to do it.

Students check their work.

Techniques: Activity Operations

OPERATION

OPTION 2

Demonstrate the steps of the activity.

OPTION 3

Use pictures to show the steps of the activity.



OPTION 4

Present language to describe the steps of the activity.

Take the string.
Measure your head.

Techniques: Communication

The purpose of these techniques is to help students use language to express themselves and to communicate with others.

DIALOGUES

Students memorize phrases and sentences which are part of common, everyday conversations.

Procedure

1. Present the dialogue.
2. Students memorize the lines.

Follow-Up

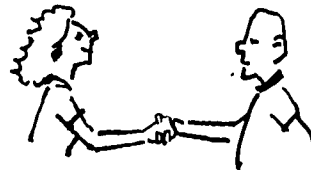
In pairs, students perform the dialogue.

Options

Include appropriate non-verbal language (gestures, facial expressions, etc.).

Use puppets or props for the parts of the dialogue.

To help students memorize, write the dialogue on the board and gradually erase words until nothing remains.



CONSTRUCTALOG

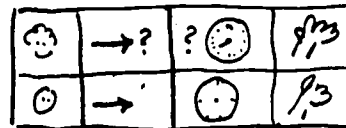
Students make their own dialogues from a list of words and expressions.

Procedure

1. Write the words on the blackboard.
2. In pairs, students create short dialogues.
3. Students perform the dialogues.

Options

Put pictures on the blackboard instead of words.



Techniques: Communication

CUMMINGS DEVICE

From a list on the blackboard, students insert words or phrases into "holes" in a short conversational exchange.

Procedure

1. Present the exchange and the words and phrases.
2. Students practice the exchange and the substitutions.
3. In pairs, students perform exchanges.

- Which bus goes to (1) ?

+ Number (2).

- Where's the bus stop?

+ It's (3).

Follow-Up

Students put the exchange into a longer conversation.

(1) hospital
bank

(2) 16
17

(3) on the corner
across the street

Options

Use pictures or symbols to cue words and phrases.

Students provide language items for the "holes."

PICTURE STORY

Students follow a sequence of pictures to tell a story.

Procedure

1. Present the pictures and tell the story.
2. Students re-tell the story.

Follow-Up

Students act out the story in a role play.

Options

Ask students questions about the story.

Choose picture stories that have a cultural topic.



Techniques: Communication

SPIEL

Students prepare a short talk which they give to the rest of the class.

Procedure

1. Write a number of key words on the blackboard.
2. Students prepare a 30-second talk using the words.
3. Students give their spiels to the rest of the class.

sick baby
 doctor
headache
 appointment
medicine

Follow-Up

Students summarize each others' spiels.

Options

Choose words that are related to a particular topic.

Use pictures instead of key words.

NARRATIVE

Students talk about a short descriptive paragraph on a particular topic.

Procedure

1. Present the narrative.
2. Ask questions about it.
3. Students answer the questions.

Follow-Up

Students re-tell the narrative.

Options

Use a picture to illustrate the narrative.

Instant Coffee

Open a jar of instant coffee. Put a teaspoon of coffee in a cup. Pour hot water into the cup. Add sugar or milk. Drink the coffee.

What do you open?

Techniques: Communication

RECITATION

Students supply missing information in a series of structured expressions to make statements about themselves.

Procedure

1. Present the recitation with information about yourself.
2. Ask questions about it.
3. Students answer the questions.
4. Students write their own recitations.
5. Students present their recitations.

My name is _____.

I'm from _____.

I'm _____ years old.

I live on _____.

Follow-Up

Make a chart with information from the recitations.

Options

Students ask the questions that will elicit the answers in their recitations.

CHARACTERS

Students create identities for persons in photographs or drawings and present their "characters" to the rest of the class.

Procedure

1. Put biographical categories on the blackboard.
2. Students supply this information about the person in their photo.
3. Students present their characters.

Follow-Up

Students role play encounters between their characters.

Students return periodically to their characters to add information about them.

Options

Students draw pictures of their characters instead of using photographs.



Techniques: Communication Games

The purpose of these techniques is to provide students with opportunities for spontaneous, natural use of language through games.

TWENTY QUESTIONS

Students ask questions of one person to guess the name of a famous person, an animal or an object.

Procedure

1. Give one student a card with a name on it.
2. Students ask this person questions (only those requiring yes-no answers).
3. Give the name to the students if they have not guessed it after twenty questions.

Options

Students ask only ten questions.

Set a time limit for questions (e.g. three minutes).

Students choose the names.

Is it a bucket?

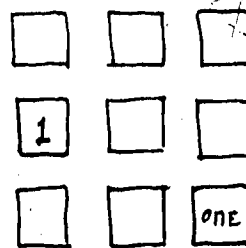


CONCENTRATION

Students compete to match pairs of index cards by remembering their location. The student with the most pairs wins.

Procedure

1. Lay the cards face down in columns and rows.
2. Taking turns, students turn over two cards. If they don't match, students turn them back over.
3. When a match is made, the student removes the cards and takes another turn.



Match!

Options

Students say a sentence with the words when they make a match.

Some matches: pictures with words
numbers with words
parts of a sentence

Techniques: Communication Games

GO FISH

Students play a card game where they ask each other for cards to make pairs. The student who gets the most pairs wins.

Procedure

1. Prepare a set of matching cards.
2. In small groups, students take turns asking each other for cards to match those they have in their hand.
3. When students don't have the cards, they say, "Go fish!"
4. Students take a card from the pile.
5. Continue until all cards have been matched.

Options

- Put pictures on the cards.
- Put phrases or sentences on cards.



CUBES

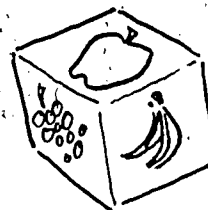
Students throw a cube with pictures on its six sides to cue statements or questions.

Procedure

1. Present the information on the cube.
2. Ask questions about the sides.
3. Students answer the questions.
4. Students throw the cube. One asks and another answers about the side.

Options

- Students throw two cubes, each with different information on its sides.
- Students form teams to ask and answer the questions.



-What do you want?
+ I want an apple.

Techniques: Cultural Exploration

The purpose of these techniques is to give students an opportunity to get information about the culture, to acquire appropriate behavior and to learn about the values that people of the culture hold. They also allow students to make comparisons with their own culture.

ROLE PLAY

Students take on certain roles and act out specific situations that they might encounter in the culture.

Procedure

1. Present the situation.
2. Assign roles to students.
3. Students role play the situation.

Visit to the Doctor.

Follow-Up

- Students comment on the role play.
- Students perform the role play again.

Options

Include appropriate non-verbal behavior (gestures, eye contact, facial expressions, etc.).

Record the role play and write a transcript of what was said.

I'm sick.



OPEN-ENDED STORY

Students offer endings to an unfinished story which describes a situation they might encounter in the culture. They discuss implications of their endings.

Procedure

1. Present the story.
2. Students create endings.
3. Students give their endings.

Follow-Up

Discuss implications of the various endings.

Options

- Use a sequence of pictures for the story.
- Students choose one of four endings.

While Lee is on a coffee break, one of his co-workers borrows his electric saw. He drops it. At the end of the day, Lee finds the saw is broken. What should he do?

Techniques: Cultural Exploration

VALUATION

Students make choices about situations and examine the reasons behind their choices--their values.

Procedure

1. Present the situation.
2. Present the choices.
3. Students choose.
4. Students explain the reasons for their choice.

Follow-Up

Students talk about the sources of their values.

Options

Students compare their choices and their values.

Note

There are no "right" or "wrong" values. The purpose is to allow students to see and compare.

your boss shouts at you for working too slow at your job.

You:

- 1) work faster.
- 2) ignore the boss.
- 3) quit the job.
- 4) shout at the boss.

DEPICTIONS

Students depict their interpretation of an aspect of the culture by making a drawing or by modelling clay.

Procedure

1. Present the topic.
2. Students create their depictions.
3. Students describe what their creations mean.

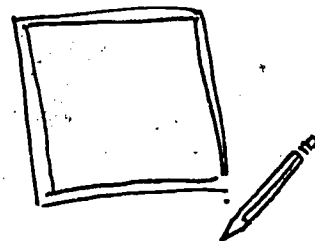
Follow-Up

Students compare their depictions.

Options

Students interpret each others' depictions.

Your job in the U.S.



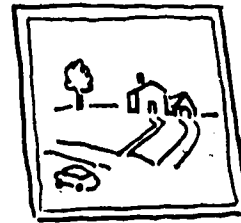
Techniques: Cultural Exploration

PICTURE INTERPRETATION

Students study a photograph of an aspect of life in the culture and they make observations and interpretations about it.

Procedure

1. Present the picture.
2. Students study it.
3. Students make statements about what they see.



Follow-Up

Students compare the aspect with their own culture.

Options

Use slides or video-tapes.

Students bring pictures from their culture and interpret them.

SIMULATION

Set up an environment in class which approximates a situation in the culture. Students play certain roles and carry out prescribed tasks in the simulated environment.

Procedure

1. Give the students roles and tasks.
2. Prepare the setting, the props and materials.
3. Students carry out their tasks.

Follow-Up

Students discuss their observations and reactions.

Options

Use authentic props and materials.

Include roles or tasks which cause conflicts or unexpected situations.

- Restaurant -
Waiter
Customer
Manager
Cashier

Techniques: Cultural Exploration

SONGS

Students learn the words and melodies of songs of the culture and sing them in class.

Procedure

1. Present the song.
2. Students memorize and sing it.

Follow-Up

Present/Elicit information about the culture that is in the lyrics.

Options

Choose songs which feature certain topics.



PROVERBS

Students memorize and interpret proverbs to learn about aspects of the culture.

Procedure

1. Present the proverb.
2. Students memorize it.
3. Students analyze the meaning of the proverb.

Time Is Money.

Follow-Up

Students give proverbs on the same topic from their culture.

Options

Students create dialogues in which they use the proverbs in an appropriate way.

Techniques: Pronunciation

The purpose of these techniques is to help the students master pronunciation.

MINIMAL PAIRS

Students recognize a difference of one sound in two words and pronounce each word correctly.

Procedure

1. Put a list of minimal pairs in a column on the blackboard.
2. Read the words.
3. Students indicate the words they hear.
4. Point to words.
5. Students say them.

pick	peck
did	dead
sit	set
knit	net

Options

Use pictures instead of words.

Number the columns so that students can indicate the sound by saying "one" or "two."

Say two words (sometimes the same word twice, sometimes the minimal pair). Students must say "same" or "different."

ORAL CUES

Students associate pronunciation with noises and other sounds and use these to work on stress, intonation and phrasing.

Procedure

1. Say the sentence.
2. Give the oral cues.
3. Students say the sentence.
4. Repeat oral cues to help them correct errors.

Where are you going?

DAH · dah · dah · DAH · dah ?

Options

Hum or tap on the blackboard instead.

Techniques: Pronunciation

VISUAL CUES

Students associate pronunciation with marks on the blackboard and use these to work on stress, intonation and phrasing.

Procedure

1. Say the sentence.
2. Put cues on the blackboard.
3. Students say the sentence.
4. Point to marks to help them correct errors.

What are you doing?

— — — —

Options

Write the sentence on the blackboard and put marks above the words.

Use the fingers of your hand to represent words and show stress, intonation and phrasing by gestures with the other hand.

Show formation of individual sounds by mouthing them in an exaggerated manner.

SOUND CONTRAST

Students say words that have the same sounds as two words with certain specified sounds.

Procedure

1. Put two key words on the blackboard and underline a sound in each one.
2. Students say words that have these sounds.
3. Write the words under the words they indicate.
4. Students decide if the words are in the correct column.

wind tell

Options

Put the words on index cards for students to group according to similar sounds.

Use stress and intonation patterns.

• / / •
hello morning

DIRECTED REPETITION

Students work on pronunciation by directing the teacher to repeat what they say.

Procedure

1. Individually, students say sentences or words.
2. Repeat what they say.
3. Stop repeating when the student stops.

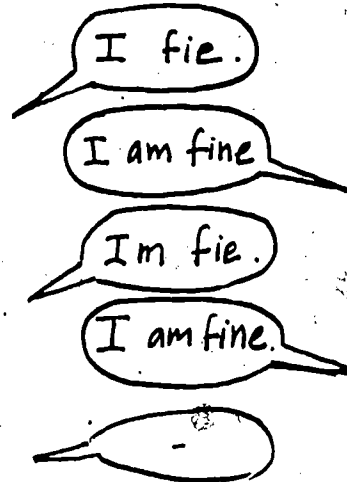
Options

Put a list of words or sentences on the blackboard. Students use these for the exercise.

Limit the amount of time for each student to have you repeat.

Note

It is the student who is directing your repetition. It is important to repeat what they say in correct form, but do not point out errors to the student.



MINIMAL SETS

Students recognize the difference of one sound in a set of words and pronounce each word correctly.

Procedure

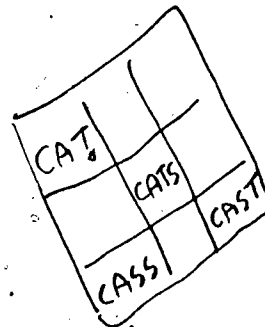
1. Draw a picture to accompany each word.
2. Put each word on a separate card.
3. Say each word while showing the card.
4. Point to the words.
5. Students say them.

Options

Students play Tic Tac Toe by placing the cards in a pocket chart or slot board.

Note

A list of 34 minimal sets appears in Appendix 10.



Techniques: Literacy

The purpose of these techniques is to help students master basic reading and writing.

COPYING

Students write what they see.

Procedure

1. Write a list of words on the blackboard.
2. Students copy the words on paper.

Follow-Up

Students check their work.

Options

Students copy numbers, letters of the alphabet or sentences.

Students copy from printed material.



DICTATION

Students write what they hear.

Procedure

1. Read aloud a list of words, pausing after each one.
2. Students write each word.

Follow-Up

Students check their work.

Options

Read numbers, letters of the alphabet or numbers.

Students read aloud what they wrote.

Students circle words on a prepared handout.



SCRAMBLES

Students arrange index cards labelled with words in a sequence to make sentences.

Procedure

1. Prepare sets of scrambles on index cards or strips of paper.
2. Students re-arrange the cards to make sentences.

Follow-Up

Students exchange sets of scrambles.

Students copy the unscrambled sentences.



Options

Students re-arrange letters to make words.

Students re-arrange sentences to make paragraphs.

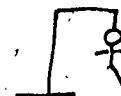
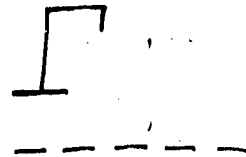
Students make their own scrambles.

HANGMAN

Students say letters to spell words they don't know. For every wrong guess, the student who knows the word draws a part of a stick figure on a "scaffold." If the students make too many wrong guesses, the stick person is "hanged."

Procedure

1. Put the scaffold on the blackboard. Put a row of line for each letter of the word.
2. Students say letters.
3. Write correct guesses on the lines.
4. For each wrong guess, draw a part of the stick person.



Options

Students copy the words.

h a n d e

Techniques: Literacy

TIC TAC TOE

Students compete to put three markers in a row on a grid with words in the squares.

Procedure

1. In pairs, students read aloud the word in the square where they want to put their marker.
2. Students put their marker in that square.
3. The first student to get three in a row wins.

IN	PULL	ON
TURN	DOWN	UP
OFF	PUSH	OUT

Options

Instead of saying the words, students find the matching word from a set of flashcards.

BINGO

Students compete to put markers in a row on a Bingo Card--a grid with numbers and the letters B, I, N, G and O.

Procedure

1. Distribute Bingo Cards and markers to students.
2. From a master list, read aloud letter-number combinations at random.
3. Students put markers on the squares with the appropriate combinations.
4. The first student to put the markers in a row says "Bingo!" and wins.

B	I	N	G	O
16	3	10	12	4
3	8	11	19	2
4	21	6	1	11
5	13	2	16	5
20	6	9	10	8

Follow-Up

Check the winner's combinations.

Options

Put pictures or words in the squares.

Techniques: Assessment

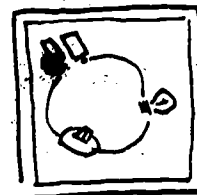
The purpose of these techniques is to help you see what your students know, what they have learned and what they need to learn.

PICTURE DESCRIPTION

Students say as much as they can about a picture.

Procedure

1. Post the picture.
2. Students make statements about the picture.
3. Make notes of students' ability.



Follow-Up

Repeat the exercise periodically to judge students' progress.

Options

Use pictures that feature particular topic areas.

Students write descriptions.

OPEN-ENDED TASK

Students do or say as much as they can in a specified task (a role play or construction project).

Procedure

1. Set the task.
2. Students do the task.
3. Make notes on their work.

Tell me what you see in the room.

Follow-Up

Repeat the task periodically to judge students' progress.

Options

Give students a topic and have them talk about it for two minutes.

For construction tasks, students talk about their actions.

Techniques: Assessment

INTERVIEW

Students respond to a series of questions.

Procedure

1. Prepare a list of questions.
2. Interview individual students.
3. Make notes on their ability.

Follow-Up

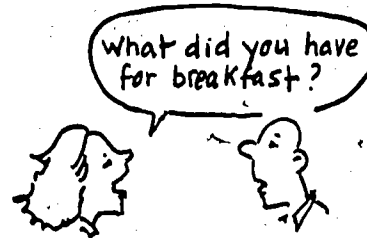
Interview students regularly to judge progress.

Options

Record the interviews and have students listen to them.

Prepare questions that elicit particular grammar points and vocabulary.

Use pictures.



FEEDBACK

Students assess their own learning.

Procedure

1. Ask students to make statements about their own learning.
2. Students reflect and respond.

Follow-Up

Ask students for feedback on a regular basis.

Options

Use a translator.

Ask students to describe their strategies for learning.

Ask students to evaluate your teaching.

Note

Ask for feedback only if you are ready to hear it.

What did you learn today?

Techniques: Assessment

MATCHING

Students match symbols or pictures with words.

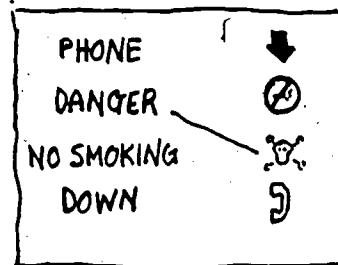
Procedure

1. Prepare a handout with pictures in one column and words in another.
2. Students draw lines to match pictures with the appropriate words.
3. Check students' work.

Options

Students match

- words with their meanings.
- beginnings and ends of sentences.
- questions and answers.



CLOZE

Students write the proper words in the blank spaces in a written passage.

Procedure

1. Prepare a handout of a paragraph with every fifth word missing.
2. Students read the paragraph and write in the missing words.
3. Check students' work.

Options

Use dialogues with missing words.

The drugstore is
on — corner. I
go there — buy
many things. I
— a prescription
from a — to
buy medicine.

Techniques: Assessment

SKITS

Students show what they have learned by working together to create characters and a scenario for a skit, which they perform in class.

Procedure

1. Set the task.
2. Students prepare their skits.
3. Students perform them.
4. Make notes on their work.

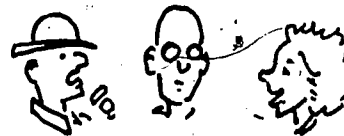
Follow-Up

Students comment on the skits.

Options

Students prepare skits in small groups.

Specify topics or areas that students must incorporate in their skits.



DYADS

Students ask questions to fill in the blank spaces on a written sheet.

Procedure

1. Prepare two diagrams and two question sheets.
2. Each pair of students has the same diagram but different items of information are missing.
3. Students work in pairs to fill in the missing information by asking questions.

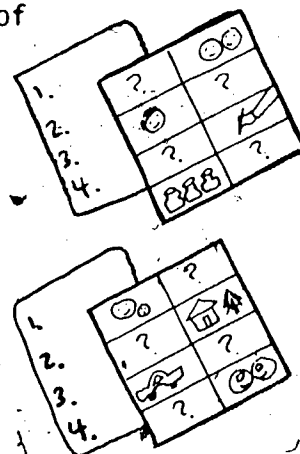
Follow-up

Ask each pair of students to compare their diagrams.

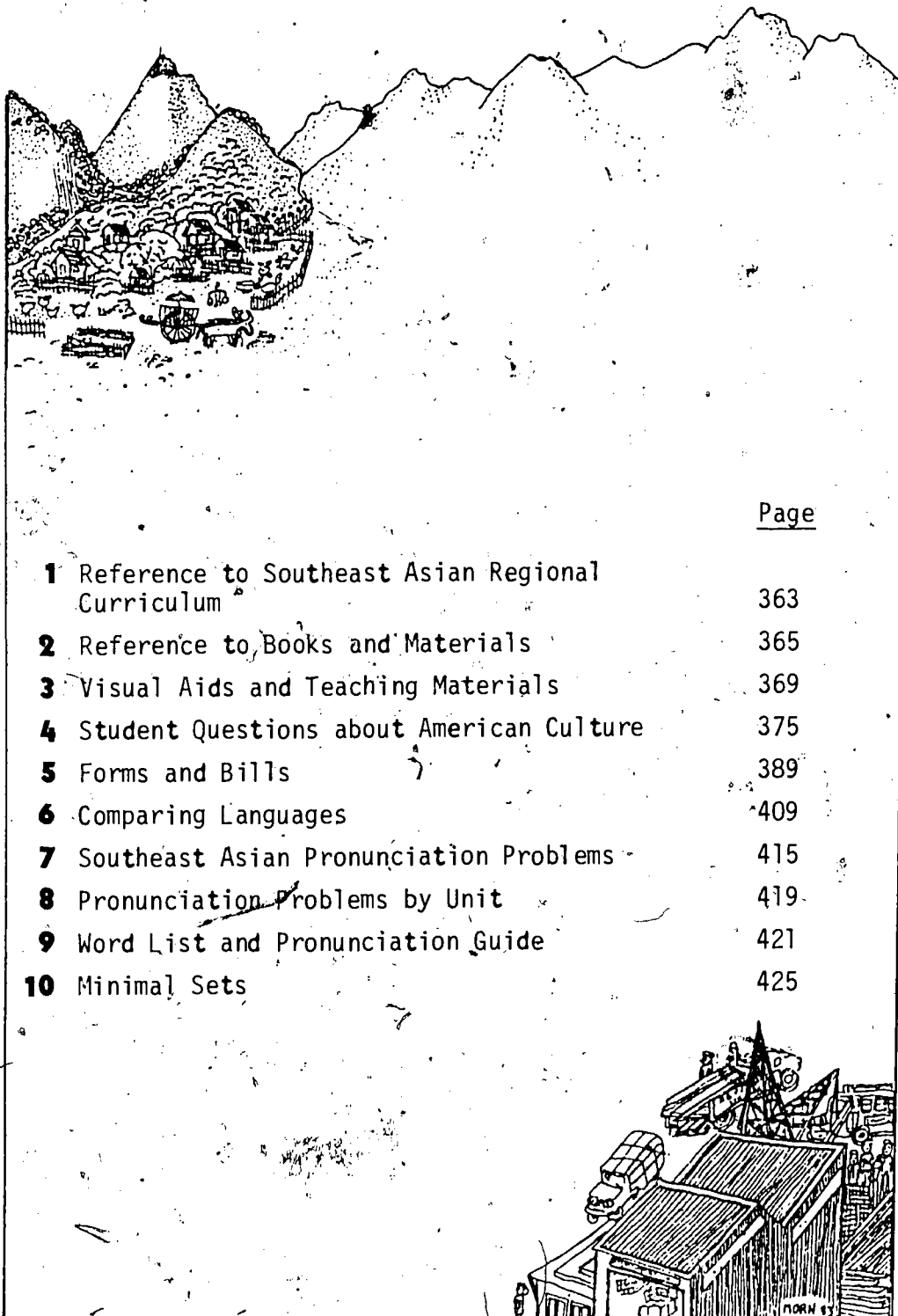
Options

Use pictures or symbols.

Prepare dyad diagrams of streets, schedules, store aisles, cabinets, shelves, refrigerators, etc.

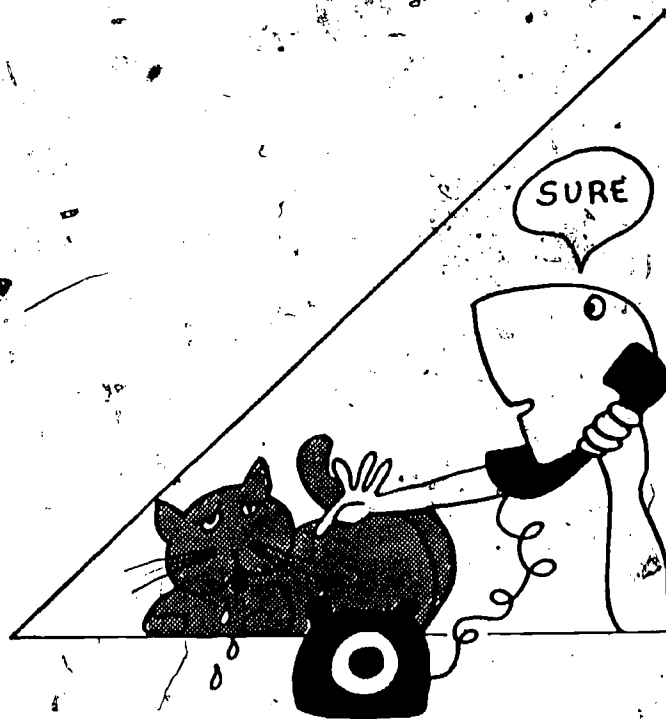


Appendix



	<u>Page</u>
1 Reference to Southeast Asian Regional Curriculum	363
2 Reference to Books and Materials	365
3 Visual Aids and Teaching Materials	369
4 Student Questions about American Culture	375
5 Forms and Bills	389
6 Comparing Languages	409
7 Southeast Asian Pronunciation Problems	415
8 Pronunciation Problems by Unit	419
9 Word List and Pronunciation Guide	421
10 Minimal Sets	425

Appendix



Reference to Southeast Asian Regional Curriculum

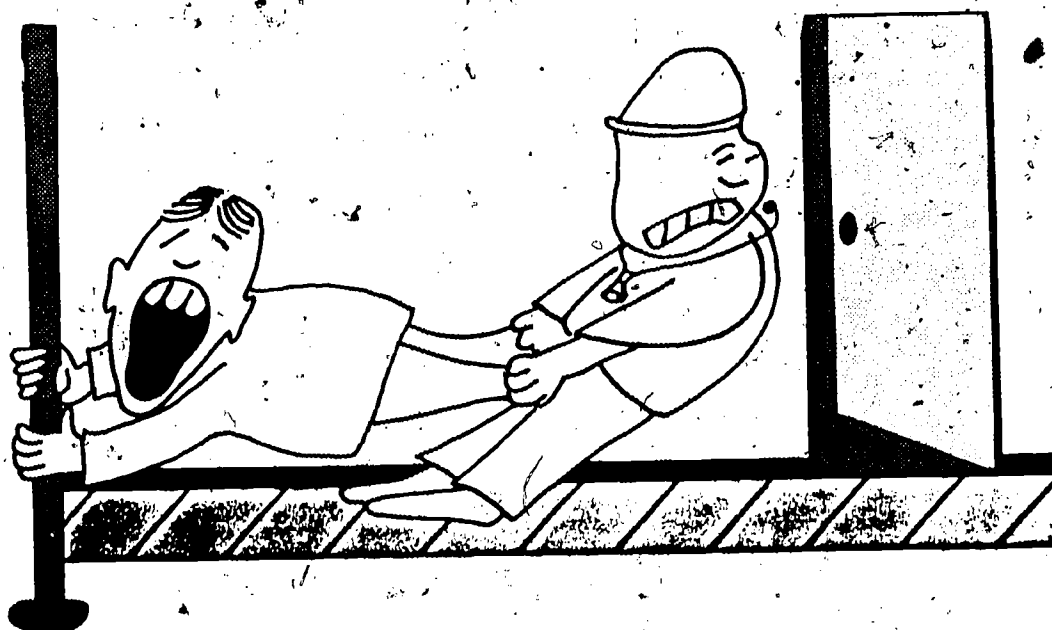
The Southeast Asian Regional ESL Curriculum is divided into 19 units. The Hilltribe curriculum took those units and created a 30 unit format. Topics were reworked and reordered and in a few cases new topics and language were added.

The following shows how/where the Hilltribe curriculum matches the Southeast Asia Regional Curriculum:

Hilltribe Curriculum	SEA Regional Curriculum
UNIT	
1. Greetings/Classroom	Classroom Orientation (1)
2. Language/Nationality	Classroom Orientation (1)
3. Family	Classroom Orientation (1)
4. Food/Clothes/Money	Clothing (2)/Food (4)
5. Medical 1	Health (5)
6. Housing 1	Housing (3)
7. Employment 1	Employment (7)
8. Directions	Transportation/Master List (12)
9. Shopping 1	Food (8)/Clothing (15)
10. Calendar/Telephone	Master List
11. Geography/Weather	(New)
12. Housing 2	Housing (14)
13. Shopping 2	Food (8)/Clothing (15)
14. Appointments	Health (5)/Employment (13)
15. Transportation	Transportation (12)
16. Post Office/School	Post Office (10)/(New)
17. Medical 2	Health (5,11)
18. Drugstore	Health (11)
19. Employment 2	Employment (9)
20. Employment 3	Employment (13)
21. Job Skills	Employment (18)
22. Banking	Banking (16)

Appendix: 1

23. Housing 3	Housing (14)
24. Sponsor	Transit Process (19)
25. Emergencies	Transportation (12)
26. Finances	(New)
27. Social Life	Employment (18)
28. Community/Restaurant	(New)/Food (17)
29. Departure	Transit Process (19)
30. Arrival	Transit Process (19)



Appendix: 2

Reference to Books and Materials

The following books and materials are used as core materials by students in the IESL/CO program in Southeast Asia and are distributed by the Southeast Asia Regional Service Center (SEARSC), Center for Applied Linguistics, Manila, Philippines.

	<u>LEVEL</u>
1. <u>America, In Sight.</u> Ligon, F. Bangkok, Thailand: Experiment in International Living, 1982.	A/B
2. <u>English for Adult Competency, Book One.</u> Keltner, A., Howard, L. and Lee, F. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1981.	D
3. <u>English for Adult Competency, Book Two.</u> Keltner, A., Howard, L., Lee, F. and Bitterlin, G. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1981.	E
4. <u>In Sight.</u> Ligon, F. Bangkok, Thailand: Experiment in International Living, 1982.	A/B
5. <u>Oxford Picture Dictionary.</u> Parnwell, E.C. New York, New York: Oxford University Press, 1978.	D/E
6. <u>Medical Guide and Glossary.</u> Wagner, Christa and Rullo, Janet. Portland, Oregon: Indo-Chinese Language Resource Center, 1978-1980. (English, Khmer, Lao and Vietnamese)	ALL
7. <u>Refugee/Entrant Phrasebooks.</u> Washington, D.C.: Center for Applied Linguistics, 1975-1981. (Chinese, Hmong, Khmer, Lao and Vietnamese)	ALL
8. <u>Side by Side, Book One.</u> Molinsky, S. and Bliss, B. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1980.	D
9. <u>Side by Side, Book Two.</u> Molinsky, S. and Bliss, B. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1981.	E
10. <u>Your New Life.</u> Washington, D.C.: Center for Applied Linguistics, 1981. (Chinese, Hmong, Khmer, Lao and Vietnamese)	ALL
11. <u>You're on Your Way.</u> Bangkok, Thailand. Ford Foundation, 1980. (English, Hmong, Khmer, Lao and Vietnamese)	ALL

Appendix: 2

Additional materials prepared by the Service Center (SEARSC):

	<u>LEVEL</u>
12. <u>Emergency Cards.</u> (Khmer, Vietnamese, Chinese, Lao and Hmong)	ALL
13. <u>Everybody's Talking</u>	A/B/C
14. <u>Handwriting Books 1-5</u>	A/B
15. <u>Number Book 1</u>	A/B
16. <u>Number Book 2: Time</u>	A/B
17. <u>Number Book 3: Money</u>	A/B
18. <u>Poster Visuals</u>	ALL

The following books are widely used by teachers participating in the IESL/CO program in Southeast Asia:

1. Story Squares for Fluency in English as a Second Language. Knowles, P.L. and Sasaki, R.A. New York, New York: Regents, 1980.
2. Communication Starters. Olsen, J. Winn-Bell. San Francisco, California: Alemany Press, 1977.
3. English for a Changing World [cue books and posters]. Wardhaugh, R. and others. Glenview, Illinois: Scott, Foresman and Company, 1976.
4. English Pronunciation Lessons. Manila, Philippines: Center for Applied Linguistics in cooperation with International Catholic Migration Commission, 1983.
5. English That Works, Books 1 and 2. Savage, K.L. and How, M., Lai-shun Yeung, E. Glenview, Illinois: Scott, Foresman and Company, 1982.
6. The ESL Miscellany. Clark, R., Moran P. and Burrows, A. Brattleboro, Vermont: Pro Lingua Associates, 1981.
7. Everybody's Talking - Correctly! Manila, Philippines: Center for Applied Linguistics, 1983.

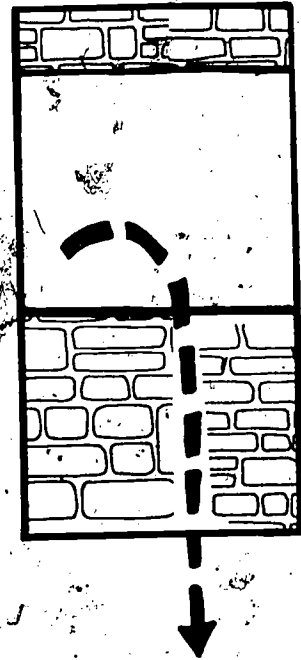
8. Jazz Chants. Graham, C. New York, New York: Oxford University Press, 1978.
9. Language Teaching Techniques. Clarke, R.C. Brattleboro, Vermont: Pro Lingua Associates, 1980.
10. Passage to ESL Literacy. Longfield, D.M. Arlington Heights, Illinois: Delta Systems, Inc., 1981.
11. New Arrivals. Kuntz, L. San Francisco, California: Alemany Press, 1982.
12. A New Start. Mrowicki, L. and Furnborough, P. Exeter, New Hampshire: Heinemann Educational Books, Inc., 1982.

For information about titles unavailable commercially contact:

The Center for Applied Linguistics
3520 Prospect Street
Washington, D.C. N.W. 20007



Appendix: 2



Visual Aids and Teaching Materials

What follows is a list of categories of visual aids and teaching materials that can be used to supplement the lessons. They are listed here to provide a focus and a direction in assembling classroom support materials.

TIME

NUMERACY

MONEY

THE ALPHABET

COLOR

THE TELEPHONE

THE FAMILY

CLOTHING

BUILDINGS AND PLACES

SELF-IDENTIFICATION

FOOD AND RESTAURANTS

HEALTH

EMERGENCIES

OCCUPATIONS

HOUSING

GEOGRAPHY AND POST OFFICE

TRANSPORTATION

MISCELLANEOUS

Appendix: 3

Time

Charts	Cubes	Misc.
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Days of the week 2. Months of the year 3. Months divided by seasons 4. Wearing clothes by seasons 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Time 2. Days of the week 3. Months of the year 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Alarm clock 2. Clock stamp with stamp pad 3. Calendars 4. Digital Clock 5. Class set of small cardboard clocks

Numeracy

Charts	Cubes	Models	Pictures	Misc.
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Number 1-99 2. Number 1-12 3. Number 1-9 4. Calculator chart 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Number 2. 3. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Fractions 2. 3. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Numbers 2. 3. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Flashcards (1-100) 2. Plastic numbers 3. Number jigsaw puzzle 4. Rubber number puzzle

Money

Slips	Cubes	Charts	Misc.
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Deposit 2. Withdrawal 3. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Money 2. 3. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. New Accounts 2. Withdrawal slip 3. Deposit slip 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check samples 2. Real coins (penny, dime, nickel, quarter) 3. Play money (funny money) 4. Check book(s)

Alphabet

Charts	Misc
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Alphabet 2. 3. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Plastic letters 2. ABC capital letter puzzle 3. Wooden letter blocks

Color

Cubes	Charts
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Color 2. 3. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Color 2. Color and number 3.

Appendix: 3

Telephone

Actual Items	Charts	Models	Misc.
1. Telephone book 2. Telephone 3.	1. Dialing rates 2. 3.	1. Telephone 2. Pay telephone 3. Telephone book	1. Intercom 2. 3.

Family

Charts	Pictures	Misc.
1. Family tree 2. 3.	1. Individual family members 2. Groupings	1. Paper dolls 2. 3.

Clothing

Items of clothing	Charts
1. Men's, women's & children's clothing 2. Winter clothes 3. Different patterns and fabric	1. Children's clothing 2. Ads for clothes 3. Kinds of clothing (general) 4. Men's clothing 5. Women's clothing 6. Clothing for boys & men 7. Clothing for girls & women

Buildings and Places

Charts	Models
1. In the office 2. In the city 3. In the supermarket 4. In the drugstore 5. At the gas station 6. In the country 7. In the bank 8. At the police station	1. Fire Station 2. Police Station 3. Hospital

Self-Identification

Charts
1. Driver's License 2. Social Security Card 3. Identification

Appendix: 3

Food and Restaurants

Charts	Food models	Cubes	Misc.
1. American food 2. Menu 3. Ads for drinks 4. Ads for food 5. Ice cream 6. Food on sale	1. Meat 2. Fruit 3. Fish	1. Food 2. 3.	1. Menus 2. 3.

Health

Charts	Cubes	Models	Pictures
1. Ailments 2. A child's daily routine 3. Daily routine (weekday, general, woman's, man's) 4. Head 5. Teeth 6. Eye Parts of body (outside, inside)	1. Emotions 2. Actions 3. Parts of body 4. Parts of head 5. Symptoms 6.	1. Medical kit w/ stethoscope thermometer 2. Stethoscope 3.	1. Daily activities 2. Parts of the body 3. Ailments 4. Emotions 5. Free time activities

Emergencies

Models	Pictures
1. Ambulance 2. Handcuffs 3. Police car	1. Emergency situations 2. 3.

Occupations

Charts	Pictures
1. Job application form 2. Statement of earnings 3. Payroll deductions	1. Common occupations 2. 3.

Housing

Household items	Charts	Cubes	Pictures	Misc.
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Pot w/ cover Pans Dishes Silverware Glasses Baby bottle Cups 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Apartment floor plan Bedroom Living room Kitchen Bathroom The hall Broken utilities Ads for housing Ads for household goods Containers 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Classroom objects Broken utilities Types of housing: Apt., duplex, house, studio, mobile home 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Household objects Tools Broken utilities 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Model house w/ furniture Large paper house plan

Geography and Post Office

Charts	Maps	Misc.
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Stamps Envelope (addressed & unaddressed) Aerogramme U.S. States World flags 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> U.S.A. Asia Southeast Asia Thailand World 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Small globe Large globe U.S. puzzle

Transportation

Charts	Models	Tickets	Misc.
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Bus schedule Flight schedule Train schedule Transportation (by foot, bus, plane, car, train) City maps Bus routes 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Airplane Bus Fire engine Jeep Police car Truck Ambulance 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Bus Train Plane 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Boarding passes Baggage claim tickets

Appendix

Various

1. Rods
2. Commercial Games
3. Bingo
4. Dominoes
5. Markers/tokens (for Tic-Tac-Toe, Bingo, etc.)
6. Dice
7. Spinners (for roulette wheels)
8. Scales (for food, people)
9. Measuring spoons & cups
10. Yardsticks/rulers
11. Tape measures
12. Flannel board
13. Baskets
14. Pocket chart/slot board
15. Comic books
16. Model cash register
17. Hand puppets
18. Marbles (for colors, sorting)
19. Assorted sizes and colors of:
 - pens
 - pencils
 - buttons
 - beans
 - paper
20. Calculator(s)
21. Tape recorder
22. Globe
23. Fare box
24. Abacus
25. Eye chart

Student Questions about American Culture

Students have many questions about American life and culture. Many of their questions can be answered adequately in cultural orientation classes but at times students will go to their ESL teachers for "second opinions" or clarification.

On the following pages you will find the questions about American culture that are most often asked of ESL teachers. The questions are grouped according to topic and possible responses are provided.

The questions and answers are arranged in the following categories:

TELEPHONE
EDUCATION
ORIENTATION
TRANSPORTATION
POST OFFICE
CLOTHING
FAMILY
FOOD
EMPLOYMENT

TELEPHONE

1. WHAT IS THE DEFINITION OF STATION-TO-STATION; PERSON-TO-PERSON; COLLECT; THIRD PARTY BILLING; TOLL FREE; DIRECT DIAL?

A station-to-station call is a call from one person to another. The person calling will speak to anyone who answers the phone.

A person-to-person call is made from one particular individual to another. If the named person is not reached, there will be no charge for the call.

A collect call is made when the person calling does not want to pay for the call. The person being called must agree to accept the charges, however.

Direct dialing means that you can dial a number without the assistance of an operator.

A toll free call is a call that you will not be charged for. Calls to the operator and "800" numbers are toll free.

Appendix: 4

Third party billing occurs when one person calls another, but wants the charges put on another phone bill. Usually this happens when you make a call from phone booth or private residence and want the call's charges to be put on your own phone bill.

2. IS IT POLITE FOR A TELEPHONE CALLER TO ASK "WHO IS SPEAKING" OF THE PERSON ANSWERING THE PHONE?

IS IT POLITE FOR A PERSON ANSWERING THE PHONE TO ASK "WHO IS CALLING?"

It is more polite to ask, "To whom am I speaking, please?"

3. WHEN DO YOU DIAL "0"?

You can dial "0" anytime you need assistance dialing a number. You can also dial "0" for help in emergency situations.

4. CAN YOU PLACE FREE EMERGENCY CALLS FROM A PUBLIC TELEPHONE?

You can place free emergency calls from a public telephone by dialing the operator.

EDUCATION

1. WHAT IS THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN A TECHNICAL SCHOOL, VOCATIONAL SCHOOL, COLLEGE AND UNIVERSITY?

In technical schools, students study a particular discipline: architecture, drafting, engineering, etc. Vocational schools usually give students the skills necessary for specific jobs: carpentry, auto mechanics, welding, etc. Colleges and universities often offer similar courses. A university can have more than one campus and usually has several "faculties." Four years is the usual amount of time needed to get a bachelor's degree at a college or university. Master's degrees may take an additional 1-2 years, and doctorates even longer.

2. WHAT IS THE TYPICAL ANNUAL EXPENSE FOR A PRIVATE COLLEGE OR UNIVERSITY? A PUBLIC UNIVERSITY? A COMMUNITY COLLEGE?

Private universities are usually expensive (approx. \$15,000). Public universities can be considerably cheaper, but it's difficult to generalize about fees. Some institutions have low fees for residents but may increase fees for students from out-of-state. Fees for schools located in different parts of the country vary a lot. Community colleges or junior colleges are the cheapest, but usually offer only a two-year course of study.

3. WHAT ARE SOME MAJOR DIFFERENCES BETWEEN AMERICAN AND OTHER SCHOOL SYSTEMS?

Most schools use the following model or variations of it:

Kindergarten	
First Grade - Sixth Grade	Elementary School
Seventh Grade - Eight Grade	Junior High School
Ninth Grade (Freshman)	High School
Tenth Grade (Sophomore)	"
Eleventh Grade (Junior)	"
Twelfth Grade (Senior)	"

In most schools there are required subjects and options for choosing others. English, history, math, science and physical education are usually required subjects. Art, foreign languages, wood shop, metal shop and typing are examples of optional subjects.

There is no state or government exam that a student must pass at the completion of elementary, junior high or high school. Examinations are given in each class. Students interested in attending college or university might have to take one of the achievement tests used by colleges for judging applicants (ACT, SAT).

ORIENTATION

1. IF SOMEONE IS ASKED TO SPELL HIS NAME, SHOULD HE SPELL HIS COMPLETE NAME OR JUST HIS FIRST OR LAST NAME?

In formal situations, you usually give your full name (ex: John Brown) so you should spell both names. In informal situations, you usually only give your first name (ex: John) so you spell only that. If someone wants you to spell both names he/she might say, "And your last name?" or "Spell your full name, please."

2. WHEN PEOPLE (AMERICANS) ARE INTRODUCED, IS IT NECESSARY TO SHAKE HANDS? HOW DO AMERICANS SHAKE HANDS?

WHO SHOULD BE INTRODUCED FIRST IF WE INTRODUCE OUR FATHER TO OUR TEACHER?

WHO SHOULD BE INTRODUCED FIRST IF WE INTRODUCE A WELL-KNOWN PERSONALITY TO A GOVERNMENT OFFICIAL?

Americans usually shake hands whenever they are introduced. They will often shake hands again when they part. Your hand should not be offered hesitantly. Put out your hand and the other person will take it. Your grip should be strong. Apply slight pressure with your fingers and look in the other person's eyes as you shake hands.

Introductions vary somewhat, but usually you introduce a person to the one you are according the most respect.

Appendix: 4

3. IN WHAT SITUATION DO WE SAY "HOW DO YOU DO?"

"How do you do?" is used for initial greetings only. On following occasions you can say, "How are you?"

"How are you doing?"

"What's up?"

"What's happening?"

"What's going on?"

"Nice to see you."

etc.

4. WHO SHOULD OFFER THE HAND FIRST WHEN BEING INTRODUCED?

Offer your hand when you're being introduced to someone or when you enter a room with the purpose of meeting or talking to someone. Don't wait for the other person to extend a hand first. Put yours out there first.

5. WHAT'S THE MEANING OF "MAIDEN NAME?"

Maiden name is the term used for a woman's original last name. Many women take the last name of their husbands when they marry. If they do, their former last name becomes their maiden name. In recent years, some women prefer to keep their own last names after marriage. In such cases, they do not have maiden names.

6. IS IT COMMON TO INTRODUCE YOURSELF TO SOMEONE YOU DON'T KNOW WHEN YOU WANT TO SPEAK TO HIM OR HER?

It is very common to introduce yourself to someone you don't know. Just put out your hand, smile and introduce yourself.

7. IS IT COMMON TO ASK THESE QUESTIONS: HOW DO YOU DO? HOW OLD ARE YOU? ARE YOU MARRIED?

"How do you do?" is a very common question. "How old are you?" and "Are you married?" are usually asked in interview situations. It's not common to ask these questions of people you have just met. If you need to know, precede your question with "Excuse me for asking but" or "Do you mind if I ask you?"

TRANSPORTATION

1. WILL A BUS STOP ANYWHERE?

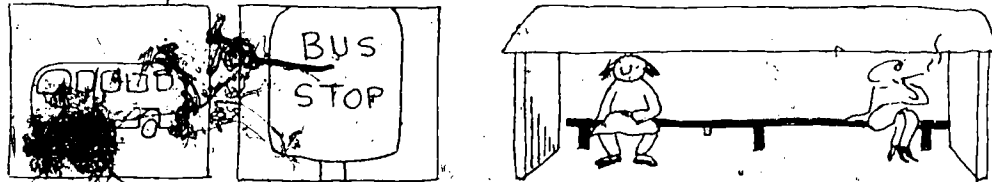
A bus will not stop just anywhere. Most buses stop only at designated bus stops. If your destination is between two bus stops you need to get off at the last stop before or the first stop after it--whichever is closer.

2. CAN PASSENGERS STAND ON A CITY BUS? ON A LONG DISTANCE BUS?

Standing is usually allowed on a city bus. Straps are provided so that passengers will have something to hold on to. Standing is not allowed on long distance buses.

3. WHAT DOES THE SIGN FOR A BUS STOP LOOK LIKE?

Bus stops can be identified by a symbol or the written word.



In addition to signs, some bus stops also have bus shelters or seats.

4. WHAT IS THE LENGTH OF A CITY BLOCK?

A city block is the distance from one intersection to another. This can be very short (a few feet) or very long (several hundred feet). There is no standard length.

5. HOW MANY TIMES CAN YOU USE A TRANSFER?

You can use a transfer only once. When you enter a bus you must surrender your transfer.

6. DO ALL BUSES WITHIN A CITY OFFER TRANSFERS?

Not all city buses offer transfers. Some cities don't use them at all. Others use them only on some routes.

7. FOR HOW LONG IS A ROUND-TRIP TICKET VALID?

A round-trip ticket on a plane is usually good for one year. A round-trip ticket on a train may have a time limit of 1 week, 2 weeks, 1 month, or 1 year. It's wise to ask this question at the time of purchase.

8. WHERE DO YOU BUY LONG DISTANCE BUS TICKETS?

Long distance bus tickets can be purchased directly at the bus station. It is possible to call and reserve a seat in advance, but not always.

9. WHERE DO YOU GET BUS SCHEDULES?

Bus schedules are also available at the bus station. Sometimes they are available at public libraries or in stores served by a city bus route. Sometimes it is also possible to get schedules from the bus driver.

Appendix: 4

10. DO LOCAL BUSES HAVE BUS STATIONS?

Local buses do not have bus stations -- only bus stops, seats and/or bus shelters.

11. WHAT'S THE GESTURE FOR STOPPING A BUS?

If you want to stop a bus you can put up your hand...sometimes waving it. Hand gestures are also accompanied by appropriate body movements -- getting up from your seat, stepping near or off the curb, moving out of the shelter into view, etc.



12. ARE CHILDREN CHARGED FULL FARE FOR A LONG DISTANCE BUS TRIP? A BUS TRIP WITHIN THE CITY?

On local buses many cities offer student fares---sometimes in the form of bus tokens. Long distance buses usually charge less than full fare for children. There might be different fares for those under 2, under 5, under 12 or under 16. It's wise to ask this question at the time of purchase.

13. CAN WE WEAR A HAT ON THE BUS? CAN WE SMOKE? CAN WE EAT LUNCH? CAN WE PLAY MUSIC?

You can wear a hat on the bus. In the winter, people wear hats all the time for warmth. Smoking is not allowed on local buses but there are designated smoking sections on inter-city buses and trains. Eating, drinking and playing music are usually not allowed on local buses.

14. CAN WE PUT \$1.00 IN THE FARE BOX FOR TWO PEOPLE IF THE FARE IS 50¢?

You can usually put dollar bills in a fare box. Some fare boxes are not able to accept them, however. In most cases, the bus driver will not be able to give you change for a bill.

POST OFFICE

1. DO YOU NEED TO SHOW THE CONTENTS OF A PARCEL BEFORE MAILING IT?

No. Usually, you will be asked to declare what is in the parcel and estimate it's value.

2. DOES EVERY CITY HAVE A ZIP CODE? DO SOME CITIES HAVE MORE THAN ONE?

Zip codes are allocated according to the size of population in given areas. A sparsely populated state might only have one or two zip codes, but a city with a large population can have several. New York City, for example, has more zip codes than some states.

3. IS A ZIP CODE ALWAYS FIVE NUMBERS?

Yes. There have been proposals to increase the number of digits to 7 or 9. That may happen in the future. Zip codes now are all 5 digits.

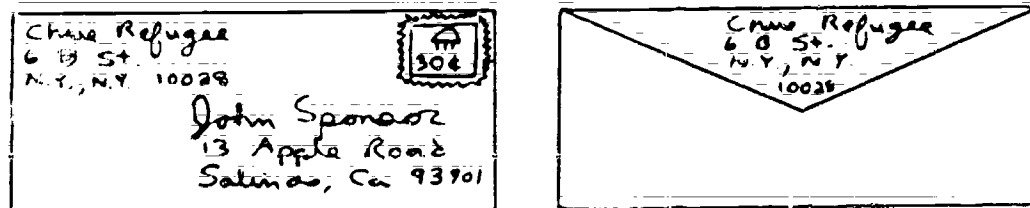
4. ARE STAMPS IN ONE STATE GOOD IN ANOTHER STATE?

Stamps are issued by the U.S. government not by state governments. The stamp you buy in Utah is the same stamp being sold and used in Rhode Island.

5. IF ALL LETTERS SENT WITHIN THE U.S. ARE SENT BY AIRMAIL, WHY NOT USE AEROGRAMMES?

Some countries do have domestic aerogrammes. The U.S. does not. The main disadvantage of using an aerogramme is that it cannot contain any enclosure. A letter sent airmail can.

6. WHAT IS THE STANDARD ADDRESS FORMAT?



Sometimes the sender puts the return address on the back of the envelope.

7. HOW SHOULD I SEND IMPORTANT DOCUMENTS?

Anything of real value should be registered and/or insured. This costs more than the usual rate but you obtain a receipt that you can use in tracing your packet if it is lost. If you want to be notified when your packet is received, you can request that it be sent Return Receipt Requested. When your packet is received, a form will be signed and sent back to you.

8. IS THERE A MAXIMUM AMOUNT OF MONEY YOU CAN SPEND WHEN BUYING A MONEY ORDER?

Yes, there may be. Check with the post office or bank at the time of purchase. You may have to purchase two money orders instead of one.

Appendix: 4

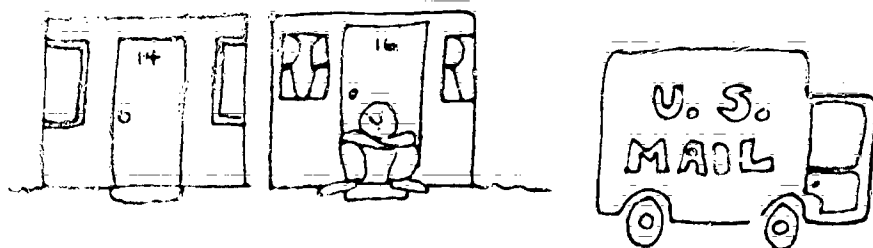
9. WHAT HAPPENS WHEN THERE ARE TWO PEOPLE WITH THE SAME NAME AND ADDRESS?

It is possible that two people in the same area will have the same first and last names. When this happens people often use their middle name or initial to further identify themselves. Addresses in a city are not repeated, however, so it's not likely that two people would share the same name and address. In communication with banks, employers or other officials, your social security number serves as an unofficial identification number.



10. WHAT IS A CHANGE OF ADDRESS FORM?
WHY IS IT IMPORTANT TO FILL ONE OUT?

If you change addresses, the post office has no idea where to send your mail unless you tell them. You tell them by filling out a change of address form. Many people lose money and contact with friends when they fail to do so.



CLOTHING

1. WHAT DO PEOPLE WEAR WHEN THEY GET MARRIED?

If people get married in a civil ceremony or by a justice of the peace, they probably wear "everyday" clothes. Some weddings are held in parks, at the beach or in someone's home. People attending such weddings may dress informally. Large church weddings usually require more formal dress. The bride wears a long white gown with a veil covering the head. The groom wears a formal black or white suit with a tie. Other people in the wedding party wear matching suits and gowns.

2. WHAT CLOTHING DO DOCTORS WEAR?

Doctors usually wear white when they work in offices or clinics. You will occasionally see doctors wearing green in hospitals. The basic "uniform" is usually a pair of thin white pants and a fairly loose-fitting white shirt or smock. Nurses, lab technicians and

receptionists often wear white uniforms also.

3. WHAT CLOTHING DO AMERICANS WEAR IN THE SUMMER? IN THE FALL? IN THE WINTER?

Americans generally wear clothes for comfort and with a consideration for the weather. Jeans, T-shirts and tennis shoes can be seen at almost any time of the year.

In the summer, men and women often wear shorts and sandals or thongs. In the fall, people may have to wear sweaters or light jackets. Winter clothes include: a hat, scarf, sweater, jacket/coat, vest, gloves, long underwear, heavy socks and boots.

4. CAN EVERYTHING IN THE CLOTHING STORE BE TRIED ON?

Usually dresses, skirts, blouses, shirts, pants and jackets can be tried on in the fitting room. Underwear and socks cannot be tried on. Customers need to know the size of their waists and shoes in order to buy these items. If you don't know your measurements, the sales clerk will measure you to find out the correct size needed.

5. DO REFUGEES GET CLOTHES WHEN THEY ARRIVE IN THE U.S.?

They often receive clothes on arrival. This is especially true on arrival during winter months.

6. CAN YOU RETURN CLOTHES IF THEY DON'T FIT?

Usually you can return clothes if you do not wait too long and if you have a receipt of purchase. Sometimes items that are bought ON SALE cannot be returned. Some stores post signs that say NO EXCHANGES, NO RETURN or NO REFUND. It's a good idea to ask the sales clerk about this at the time of purchase.

7. ARE ASIAN AND AMERICAN SIZE SYSTEMS THE SAME?

No. The following chart shows the correlation between American and Asian sizes
(Shoe sizes only):

MEN'S SHOES		WOMEN'S SHOES	
U.S.	ASIA	U.S.	ASIA
7 - 7½	40 - 41	4½ - 5	36 - 37
8 - 8½	41 - 42	5½ - 6	37 - 38

FAMILY

1. WHAT DO AMERICANS CALL THE FATHER OF A DAUGHTER-IN-LAW?

The only terms that Americans use for in-laws are father-in-law, sister-in-law, mother-in-law, brother-in-law, daughter-in-law and son-in-law. There is no specific term for the parents of an in-law.

Appendix: 4

2. WHAT SHOULD MY WIFE'S BROTHER OR SISTER CALL MY MOTHER OR FATHER?

Since there is no specific term like aunt or uncle, your wife's relatives can call them Mr. and Mrs. _____. If your mother and father wish they can suggest that they be called by their first names only.

3. WHAT RELATIONS ARE CONSIDERED PART OF THE AMERICAN FAMILY?

The basic unit of the American family is mother, father, child(ren). Grandparents are not normally considered part of the immediate family. This is also true of aunts, uncles and cousins.

4. DO AMERICANS FEEL CLOSE TO THEIR RELATIVES? DO THEY LIVE CLOSE TO THEIR RELATIVES?

Most Americans do feel close to their family, but they may express their affection and respect differently than people in other societies. Americans often display independence, familiarity and informality in a family setting and this can lead to the perception that they lack respect or don't feel close to their families. Americans usually live separately from their families-- often far away.

5. DO RELATIVES IN AMERICA HELP EACH OTHER WITH THEIR PROBLEMS? DO THEY GIVE EACH OTHER MONEY?

Americans do offer help if it is needed or requested. Some people may refuse help, however, preferring to work problems out "on their own."

FOOD

1. WHAT DO AMERICANS TYPICALLY EAT FOR BREAKFAST, LUNCH AND DINNER?

Americans eat a wide variety of foods. Meals vary from day to day and week to week. It's very difficult to generalize about American eating habits. Here are a few of the more common foods:

Breakfast: cereal, mush, grits, oatmeal, eggs, bacon, ham, sausage, pancakes, waffles, french toast, coffee, tea, juice, milk.

Lunch: sandwiches (ham, cheese, BLT, peanut butter & jelly), soup (tomato, onion, noodle, asparagus, mushroom), hamburger, hot dog.

Dinner: chicken, steak, fish, potatoes, rice, vegetables, pizza, spaghetti (& other Italian food), tacos (& other Mexican food) chow mein (& other oriental dishes), beans, macaroni, fruit.

2. AT WHAT HOURS DO AMERICANS TYPICALLY EAT THEIR MEALS? FOR HOW LONG?

"Traditional" times for breakfast are between 6 - 8 a.m., lunch 12 - 1 and dinner between 6 - 8 p.m. Families may eat at different times, however, to accomodate work or school schedules. Some families have "sit down" meals together. Others eat separately when they can find the time. Some families eat their food as quickly as possible and then separate to perform individual tasks. Other families use meal times for socializing and "catching up" on news. There's probably no "typical" style of family eating.

3. IS IT EASY OR DIFFICULT FOR REFUGEES TO FIND THEIR OWN KIND OF FOOD IN THE U.S.?

It is relatively easy in larger towns and cities--more difficult in smaller towns and rurals areas. Some tropical fruits and vegetables are common in U.S. diets as well -- coconuts, pineapple. Fish paste, rice flour, etc. are available because of large refugee communities already there.

4. DO REFUGEES BUY THEIR OWN FOOD WHEN THEY ARRIVE IN THE U.S.?

There may be an initial gift of food from a sponsor or neighbors, but for the most part refugees are expected to buy their own food.

5. HOW AND WHERE DO YOU GET FOOD COUPONS?

You can find coupons in many newspapers and magazines. They are occasionally sent through the mail also.

6. DO ALL THINGS IN THE SUPERMARKET HAVE FIXED PRICES?

Yes. There is no bargaining in U.S. supermarkets and grocery stores.

7. WHAT IS THE PROPER WAY TO ARRANGE SILVERWARE ON THE TABLE?

Usually the knife goes to the right of the plate and the spoon to the right of the knife. The fork goes to the left of the plate.

8. IN A RESTAURANT, WHERE SHOULD YOU PAY?

In some "family" restaurants and coffee shops the customer pays the cashier when leaving. In fast food restaurants, you pay at the time of service. In other restaurants, the waiter/waitress will bring a bill to the table.

9. IS IT POLITE TO ASK FOR A RECIPE FROM A RESTAURANT?

It's not impolite but a restaurant may not want to give you their recipe.

Appendix: 4

10. IF YOU ARE INVITED TO A RESTAURANT, SHOULD YOU EXPECT THE PERSON INVITING TO PAY?

Not necessarily. "Do you want to go to dinner?" is not the same as "Do you want me to buy you dinner?"

EMPLOYMENT

1. IS IT DIFFICULT TO FIND A JOB IN THE U.S. IF YOU ARE UNSKILLED?

It can be very difficult whether you are skilled or unskilled. There are a number of entry-level jobs which offer some hope for the unskilled job-seeker.

2. WHERE CAN WE SEEK ASSISTANCE IN FINDING A JOB?

Friends and family may hear about a job and tell you. Many jobs are advertised in the local newspaper. In addition, volunteer services can provide useful contacts.

3. WHAT DOCUMENTS ARE NECESSARY WHEN LOOKING FOR A JOB?

When you go to look for a job it's a good idea to take your I-94 and social security card.

4. IS IT POSSIBLE TO BE PAID DURING VACATION?

Most jobs offer paid holidays each year (2 weeks, 4 weeks or more depending on the job).

5. ARE "HOUSEWIFE" AND "STUDENT" CONSIDERED JOBS?

A housewife or homemaker definitely has a job though an unpaid one. A student is not technically "working."

6. WHAT IS THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN AN OCCUPATION AND A JOB?

Sometimes they are used to mean the same thing, but occupation usually means working in a particular field over a period of time.

7. CAN A REFUGEE BECOME A SOLDIER?

Refugees can become soldiers in the U.S. military service when they become permanent residents.

8. WHAT ARE THE MOST COMMON JOBS FOR REFUGEES IN THE U.S.?

1. busboy/girl
2. dishwasher
3. waiter/waitress
4. factory worker
5. janitor/custodian
6. farmhand
7. fisherman/fisherwoman
8. clerical/office worker
9. gas station attendant
10. security guard.

9. WHY DO REFUGEES HAVE TO START THEIR JOBS AT THE BOTTOM?

Refugees arrive without much English or awareness of American attitudes and culture. They have no contacts and in many cases--no credentials. Until a refugee establishes himself/herself, it is difficult to move out of entry-level jobs.

10. WHAT ARE SOME TYPICAL AMERICAN ATTITUDES TOWARD WORK?

Americans value:

- initiative
- volunteerism
- enthusiasm/interest
- being on time
- fair play

11. CAN A REFUGEE WORK FOR THE GOVERNMENT?

Yes, but they cannot hold elected positions.

12. WHAT ARE THE TIMES FOR DAY SHIFT, NIGHT SHIFT AND GRAVEYARD?

9 a.m. - 5 p.m. or 8 a.m. - 7 p.m. (Day shift)
4 p.m. - 12 midnight or 3 p.m. - 11 p.m. (Night shift)
12 midnight - 7 a.m. or 12 midnight - 8 a.m. (Graveyard)

Times vary from company to company, however.

13. CAN A WORKER USE THE WEATHER AS A REASON FOR BEING LATE?

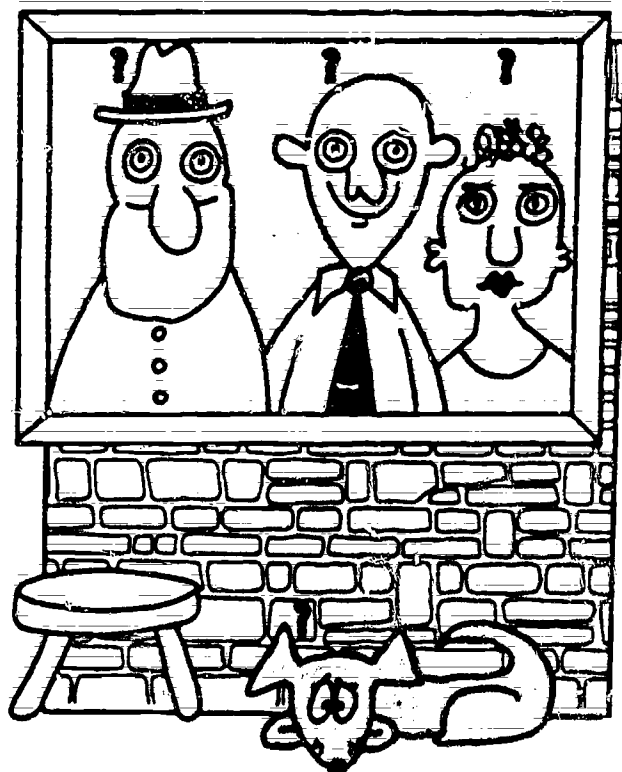
Not if everybody else made it to work except you. Heavy rain or snow storms are often accepted as valid excuses if the problem is general and not specific to you.

14. IF A WORKER WANTS TO MEET FAMILY MEMBERS AT THE AIRPORT WHAT SHOULD HE/SHE DO?

Inform the boss in advance. The boss may be understanding and agree to your absence. You might offer to make up the time missed. In some cases you may not be allowed to go.

Appendix: 4

OTHER QUESTIONS:



Forms and Bills

This section contains sample forms that you can copy for classroom use.
They are not real forms.

EMPLOYMENT

1. Social Security Application Form
Social Security Card
2. I-94 Form
3. Personal Identification Form
4. Application Form
5. Application For Employment
6. Sample Resume
7. Employee Contract

HOUSING

8. Renter's Agreement

BANKING

9. Bank Account Application Form
Checking Account Statement
Savings Account Pass Book
10. Deposit Form
Withdrawal Form
11. Money Orders

BILLS

12. Telephone Bill
13. Water Bill
14. Electric Bill
15. Gas Bill
16. Medical Bill

HEALTH

17. Application For Medical Insurance Form
18. Prescription
Drug Labels
Medical Record Card

POST OFFICE

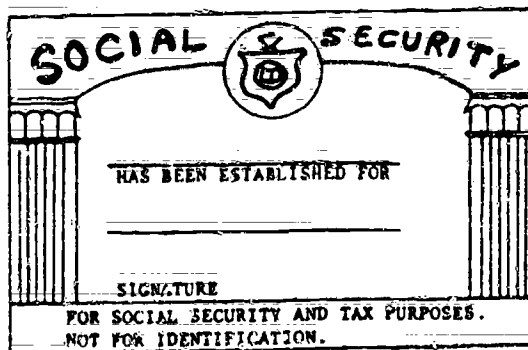
19. Change of Address Order
20. Registration Form
Parcel Post Customs Declaration

Appendix: 5

SOCIAL SECURITY

ID	CN	DO
APPLICATION FOR A SOCIAL SECURITY NUMBER B79		
1	PRINT FULL NAME First Name Middle Name Last Name YOU WILL USE IN WORK OR BUSINESS	
2	Print FULL NAME GIVEN YOU AT BIRTH	6
3	PLACE CITY COUNTRY STATE OF BIRTH	7
4	MOTHER'S FULL NAME AT HER BIRTH	8
5	FATHER'S FULL NAME	9
HAVE YOU EVER BEFORE APPLIED FOR OR HAD A UNITED STATES SOCIAL NO DON'T YES SECURITY RAILROAD OR TAX KNOW ACCOUNT NUMBER? <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>		YOUR DATE OF BIRTH YOUR PRESENT AGE YOUR SEX MALE FEMALE <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> YOUR COLOR OR RACE WHITE NEGRO OTHER <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
10	(CITY) (STATE) (ZIP CODE)	
11	YOUR MAILING ADDRESS	
12	TODAY'S DATE	14
13	TELEPHONE NUMBER	NOTICE Sign YOUR NAME HERE. Do not print.

Return completed applica-
tion to nearest SOCIAL
SECURITY ADMINISTRATION
OFFICE



I-94 FORM

Family Name (Capital Letters) First Name Middle Initial		
Country of Citizenship	Passport or Alien Registration Number	
United States Address (Number, Street, City and State)		
Airline and Flight No. or Vessel on Arrival	Passenger Boarded at	
Number, Street, City, Province (State) and Country of Permanent Residence		
Month, Day and Year of Birth	PAROLED pursuant to SEC. 212 (d) (5) OF THE I & N ACT TO:	
City, Province (State) and Country of Birth	Purpose:	
	ALRP CAT-IV (T-18375)	
Visa issued at VISAS FALCON CLEARED	EMPLOYMENT AUTHORIZED	
STAPLE HERE	Month, Date and Year Visa issued	(port) (date) (officer)

Personal Identification Form

Date _____

1. Name: Mr. Mrs. Miss first middle initial last
2. MARITAL STATUS: single married separated divorced
widowed
3. Spouse's name in full _____
4. DATE OF BIRTH month day year age sex weight
height
5. Place of birth _____
6. Social security number _____
7. Street address _____
8. City _____ County _____ State _____
9. Zip code _____
10. Permanent address is different from above _____

11. How long have you lived at your present address? _____
12. Telephone (____) _____
area code number
13. Number of children _____
Name Age Sex
14. Other dependents
Name Relationship Age Sex
15. Have you ever been arrested (other than a traffic violation)?
16. In case of emergency notify _____ telephone _____
relationship _____
17. Have you ever served in the armed forces? _____
If so when? _____
18. Last year of education completed? _____
19. Any additional information you may add here:
20. I _____ hereby swear that all of the above
(signature in full)
information is correct.

APPLICATION FORM

DATE _____

POSITION _____

NAME _____
(LAST) (FIRST)

SEX M ☐
F ☐

SOCIAL SECURITY NUMBER _____

AGE _____ BIRTHDATE _____
(MONTH/DAY/YEAR)

BIRTHPLACE _____

MARITAL STATUS

MARRIED ☐

SINGLE ☐

WIDOWED ☐

ADDRESS _____

PREVIOUS JOB _____

EDUCATION _____

(SIGNATURE)

Appendix: 5

APPLICATION FOR EMPLOYMENT

DATE _____

PERSONAL INFORMATION

NAME _____ PHONE: _____

PERMANENT ADDRESS _____ CITY _____ STATE _____

ZIP _____

How long immediately preceding this date have you lived in this country? _____

Date of Birth _____ Social Security No. _____ U.S. Citizen: Yes ___ No ___

Height _____ Weight _____ Color of hair _____ Color of eyes _____

Married ___ Single ___ Widowed ___ Divorced ___ Separated ___

If married, spouse is employed by: _____ City _____

Number of Children _____ Dependents other than wife or children _____

In case of accident, notify _____ Address _____ Phone _____

Relatives in our employ (state name & department) _____

Referred by _____

EMPLOYMENT DESIRED

Position _____ Date you can start _____ Salary desired _____

Are you employed now? _____ If so, may we inquire of your present employer? _____

Applied to this company before? _____ Where? _____ When? _____

EDUCATION

Name & Location/Years Graduated (date)/Subjects Studied

Grammar School _____/_____/_____

High School _____/_____/_____

College _____/_____/_____

Trade, Business _____/_____/_____

or Correspondence School _____

Subject of special study or research work _____

What foreign language do you speak fluently? _____ Read _____?

Write _____?

Sample Resume

Boondong Sanouvong
1234 Main Street
Midvale, Oregon 92307
Telephone: (503) 323-4567

Residency Status Admitted to the United States in accordance with the Refugee Act of 1980, on March 30, 1981. No restriction on employment.

Education Participated in UNHCR intensive English as a Second Language and Cultural Orientation Training Project, Panat Nikom Refugee Camp, Thailand. January through March, 1981.

 Nine months infantry training, Savannakhet, Laos, 1970.

 Completed requirements for elementary level Course Superior Certificate, grades 1-6, Savannakhet School, Savannakhet, Laos, 1962.

Employment/Experience

1975 - 81 Fled Laos after collapse of national government for fear of persecution due to past military association. Entered refugee camp in Thailand. Admitted to U.S. resettlement program.

1970 - 75 Special Guerilla Unit (SGU) Irregular Army Infantry, Military Region IV, Laos. Responsible for camp maintenance. Participated in limited combat actions.

1962 - 70 Rice Farming, Savannakhet Province, Laos. Responsible for planting, harvesting and care of farm animals. Participated in various seeding experiments under the supervision of the local national agricultural office.

Personal Data Birthdate: February 13, 1950.
 Nationality: Lao.
 Family: Married, three children.

Reference John Sponsor
678 Central Avenue
Mill City, Oregon 97306
Telephone: (503) 987-6543

Appendix: 5

BUTTONS GARMENT COMPANY

EMPLOYEE CONTRACT

1. The working day is from 8 A.M. to 5 P.M. Employees are expected to be ready for work at 8 A.M. All employees should sign in upon arrival and sign out at 5 P.M.
2. Lunch break is 45 minutes. Employees should check with their supervisor. There are two 10-minute coffee breaks, one in the morning and one in the afternoon. Employees should check with their supervisor before taking a coffee break.
3. After working with the company for 1 year, employees will be given a paid vacation of 10 days (working days). Vacations must be scheduled 6 weeks in advance. Vacation times are approved by the supervisor.
4. Buttons Garment Company is a union company. The union is the National Federation of Garment Workers. The union dues are \$8 per month. This money is subtracted from the employee's paycheck. The amount is recorded on the check stubs.
5. When an employee is sick and unable to come to work, he/she will receive pay up to 10 sick days per year. Employees who cannot come to work must give notice to the supervisor. Notice of sickness must be given before 7 A.M. or earlier, if possible. The supervisor may ask for a doctor's notice after an employee is absent for sickness.
6. The work week is Monday through Friday, 40 hours per week. The starting pay is \$3.50 per hour. Overtime is optional. An employee who agrees to work overtime will be paid at 1½ time the hourly rate. Increases in the hourly rate are granted after 6 months, 1 year, 2 years, according to agreement with the union.
7. Employees must give 2 weeks' notice when leaving employment. Notice should be given to the supervisor in writing.
8. The company belongs to the Blue Cross health insurance plan. Employees may join the group health insurance for \$17.00 per month. Employees who join the health insurance plan will have the amount subtracted from their paycheck. The amount is recorded on the check stub.
9. Employees are offered a 20% discount on all Buttons Garment Company products.

If you agree with the terms of the contract, please sign below.

(Signature)

(Date)

ACME RENTAL COMPANY

Renter's Agreement

1. Rent is payable on the first of each month.
Rent is paid in advance.
A security deposit equal to one month's rent must be paid in the beginning.
Security will be returned when the renter leaves provided the renter does not break the agreement.
 2. The renter is responsible for keeping the apartment clean.
Trash must be disposed of properly.
No oil or solid foods may be put down the sink.
The company will make repairs of toilets and sinks unless misused.
No pets (animals) are allowed in the apartment.
 3. The renter is responsible for the control of his/her children.
The renter must not make loud noises and must respect quiet hours after 11 P.M.
 4. The apartment is rented only to the number of people specified in the agreement.
The company must agree to accept any other people living in the apartment.
Occasional overnight guests are welcome to stay.
 5. The company asks the renter not to smoke in bed.
The company will clean carpets before the renter occupies the apartment.
The renter will pay for damages done on or in the apartment.
Normal wear and tear of apartment is not considered damage.
 6. The renter must pay electric and telephone bills.
The company pays heat, water, and garbage-collection bills.
 7. The renter must give 30-days notice in writing before moving from the apartment.
 8. If the renter has a problem or question, he/she should telephone Business Office: 877-3547
- If you agree to the terms of this Renter's Agreement, please sign below and return one copy to the renting agent. Thank you.

Date

Signature

Appendix: 5

BANK ACCOUNT APPLICATION FORM	
NAME	_____ LAST FIRST
ADDRESS	_____ _____
TELEPHONE NUMBER	_____
I D NUMBER	_____
ACCOUNT TYPE	_____ CHECKING SAVING
ACCOUNT NUMBER	_____
SPECIMEN SIGNATURE	_____


CHECKING ACCOUNT STATEMENT					
ACCOUNT NAME	_____			ACCOUNT NO.	_____
MONTH	_____				
DATE	DEPOSIT	WITHDRAW	INTEREST	BALANCE	
CASHIER'S SIGNATURE _____					

SAVING ACCOUNT					PASS-BOOK
ACCOUNT NAME	_____			ACCOUNT NO.	_____
DATE	DEPOSIT	WITHDRAW	INTEREST	BALANCE	CASHIER'S SIGNATURE

DEPOSIT FORM

Regular Savings		
SAVINGS DEPOSIT		
RAINIER NATIONAL BANK		
Office _____	Date _____	
Signature For Cash Received _____		
List checks by Bank number	Dollars	Cents
Currency		
Coin		
Checks		
Subtotal from reverse		
Less Cash		
Total Deposit	\$	
5210 0000 0670096685		

WITHDRAWAL FORM

 FIRST BANK		SAVINGS WITHDRAWAL														
NAME _____	DATE _____ 19__															
	AMOUNT WITHDRAWN _____															
	DOLLARS _____															
This Order For Counter Use.																
Retain this receipt until your statement is received and reconciled.																
<table border="1"> <tr> <th colspan="2">FOR BANK USE ONLY</th> </tr> <tr> <th colspan="2">TRANSFER TO SAVINGS</th> </tr> <tr> <td>BANK</td> <td>ACCOUNT NUMBER</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"> <input type="checkbox"/> Deposit To Checking Account </td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"> <input type="checkbox"/> Check Number _____ </td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"> <input type="checkbox"/> Cash </td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 100px; height: 20px;"></div> </td> </tr> </table>			FOR BANK USE ONLY		TRANSFER TO SAVINGS		BANK	ACCOUNT NUMBER	<input type="checkbox"/> Deposit To Checking Account		<input type="checkbox"/> Check Number _____		<input type="checkbox"/> Cash		<div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 100px; height: 20px;"></div>	
FOR BANK USE ONLY																
TRANSFER TO SAVINGS																
BANK	ACCOUNT NUMBER															
<input type="checkbox"/> Deposit To Checking Account																
<input type="checkbox"/> Check Number _____																
<input type="checkbox"/> Cash																
<div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 100px; height: 20px;"></div>																

Appendix: 5

MONEY ORDERS

Personal Money Order			
ISSUING LOCATION _____	No. 8580346		
Pay _____	NBC	DOL 'S	CTS _____ 19__
PAYABLE IN U.S. DOLLARS ONLY. NOT TO EXCEED \$500.00			
TO THE ORDER OF	NAME _____	SIGNATURE OF PURCHASER _____	
	ADDRESS _____	ADDRESS _____	
	_____	_____	
Elma Bank Ockalo, ILLINOIS			

Money Order	United States Postal Money Order			
	25388400216	800411	053010	** *
		PAY TO: _____		
	PURCHASED BY: _____			

Samples of these common household bills are listed below:

Telephone bill
Water bill
Electric bill
Gas bill
Medical statement

TELEPHONE BILL

GENERAL TELEPHONE COMPANY				
SAESSOM SOKHOM 23 Bank St. Durham, NC 27707			Account No. 484-0142 Period covering Apr. 20th-May 20th Date Due - June 1st	
<u>DATE</u>	<u>CALL TO</u>	<u>TELEPHONE NO</u>	<u>CALL FROM</u>	<u>MIN</u>
----- LOCAL CALLS -----				14.70
Apr. 21	Wilmington	919-099-6800	Durham	9 2.05
Apr. 22	Myrtle Beach	803-440-3708	Durham	4 1.75
May 5	Chicago	312-208-4474	Durham	3 3.20
May 17	Los Angeles	502-888-7261	Durham	25 17.90
May 18	Myrtle Beach	803-440-3708	Durham	2 .80
----- INSTALLATION -----				
				Penalty \$00.00
				Charges \$40.40
				Amount Due \$40.40

Appendix: 5

WATER BILL

CITY WATER CO.
20 CENTER PLAZA

FINANCE DEPT.
PHONE 834-4080

B. Monthly billing for water standby collection and disposal

METER CHARGES	WATER USED NO. OF CU. FT.	AMOUNT
PRESENT	23	9.66
927		
PREVIOUS		
904		
PRESENT		
PREVIOUS		1.00
PREVIOUS BALANCE		5 98

SERVICE NO.	ACCOUNT NUMBER	AMOUNT NOW DUE
0623	8581480	16.64

719695

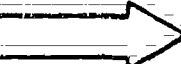
Mailing Date

35652

07 - 02 - 10



10% PENALTY IF UNPAID 30 DAYS AFTER

ELECTRIC BILL

SERVICE ADDRESS CHHOET HONENG 61 MAIN STREET SANTA ANA CA 92706				KEEP PORTION FOR YOUR RECORDS	
				FOR BUSINESS OFFICE CALL 714-835-5200	YOUR ACCOUNT NUMBER 15 52-29-701-3620-05 000-1
TYPE OF SERVICE	RATE SCHEDULE	LIFELINE ALLOCATION	AVERAGE DAILY COST	DATE BILL PREPARED	
ELECTRIC	DOMESTIC	240 KUM	\$1.85	05-06-81	
METER NUMBER	SERVICE PERIOD FROM TO	METER READING FROM TO	EMERGENCY USAGE	AMOUNT	
307-239107	04-01-83 04-30-83	0961 1701	740 KUM	53.69*	
SANTA ANA CITY TAX 3.0%				1.61	
*ENERGY (FUEL) CHARGES INCLUDED IN THIS BILL TOTAL \$28.67					
PLEASE PAY THIS AMOUNT NOW DUE 				\$55.30	
RECENT PAYMENTS MAY NOT HAVE BEEN DEDUCTED FROM THIS BILL					

Appendix: 5

GAS BILL

PLEASE RETURN THIS PART WITH YOUR PAYMENT TO SOUTHERN CALIFORNIA GAS COMPANY		
SERVICE ADDRESS SANTA ANA CA 92706	CHHOEY HOUENG 61 MAIN STREET SANTA ANA CA 92706	
DATE MAILED APR 15 1983		
PLEASE PAY THIS AMOUNT 		\$ 24.30
THIS BILL IS NOW DUE AND PAYABLE DEDUCT RECENT PAYMENTS NOT CREDITED		
08 3706 845 6573 00002430 12 0837063456570000243012		
Please bring entire bill if payment is made in person. See other side for addresses of Company Offices		
DETACH HERE		
SOUTHERN CALIFORNIA GAS COMPANY TELEPHONE (714) 835-0221		SANTA ANA CA 92706

MEDICAL BILL

S T A T E M E N T				
John Gat M.D. 251 Broad St. Providence, RI 02906 Telephone: 491-2121				
Mr. Chue Yang 263 13th St. Providence, RI 02906				
Date	Item	Charge	Paid	Bal Due
9/4/76	Office Visit	12.00		12.00
	X-ray (right arm)	15.00		27.00
9/15/76	Check-up	15.00		42.00
9/18/76			25.00	17.00
9/23/76	Office Visit	12.00		29.00
	Medicine	8.00		37.00
10/9/76			37.00	00.00

409

APPLICATION FOR MEDICAL INSURANCE FORM

1. Name _____ 2. Age _____ 3. Sex _____
 4. Date of birth _____ 5. Place of birth _____
 6. Height _____ 7. Weight _____
 8. Marital Status: Single _____ Married _____ Divorced _____ Widowed _____
 Separated _____ 9. Occupation _____
 10. Employer's name and address _____
 11. Medical History:

<u>Illness</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>No</u>	<u>Date of treatment</u>
Bronchial Asthma			
Allergy			
Sinusitis			
Chronic coughs			
Stomach Ulcers			
Chronic Abdominal Pain			
Kidney stones (Ureteral or Bladder)			
Jaundice			
Severe injuries			
Appendicitis			
Shortness of Breath			
Arthritis			
Back Pain			
Epilepsy			
Painfull Urination			
Severe Headaches			
Diphtheria			

12. How many pregnancies? _____
 13. If you had any of the illnesses above--are there any you still have? _____
 14. Are you taking any medication? _____ What is it? _____
 15. Have you ever had any operations? _____ Where? _____

Date _____ Signature _____

DR. HARGLD BROWN

PANAT NIKOM CLINIC

CHONBURI, THAILAND

PRESCRIPTION

SIGNATURE

LABEL

3-1-83

JAY JONES

3 TEASPOONS
AFTER MEALS

DR. GAT

RITE DRUGS

BODAPHIL

MEDICAL RECORD CARD

NAME:

FAMILY NAME:

ADDRESS:

DATE OF BIRTH:

NATIONALITY:

SEX:

WEIGHT:

HEIGHT:

CHANGE OF ADDRESS ORDER

MAIL OR DELIVER TO POST OFFICE OF OLD ADDRESS

AFFIX
FIRST
CLASS
POSTAGE
IF MAILED

To POSTMASTER

City _____

State _____

THIS ORDER PROVIDES for the forwarding of First-Class Mail and all parcels of obvious value for a period not to exceed 1 year

Print or Type (Last Name, First Name, Middle Name)

CHANGE OF ADDRESS IS FOR:

- ☐ Entire Family
☐ Individual Signer Only

I AGREE TO PAY FORWARDING POSTAGE FOR NEWSPAPERS AND MAGAZINES FOR 90 DAYS.

☐ NO ☐ YES

USPS USE ONLY

CLERK
CARRIER
ENDORSEMENT

CARRIER ROUTE NUMBER

DATE ENTERED

Old Address: No. and St., Apt., Suite, P.O. Box or R.D. No. (In care of)

Post Office, State and ZIP Code

New Address: No. and St., Apt., Suite, P.O. Box or R.D. No. (In care of)

Post Office, State and ZIP Code

Effective Date

If temporary, Expiration Date

Sign Here

Date Signed

Appendix: 5

REGISTRATION FORM

<p>INSTRUCTIONS GIVEN BY SENDER</p> <p>Sender must check alternative disposition desired.</p> <p>IF UNDELIVERABLE AS ADDRESSED:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Return to sender. Return charges guaranteed.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Forward to:</p> <p>-----</p> <p>-----</p> <p>-----</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Abandon.</p> <p>-----</p> <p>----- (Sender)</p> <p>-----</p> <p>----- (Address of Sender)</p> <p>-----</p> <p>----- (City, State)</p>	<p>To</p> <p>-----</p> <p style="text-align: center;">(Name of addressee)</p> <p>-----</p> <p style="text-align: center;">(Street and number)</p> <p>-----</p> <p style="text-align: center;">(City, Province, State, etc.)</p> <p>-----</p> <p style="text-align: center;">(Country)</p> <p>-----</p> <p>(Sender must comply with U.S. export control regulations.)</p>
---	---

PARCEL POST CUSTOMS DECLARATION - UNITED STATES OF AMERICA					
<p style="writing-mode: vertical-rl; transform: rotate(180deg);">THIS LABEL FOR INTERNATIONAL PARCEL POST USE. COMPLETE AND APPLY ON ADDRESS SIDE OF PARCEL. BEND AT SLIT AND PEEL OFF BACKING.</p>	<p>INSTRUCTIONS GIVEN BY SENDER</p> <p>If undeliverable as addressed:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Return to sender. Return charges guaranteed.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Forward to:</p> <p>-----</p> <p>-----</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Abandon.</p> <p>-----</p> <p style="text-align: center;">(Sender's Signature)</p>		<p>QTY</p>	<p>USE INK OR TYPE- WRITER ITEMIZED LIST OF CONTENTS</p>	<p>VALUE (U.S.\$)</p>
	<p>MAILING OFFICE DATE</p>		<p>LBS.</p>	<p>ACCEPTING CLERK'S INITIALS</p>	<p>INSURED VALUE (U.S.\$)</p>
	<p>STAMP</p>		<p>OZS.</p>		
	<p>POSTAGE</p> <p>\$</p>		<p>POSTAGE</p> <p>\$</p>		
	<p>-----</p>		<p>-----</p>		<p>-----</p>

COMPARING LANGUAGES

Peter Loverde

Languages are systematic. Both the sound system and the grammatical system operate under a set of rules. These rules combine to form a system that we know as language. The process of comparing languages involves putting the system of one language "on top of" the system of another language to see how they are alike and how they differ. Comparing languages in this way is called constrastive analysis, and although it is usually the work of linguists, you can also carry out such a study with the students in your classroom.

If you analyze your students' native language in comparison to English, you can gain insights into the reasons behind the errors they make in pronunciation and in grammar. This can also help you better understand the language learning process and therefore anticipate which teaching strategies would be most appropriate for students.

When you compare these languages, you will find that students' difficulties do not come from the target language. Rather, they come from students' attempts to apply the rules of their own language to the one they are learning. Students sometimes feel that the systems of their own language are also appropriate for English.

You can help your students become aware of their "old habits" (the system of their native language) and identify the "new habits" which they need to acquire in order to learn a new language. As you identify the patterns for pronunciation and grammar in your students' language, you can use a comparison with English to identify teaching exercises which will help them. More importantly, you can find out which systems your students are using in their study of English.

Here, there are four areas of comparison: syllable patterns, structure, words and their parts, and writing systems. In each comparison, English is contrasted with Hmong, a tonal language spoken by a minority people living in mountainous regions of China, Laos, Thailand and also in the United States as refugee immigrants.

Appendix: 6

SYLLABLE PATTERNS

Each language has its own system for putting together syllables. A syllable is a combination of sounds, usually a vowel sound and one or more consonant sounds. For example, the word "refrigerator" consists of five syllables (re-fri-ge-ra-tor).

When two or more consonant sounds occur together, this is called a consonant cluster. Some consonant clusters are: spl-, str-, pl-, -ts, -ks, etc. Not all of these clusters normally occur at the beginning of words, e.g., -ts in "cats" or -ks in "box."

In English, the pattern for possible syllables is:

(C) (C) (C) V (C) (C) (C) (C)

This means that as many as three consonant sounds may occur before the vowel sound, and as many as four consonant sounds may occur after the vowel. Look at the syllable patterns in these words (concentrate on the sounds only; don't be confused by the spelling):

ants	plant	glimpsed
VCCC	CCVCC	CCVCCCC

Comparison

	English		Hmong
Syllable Pattern	(C)(C)(C)V(C)(C)(C)(C)		(C)(C)(C)V(C)
Examples	cats CVCC	walked CVCC	loj* ("large") nplaim ("flame") CV CCCV

Analysis

Certain English consonant combinations are likely to challenge Hmong speakers. English words tend to put a heavy emphasis on the final part of the word. Concepts such as plurality ("cats") and past tense ("walked") are marked at the ends of words. Since Hmong allows only one consonant sound after a vowel, Hmong students would not only have difficulty pronouncing some final clusters, but they might also have trouble "hearing" them, too.

Application

Study your students' native language.

- What are the possible consonant combinations that can occur?
- Do consonant clusters occur before or after the vowel?
- Which syllable patterns are different from English?

* The final consonant in Hmong is actually a diacritic which indicates tone and is not pronounced.

STRUCTURES

As with sounds, each language also has its own system for putting words together into sentences. These sentence patterns, or structures, are limited in number. No language organizes the parts of a sentence exactly like another language.

Word order is a basic ingredient of sentence structure. Which words follow or precede other words? For example, in some languages the subject comes first (English: "The dog chased the cat."), while in others the verb comes first (Tagalog: "Chased the dog the cat.").

Use the four basic structures below to compare languages. Will use-ful be hopefully this.

Comparison

	English	Hmong
Affirmative Statement	The dog chased the cat. (subject-verb-object)	The dog chased the cat. (subject-verb-object)
Negative Statement	I <u>do</u> not study French. (use of auxiliary)	I no study French. (no auxiliary)
Yes-No Questions	<u>Did</u> you go to town? (use of auxiliary)	You go to town (question-word); (statement + question-word)
Modifiers	The <u>red</u> car. (modifier before noun)	The car <u>red</u> . (modifier after noun)

Analysis

Hmong speakers learning English will need to put special emphasis on learning to use the auxiliary verbs. In some cases, word order will also need attention, especially word order with adjectives.

Application

Have an informant translate these sentences into your students' native language. What are the structure patterns?

John saw Bill. I do not play the guitar.
Bill saw John. Do you play the guitar?

The red pen is 25 cents.

Other structures that you can use for comparison: reflective sentences ("He washed himself"); possessive sentences ("I bought John's book"); Wh-questions ("Why, Who, What, Where").

Appendix: 6

WORDS AND THEIR PARTS

English uses inflections to indicate certain functions of words or to signal certain meanings. Inflections consist of prefixes, suffixes and infixes. Some examples are: -s (a plural suffix); -ed (past tense suffix); un- (negative prefix); tooth/teeth (singular and plural infixes).

One method of comparison is to choose sentences or words which are similar in meaning and then determine which sounds (parts, words) add the difference in meaning.

Comparison

English	Hmong
1. The dog doesn't sing.	Tus dev tsis hu nkauj.
2. The dog sings.	Tus dev hu nkauj.
3. The bird doesn't bark.	Tus noog tsis tom.
4. The bird sings.	Tus noog hu nkauj.
5. The bird sang.	Tus noog hu nkauj.
6. The bird is singing.	Tus noog hu nkauj.

Analysis

Hmong speakers do not use inflection to mark tense. Instead, they indicate tense by using time expressions ("yesterday" or "now"), which they add to a sentence. Tense can also be inferred by the context in which the sentence is spoken. Third person singular (-s) is an area which they will need to work on, as are the different forms of the verbs in English.

Application

Have an informant translate a list of words or sentences with inflections. Examine these to see what similarities and differences exist. Here are some samples:

friend/friendly

quick/quickly

do/undo

cow/scow

She walked to school.

John's book is red.

She walks to school.

WRITING SYSTEMS

Not all languages are represented by a script. In comparing systems, the first thing to find out is whether your students' native language has a script. There may not be one. Or, a system may exist, but it may not be widely accepted by the people because of religious or political implications attached to the script. Other people may have no need for a writing system; life as they know it does not include reading or writing as major components.

If your students' native language does have a writing system, you can make certain comparisons. Very few languages are written perfectly. In languages which use alphabets, the letters do not perfectly match the sounds they represent. In most writing systems, there are areas which pose challenges for a language learner.

Comparison

	English	Hmong
In which script is the language written?	Roman.	Roman.
Does each letter always have the same shape?	No. (Aa, Bb)	No. (Aa, Bb)
Does each letter always represent the same sound?	No. (mat, father, ate)	Yes.
Is each sound always represented by the same letter(s)?	No. (call, sick, keep)	Yes.
Are some sounds represented by groups of letters?	Yes. (th, ch, ough)	Yes. (ts, tx, txh)
Are there some words which are not pronounced the way they are spelled?	Yes. (science, colonel)	No.
Are there some words which are spelled in more than one way?	Yes. (enquire, inquire)	No.

Analysis

The irregular English spelling system will challenge Hmong speakers.

Application

How would you approach teaching literacy to students who are not literate in their native language?

Appendix: 6

SUMMARY

As you can see, comparing languages can provide you with concrete clues to challenges that your students face in learning English. Four areas for comparison were presented here, but there are others which you can also use to better understand both English and your students' native languages. This understanding can only help you help your students learn languages.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Brewster, E. Thomas and Elizabeth S. Language Acquisition Made Practical. Colorado Springs, Colorado: Lingua House, 1976.

Heimback, Ernest E. White Hmong-English Dictionary. Ithaca, New York: Cornell University, 1976.

Gudschinsky, Sarah C. A Manual of Literacy for Preliterate Peoples. Ukarumpa, E.H.D., Papua New Guinea: Summer Institute of Linguistics, 1973.

Smalley, William A. ed. Phonemes and Orthography: Language Planning in Ten Minority Languages in Thailand. Canberra, Australia: Pacific Linguistics, 1976.

Southeast Asian Pronunciation Problems

Southeast Asian students do not usually have problems with vowels. Many Southeast Asian languages contain more vowels than English.

The main problems are:

- final consonants
- consonants following diphthongs
- consonant clusters

In addition, adult learners in Southeast Asia often have problems with stress, rhythm and phrasing.

What follows is a list of problems compiled from a variety of sources including --English Pronunciation Lessons: A Teacher's Resource Manual printed by the Center for Applied Linguistics in cooperation with International Catholic Migration Commission (Metro Manila, Philippines, March, 1983).

The information in the chart is generalized and is meant solely as a guide to suggest potential areas of difficulty. You may want to consult additional sources for more specific information on each language.

Key: L: Lao H: Hmong
 V: Vietnamese K: Khmer

Problem	Example	Notes
b (final)	cab rub	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> K- H- L- V- </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 2em; margin: 0 10px;">}</div> does not occur; is often confused with final p.
b/d/g/ (final)	lab lad bag	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> H- V- L- K- </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 2em; margin: 0 10px;">}</div> b, d and g become p, t and k. d and t both exist but d does not appear in the final position. d often confused with t.
ch	child chicken	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> H- L- K- V- </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 2em; margin: 0 10px;">}</div> ch and sh are separate phonemes although not exactly the same as the English sounds. does not exist in any position. often confused with sh, t or s.

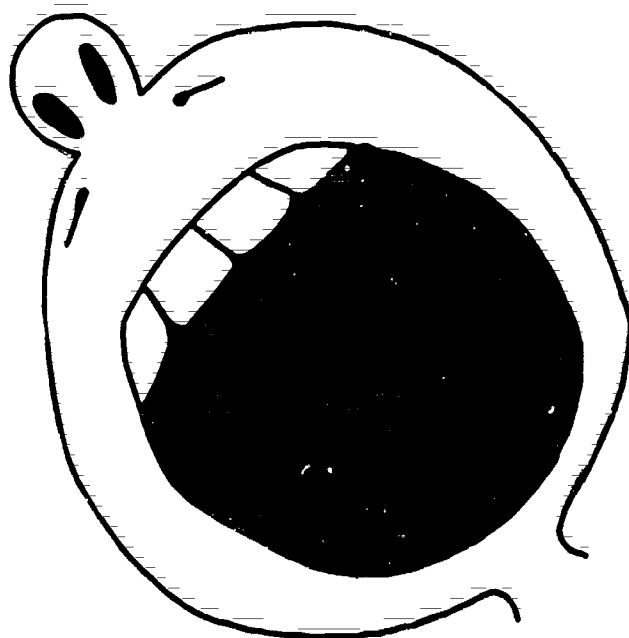
Appendix: 7

Problem	Example	Notes
f	laugh cough	H- <u>f</u> (and <u>v</u>) become <u>p</u> . K- <u>f</u> exists in foreign loan words only. V } <u>f</u> does not occur finally; often L } becomes <u>p</u> or is omitted.
g	get garbage	H- usually becomes <u>k</u> . L } does not exist at all; often con- K } fused with <u>k</u> or sometimes <u>d</u> . V- does not occur in the final position.
k (final)	make bake	H V } can be heard but <u>k</u> is "unreleased." L } K- can be heard.
l (final)	fill hill school will	K H } often becomes <u>n</u> . sometimes the L } final sound is completely omitted. V }
m/n/ŋ (final)	sing time fine came home	H V } final sound dropped after L } diphthongs. K }
p/t/k	pan tan can	H- V- occurs in the final position only. L } exists in the initial and final K } position. students may not hear differences in the final position.
r	race red car	H- becomes <u>l</u> in the initial position. L- often confused with <u>l</u> in the initial position. K } often used interchangeably in the V } final and sometimes the initial position.

Problem	Example	Notes
s/z (final)	hits pens his hiss	<p>H } often dropped or confused with <u>t</u>.</p> <p>L }</p> <p>K }</p> <p>V- exists but not in the final position.</p>
sh (initial)	shoe shirt	<p>H- <u>sh</u> and <u>ch</u> are phonemes in Hmong. may be confusion with English <u>sh</u>.</p> <p>L } the <u>sh</u> sound does not exist.</p> <p>K } often confused with <u>s</u>, <u>t</u> or</p> <p>V } <u>ch</u>.</p>
v/w	view live have	<p>H- interchanged.</p> <p>L } used interchangeably and often</p> <p>K } confused with <u>p</u>, <u>b</u> or <u>f</u>.</p> <p>V- final <u>v</u> does not occur.</p>
z (initial)	zoo zip	<p>H } <u>z</u> becomes <u>s</u>.</p> <p>L }</p> <p>K }</p> <p>V- exists in initial position.</p>
dr/tr (initial)	drawer tree	<p>L } consonant clusters do not exist</p> <p>V } <u>w</u> may be substituted for <u>r</u>.</p>
gl/gr (initial)	glass grass	<p>H</p> <p>K- <u>g</u> does not ordinarily appear.</p> <p>L } consonant clusters do not exist.</p> <p>V }</p>
kl/kr (initial)	cloud crowd	<p>H- <u>l</u> and <u>r</u> may be dropped.</p> <p>L } does not exist in the initial or</p> <p>V } final position.</p> <p>K- exists in Khmer.</p>
ks (final)	backs tacks	<p>H- no final clusters in Hmong.</p> <p>K }</p> <p>L } often confused with final <u>k</u>.</p> <p>V }</p>
rd/nt (final)	land hunt	<p>H</p> <p>K</p> <p>L } consonant clusters do not exist.</p> <p>V }</p>

Appendix: 7

OTHER PROBLEMS:



Pronunciation Problems by Unit

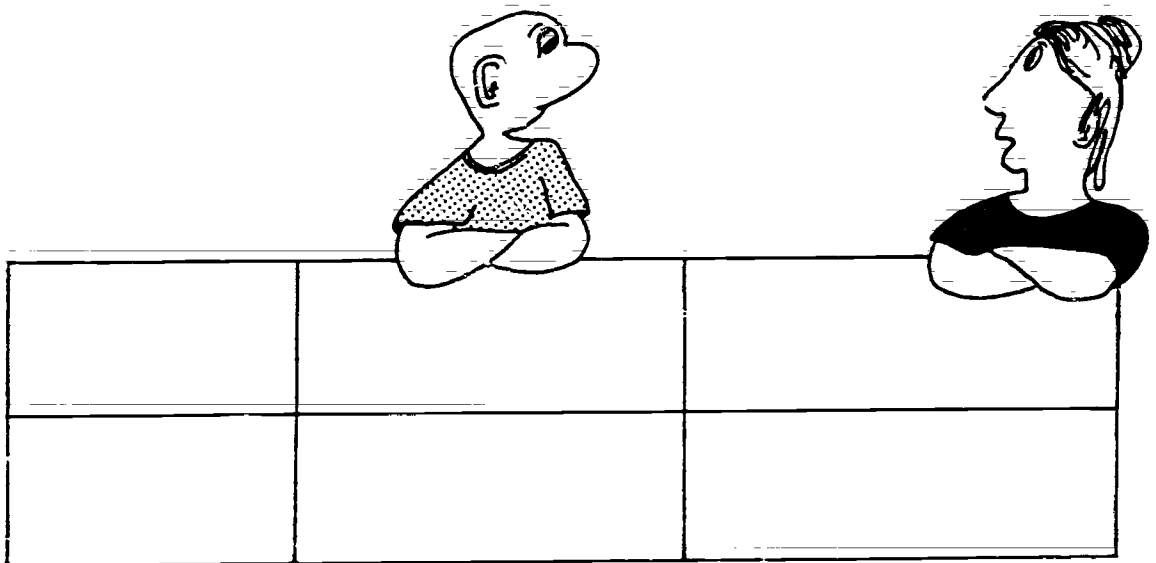
Each unit includes a common pronunciation mistake. Some of them may be easier to understand than others. This list includes the mistakes and the corrections.

UNIT

1. Goose Morning.	Good Morning.
2. Halo. Hi.	Hello. Hi.
3. Are you married?	Are you married?
No, I'm a singer.	No, I'm <u>single</u> .
4. I want to buy some rye.	I want to buy some <u>rice</u> .
5. Open your mouse.	Open your <u>mouth</u> .
6. I lie to wash T.V.	I <u>like</u> to <u>watch</u> T.V.
7. I'm a student.	I'm a student.
I go to skoon.	I go to <u>school</u> .
8. 'Kiss me, where is the hopital?	Excuse me, where is the <u>hospital</u> ?
9. I need to get some foot.	I need to get some <u>food</u> . *
10. I study pre-skings at 11:00.	I study pre- <u>skills</u> at 11:00.
11. My firs nay is Liu.	My <u>first</u> name is Liu.
12. Put it in the chicken.	Put it in the <u>kitchen</u> .
13. I want a pair of shoe and two shirt.	I want a pair of <u>shoes</u> and two shirts.
14. What tie do you eat brefa?	What <u>time</u> do you eat <u>breakfast</u> ?
15. It's on Broad Streep.	It's on Broad <u>Street</u> .
16. What's your zit code?	What's your <u>zip</u> code?
17. I've got a head-H.	I've got a <u>headache</u> .
18. How many should I taste?	How many should I <u>take</u> ?
19. I was a soldier for sick years.	I was a soldier for <u>six</u> years.
20. Yes, I can.	
Can't?	
Can.	(same)
Can't?	
CAN.	
21. Turn it op.	Turn it <u>off</u> .
22. I want a money order for pipty dollars.	I want a <u>money</u> order for <u>fifty</u> dollars.
23. The rent includes electric city.	The rent includes <u>electricity</u> .
24. This is my wige.	This is my <u>wife</u> .
25. What's the probla?	What's the <u>problem</u> ?
26. How much do you make before taxies?	How much do you make before <u>taxes</u> ?
27. What are you doing to-nice?	What are you doing <u>tonight</u> ?
28. Becaw I want to study.	<u>Because</u> I want to study.
29. Accuse me, my french is sick.	Excuse me, my <u>friend</u> is sick.
30. These are mines.	These are <u>mine</u> .

* Pre-employment Training was formerly referred to as pre-skills by teachers and students.

Appendix: 8



Word List and Pronunciation Guide

The word list and pronunciation guide presented here is for non-native speakers of American English. The list identifies those words from the curriculum that might be difficult to pronounce or are pronounced differently in British English. In addition to key words in the curriculum, the names of the U.S. states have also been included for those who may be unfamiliar with them.

Teachers are encouraged to refer to this word list and pronunciation guide periodically to check their own pronunciation.

KEY:

pat	ă	kick, cat,	k	tight, stopped	t
pay	ā	pique		thin	th
care	ār	lid, needle	l	this	th
father	ă	mum	m	cut	ū
bib	b	no, sudden	n	urge, term, firm	ūr
church	ch	thing	ng	work, heard	
deed, milled	d	pot, horrid	ō	valve	v
pet	e	toe, hoarse	ō	with	w
bee	ē	caught, paw,	ō	yes	y
life, phase,	f	for		zebra, xylem	z
rough		noise	oi	vision, pleasure,	zh
gag	g	took	ōō	garage	
nat	h	boot	ōō	about, item,	ə
which	hw	out	ou	edible, gallop,	
pit	Y	pop	p	circus	
pie, by	f	roar	r	butter	ər
pier	ir	sauce	s		
judge	j	ship, dish	sh		

about	ə-bout'
absent	ab'sent'
ache	āk
address	ə-dres'
afford	ə-fōrd'
again	ə-gēn'
aisle	fl
Alabama	āl'ə-bām'ə
Alaska	ə-lās'kə
ambulance	ām'byə-ləns

April	ā'prəl
Arizona	ār'ə-zō'nə
Arkansas	ār'kən-sō'
arrive	ə-riv'
August	ō'gəst
autumn	ō'təm
barber	bār'bar
barbecue	bār'bī-kyōō'

Source: The American Heritage Dictionary of the American Language. William Morris, editor. Houghton Mifflin Company, Boston, Massachusetts, 1980.

Appendix: 9

been	bīn	Delaware	del'ə-wār'
breath	brēth	deposit	dī-pōz'it
breathe	brēth	diabetes	dīə-bē'tis
		diarrhea	dī'ə-rē'ə
		difficult	dif'i-kult'
cabinet	kāb'ə-nit	direction	dī-rēk'shən
cafeteria	kāf'ə-tīr'ē-ə	dizzy	diz'ē
California	kāl'ə-fōrn'yə	doubt	dout
can	kān	drawer	drōr
cannot	kān'ot	dysentery	dīs'an-tər ē
can't	kānt		
cashier	kā-shīr'		
cheap	chēp	electricity	i-lēk'tris'ə-tē
Chicago	shə-kā'gō	embarrassed	em-bār'əst
child	child	emergency	i-mūr'jən-sē
children	chīl'drən	enough	i-nuf'
clothes	klōz	ethnic	eth'nik
Colorado	kōl'ə-rā'dō	expiration	ek'spə-rā'shən
Connecticut	kə-nēt'ə-kət	expire	ek-spīr'
constipation	kōn'stə-pā'shən		
couch	kouch	family	fām'ə-lē
		fasten	fās'an
daughter	dō'tər	favorite	fā'vər-īt
December	dī-sēm'bər	February	feb'rō-er'ē

film	fīlm	interview	in'tər-vyoo'
Florida	flôr'ə-də	Iowa	i'ə-wə
Friday	fri'dē(dā)	it'll	it'l
garage	gə-rāzh'	January	jān'yoo-ēr'ē
garbage	gār'bij	July	joo-lī'
Georgia	jōr'jə	June	jōon
have	hāv	Kansas	kān'zəs
Hawaii	hə-wā'ē	Kentucky	kən-tuk'ē
hospital	hōs'pə-təl	kilometers	kī lōm'ə-tər
how're	hou er	kindergarten	kīn'dər-gärt'n
Idaho	i'də-hō	laboratory	lāb'rə-tōr'ē
identification	f-dēn'tə-fī-kā'shən	lease	lēs
identify	f-dēn'tə-fī'	library	lī'brēr'ē
Illinois	il'ə-nōi'	listen	līs'ən
Indiana	in'dē-ān'ə	Los Angeles	lōs ān'jə-ləs
insurance	in-shoor'əns	Louisiana	loo-ē'zē-ān'ə
interested	in'tri-stid		
intersection	in'tər-sēk'shən		

Appendix: 9

Maine	mān	New Jersey	nōo jûr'ze
malaria	mə-lār'ē-ə	New Mexico	nōo mēk'si-kō'
March	mārch	New York	nōo yōrk
Maryland	mār'ə-lənd	North Carolina	nōrth kār'ə-li'nə
Massachusetts	mās'ə-choo'sits	North Dakota	nōrth də-kō'tə
May	mā	November	nō-vēm'bər
mechanic	mī-kān'ik		
Michigan	mīsh'i-gən		
milk	mīlk	ocean	ō'shən
Minnesota	mīn'i-sō'tə	October	ōk-tō'bər
Mississippi	mīs'i-sip'ē	Ohio	ō-hi-ō
Missouri	mī-zoor'ē	Oklahoma	ō'klə-hō-mə
Monday	mūn'dē(dā)	once	wūns
Montana	mōn-tān'ə	Oregon	ōr'ə-gən
motorcycle	mō'tər-si'kəl	Pennsylvania	pēn'səl-vān'yə
moustache	mūs'tash	plumber	plum'ər
muscle	mūs'əl	prescription	pri-skrip'shən
		probably	prōb'ə-blē
		purchase	pūr'chīs
nationality	nāsh'ə-nəl'e-tē		
nauseous	nō'zē-əs		
Nebraska	nə-brās'kə	rather	rath'ər
Nevada	nə-vād'ə	receipt	ri-sēt'
New Hampshire	nōo hāmp'shər	recipe	res'ə-pē'

refill	rē-fil'	Tennessee	tēn'ī-sē'
refrigerator	rī-frīj'ə-rā'tər	Texas	tēk'səs
region	rē'jən	there	thār
register	rēj'ī-stər	these	thēz
relatives	rēl ə-tīvs	those	thōz
repeat	rī-pēt'	thigh	thī
restaurant	rēs'tər-ənt	this	thɪs
Rhode Island	rōd ī lənd	thirsty	thūr'stē
		throat	thrōt
		Thursday	thūrz'dē(dā)
salary	sāl'ə-rē	traditionally	trə-dīsh'ən-əl-ē
Saturday	sāt'ər-dē(dā)	tranquilizers	tran'kwə-līz'ərs
seamstress	sēm'strɪs	transfer	trāns-fūr
seen	sēn	Tuesday	tōwz'dē(dā)
September	sēp-tēm'bər		
South Carolina	south kār ə-lī nō		
South Dakota	south də-ko'tə	urine	yōor'īn
sponsor	spōn'sər	Utah	yōo'tō
stomach	stūm'ək	utilities	yōo-tīl'ə-tēz
Sunday	sūn'dē(dā)		
surface	sūr'fəs	vegetables	vēj'tə-bəlz
		Vermont	vər-mōnt'
taught	tōt	Virginia	vər-jīn-yə

Appendix: 9

vitamins	vī'tə-məns
Washington	wōsh'ing-tən
Wednesday	wēnz'dē(dā)
weight	wāt
we'll	wēl
were	wūr
West Virginia	wēst vər-jīn-yo
where	hwār
whose	hōōz
wife's	wīfs
Wisconsin	wīs-kōn'sən
would	wōōd
Wyoming	wī-ō' ming

yesterday	yēs'tər-dā(dē)
you'd	yōōd



Minimal Sets

What follows is a list of minimal sets which can be used to practice pronunciation in the classroom. The first word in each set must always be used. These sets were developed by Jimmy G. Harris, former U.S. State Department monitor and are presented here with his consent.

1.	Cat	Cass*	Cats	Cast	Casts
2.	Wat	Watch	Wash	Watched	Washed
3.	Cup	Cuff	Cups	Cuffs	Cupped
	Cuffed	Cub	Cubs		
4.	Mat*	Mats	Mass	Match	Mash
	Matched	Mashed			
5.	Lye	Lice	Light	Lights	Rye
	Rice	Right	Rights		
6.	Butt	Bus	Butts	Bust	Busts
	Buzz	Bud*	Buds	Buzzed	
7.	Net	Ness*	Nets	Nest	Nests
8.	Fay*	Face	Fate	Faced	Fade
	Phase	Phased	Fades	Fate's	
9.	Goot*	Goose	Good	Goods	Goosed
	Goot's*				
10.	Back	Bask	Basks	Basked	Backed
	Bag	Bags	Bagged		
11.	Lock	Rock	Locks	Rocks	Rocket
	Locket	Rocket	Lockets		
12.	Way	Wade	Whale	Veil	Wayne*
	Vein	Whales	Veils	Wayne's*	Veins

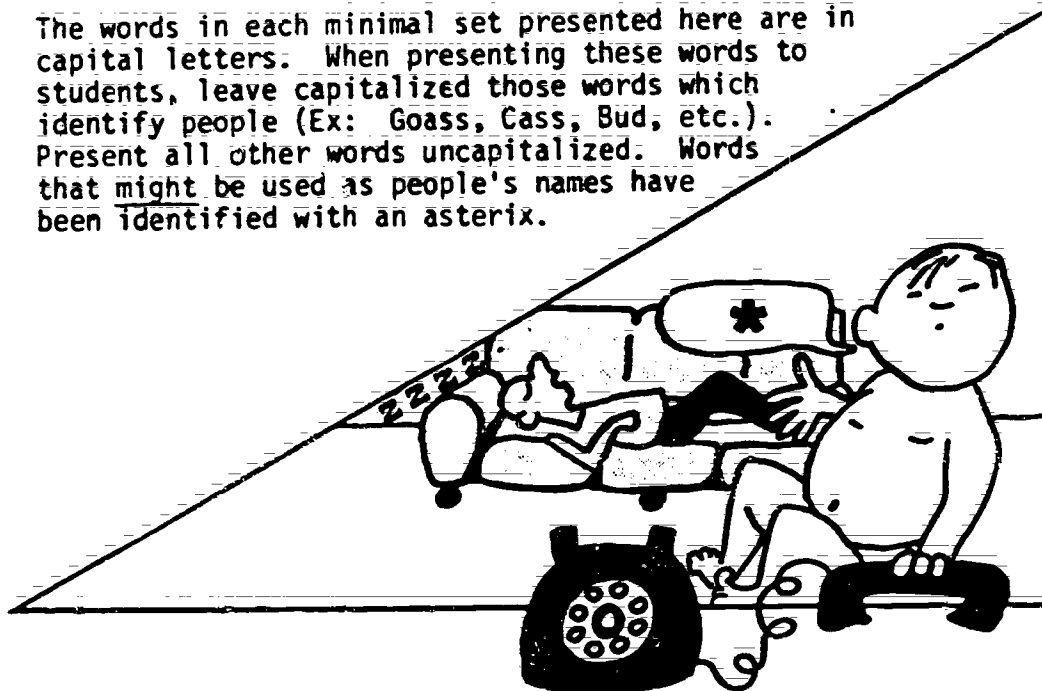
Appendix: 10

13.	Cheat Sheets	Sheet	Seat	Cheese	Cheats
14.	How House (v.)	House (n.) Howt's*	Howt*	How's	How'd
15.	Goat	Ghost	Goats	Goass*	Ghosts
16.	Lei*	Lake	Rake	Lakes	Rakes
17.	Yam Yet	Jam Jess*	Jello Yes	Yellow	Jet
18.	Bee	Pea	Fee		
19.	Clock	Crock	Clocks	Crocks	
20.	An	Ant	Ants	And	
21.	Fly Flute	Fry	Fies*	Fries	Fruit
22.	Bessy*	Betsy*	Betty*	Berry*	
23.	Tack Tanks	Tacks Track	Tag Tracks	Tags Sack	Tank Sacks
24.	Tuck* Trucks	Tusk Trunk	Tongue Trunks	Tongues Tusks	Truck
25.	Tin	Sin	Thin		
26.	Yea	See	Tree	Three	
27.	Cheap	Sheep	Chief*	Sheaf	
28.	Bee Beads	Beet Beast	Beets	Bees	Bead
29.	I Ice	I'm Eyes	I've	I'd	I'll

Appendix: 10

30.	Ben* Bench	Bell	Bells	Belt	Belts
31.	Gun Girl	Gull Girls	Gun	Gulls	Gulch
32.	Lamb Lamp	Ram Ramp	Lamps	Ramps	Lambs
33.	A A's	Ace A	Eight	Eight	Aid
34.	Lei Laid	Lace	Late	Laced	Leis

Note: The words in each minimal set presented here are in capital letters. When presenting these words to students, leave capitalized those words which identify people (Ex: Goass, Cass, Bud, etc.). Present all other words uncapitalized. Words that might be used as people's names have been identified with an asterix.



Appendix: 10

The minimal sets listed here address the following problems Southeast Asian students may have learning English:

PROBLEM

1 Final -k -ks -sk -skt -g -gz -gd.....becomes -k only

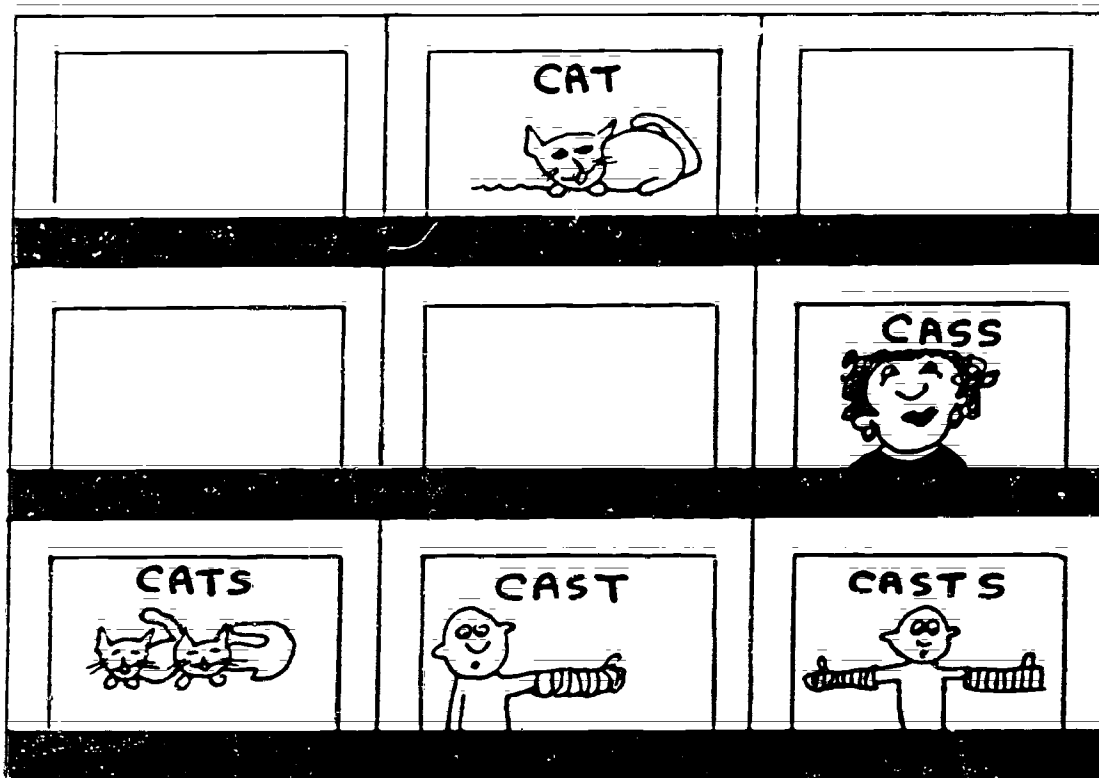
2 Final -p -ps -pt -b -bz -bd -fs
-ft -vz -vd.....becomes -p only

3 Final -t -s -st -sts -ts -d -z
-zd -dz -ch -sh -sht -cht
-j -jd.....becomes -t and
sometimes -s

4 Final -ay -aw -oy -ey + consonant.....becomes -ay -aw
-oy -ey + Ø

Ex: time...tie
house...how
name...nay
boils...boy

Tic Tac Toe



Each word in a set should be written on a card accompanied by an illustration which reflects (as much as possible) the students' own cultural experience. Cards can be displayed in a pocket chart or slot board. One option is to play pronunciation Tic Tac Toe.

Index

Techniques: (ESL)

Page:

Action Sequence	22, 83, 283, 338
Activity Operations	39
Advisor	267
Airport Terminal	283
Answer Cards	74
Assessment	357-360
Baggage Claim	283
Bingo	47, 256
Birthdates	102
Bus Map	146
Bus Schedule	146
Buzz	91
Calendar Roulette	102
Card Cues	212
Card Matching	47
Characters	38, 156, 258, 344
Charades	74, 119
Charts	31, 83, 102, 128, 156, 223, 337
Check the Box	128
Class Management	330-334
Clocks	136
Cloze	359
Cocktail Party	22, 258
Communication	341-344
Communication Games	345-346
Complimentary Actions	258
Concentration	74, 128, 136, 146, 184, 231, 240, 258, 345
Constructalog	231, 341
Copying	354
Correction	328-329
Cross Out	47
Crossword	175, 258
Cubes	329
Cultural Exploration	22, 31, 38, 47, 64, 74, 83, 91, 102, 119, 136, 175, 240, 249, 258, 267, 347-350
Cummings Device	91, 342
Date Cards	102
Deduction	326
Definition	324
Demonstration	324
Depictions	74, 231, 348
Dialogue Grid	47, 223
Dialogues	341

Index: Techniques: (ESL)

	<u>Page</u>
Dictation	354
Directed Repetition	353
Double Circle	31, 184
Dyads	83, 128, 146, 360
Emergency Calls	240
Envelope Board	156
Explanation	326-327
Family Tree	38
Feedback	358
Find The Problem	274
Flight Schedule	274
Flip the Switch	119
Floor Map	83
Floor Plan	64
Forms	184, 194
Getting Help	267
Getting Your Own Back	91
Go Fish	38, 156, 346
Hangman	355
Hold-up	212
Housing Grid	223
Images	325
Induction	326
Instructions	333
Interpreter Aides	334
Interview	358
Interview Cards	249
Job Definition	184
Language Exploration	83, 136, 258
Large Groups	330
Letter Cards	22
Letter Names	136
Literacy	354-356
Map Game	110
Matching	74, 102, 359
Maze Pairs	83
Memory Chain	91, 274
Memory Table	175
Minimal Pairs	351
Minimal Sets	353
Missing Letters	64
Missing Pictures	91
Money Order	212
Monthly Budget	249
My Body/Your Body	167

Index: Techniques: (ESL)

	<u>Page</u>
Name Game	22
Narrative	343
Objects	323
Office	167
One Way-Round Trip	170
Open-ended Story	283, 347
Open-ended Task	357
Oral Cues	351
Paychecks	249
Photographs	38
Picture Cues	102, 110, 194
Picture Description	345
Picture Interpretation	357
Picture Narrative	74, 175
Picture Sequence	167, 212
Picture Story	223, 342
Pictures	323
Presentation	323-325
Prices	146
Pronunciation	351-353
Proverbs	350
Question/Answer	31, 336
Recitation	31, 344
Recognition	328
Reconstruction	338
Reflection	327
Repetition	335
Review	231
Rod Images	231
Role Play	110, 136, 204, 347
Same or Different	110
Schedule Matching	194
Scrambles	355
Simon Says	56
Simulation	128, 167, 175, 184, 194, 212, 294, 349
Situation	324
Skits	360
Small Groups	331
Snakes And Ladders	56
Snap	64
Songs	102, 350
Sorting	119
Spiel	110, 204, 343
Spinners	56, 175, 212, 337
Structured Practice	335-338

Index: Techniques: (ESL)

	<u>Page</u>
Substitution	335
Survey	31
Symptoms	167
Telephone Appointment	194
Telephone Numbers	240
Tic Tac Toe	31, 47, 156, 356
Tickets	274
Time Board	204
Time Card	204
Toy Furniture	64
Transformation	336
Translation	325
Treatment Categories	240
Twenty Questions	56, 110, 345
Valuation	184, 348
Vending Machine	267
Visual Cues	352
Whatsit	204
What's Missing?	267

